

**NIST SPECIAL PUBLICATION 1800-13**

---

# Mobile Application Single Sign-On

## Improving Authentication for Public Safety First Responders

---

Includes Executive Summary (A); Approach, Architecture, and Security Characteristics (B); and How-To Guides (C)

**Bill Fisher**  
**Paul Grassi**  
**William C. Barker**  
**Spike E. Dog**  
**Santos Jha**  
**William Kim**  
**Taylor McCorkill**  
**Joseph Portner**  
**Mark Russell**  
**Sudhi Umarji**

May 2019

SECOND DRAFT

This publication is available free of charge from <https://www.nccoe.nist.gov/projects/use-cases/mobile-ss0>



NIST SPECIAL PUBLICATION 1800-13

# Mobile Application Single Sign-On Improving Authentication for Public Safety First Responders

*Includes Executive Summary (A); Approach, Architecture, and Security Characteristics (B);  
and How-To Guides (C)*

**Bill Fisher**

**Paul Grassi\***

Applied Cybersecurity Division  
Information Technology Laboratory

**Spike E. Dog**

**Santos Jha**

**William Kim\***

**Taylor McCorkill**

**Joseph Portner\***

**Mark Russell**

**Sudhi Umarji**

The MITRE Corporation  
McLean, Virginia

**William C. Barker**

Dakota Consulting

Silver Spring, Maryland

*\*Former employee; all work for this  
publication was done while at employer.*

SECOND DRAFT

May 2019



U.S. Department of Commerce  
*Wilbur Ross, Secretary*

National Institute of Standards and Technology  
Walter Copan, NIST Director and Undersecretary of Commerce for Standards and Technology

# Mobile Application Single Sign-On

## Improving Authentication for Public Safety First Responders

---

**Volume A:**  
**Executive Summary**

**Bill Fisher**  
**Paul Grassi\***

Applied Cybersecurity Division  
Information Technology Laboratory

**Spike E. Dog**  
**Santos Jha**  
**William Kim\***  
**Taylor McCorkill**  
**Joseph Portner\***  
**Mark Russell**  
**Sudhi Umarji**

The MITRE Corporation  
McLean, Virginia

**William C. Barker**

Dakota Consulting  
Silver Spring, Maryland

*\*Former employee; all work for this publication was done while at employer.*

May 2019

SECOND DRAFT

This publication is available free of charge from  
<https://www.nccoe.nist.gov/projects/use-cases/mobile-ss0>

# 1 Executive Summary

- 2       ▪ On-demand access to public safety data is critical to ensuring that public safety and first  
3       responders (PSFRs) can protect life and property during an emergency.
- 4       ▪ This public safety information, often needing to be accessed via mobile or portable devices,  
5       routinely includes sensitive information, such as personally identifiable information, law  
6       enforcement sensitive information, and protected health information.
- 7       ▪ Because the communications are critical to public safety and may include sensitive information,  
8       robust and reliable authentication mechanisms that do not hinder delivery of emergency  
9       services are required.
- 10      ▪ In collaboration with the National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST) Public Safety  
11      Communications Research laboratory and industry stakeholders, the National Cybersecurity  
12      Center of Excellence (NCCoE) at NIST built a laboratory environment to demonstrate standards-  
13      based technologies that can enable PSFRs to gain access to public safety information efficiently  
14      and securely by using mobile devices.
- 15      ▪ The technologies demonstrated are currently available and include (1) single sign-on (SSO)  
16      capabilities that reduce the number of credentials that need to be managed by public safety  
17      personnel, and reduce the time and effort that individuals spend authenticating themselves;  
18      (2) identity federation that can improve the ability to authenticate personnel across public  
19      safety organization (PSO) boundaries; and (3) multifactor authentication (MFA) that enables  
20      authentication with a high level of assurance.
- 21      ▪ This NIST Cybersecurity Practice Guide describes how organizations can implement these  
22      technologies to enhance public safety mission capabilities by using standards-based  
23      commercially available or open-source products. The technologies described facilitate  
24      interoperability among diverse mobile platforms, applications, relying parties, identity providers  
25      (IdPs), and public-sector and private-sector participants, regardless of the application  
26      development platform used in their construction.

## 27 CHALLENGE

28 Recent natural and man-made disasters and crises have highlighted the importance of efficient and  
29 secure access to critical information by PSFRs. For decades, much of this information was broadcast to  
30 PSFRs by voice over radio. More recently, many PSOs have transitioned to a hybrid model that includes  
31 automated access to much of this information via ruggedized mobile laptops and tablets. Further  
32 advances in technology have resulted in increasing reliance on smartphones or similar portable devices  
33 for field access to public safety information. The increasing reliance on these devices has driven the use  
34 of “native app”-based interfaces to access information, in addition to more traditional browser-based  
35 methods.

36 Many PSOs are in the process of transitioning from traditional land-based mobile communications to  
37 high-speed, regional or nationwide wireless broadband networks (e.g., FirstNet). These emerging “5G”  
38 systems employ internet protocol-based communications to provide secure and interoperable public  
39 safety communications to support initiatives such as Criminal Justice Information Services, Regional  
40 Information Sharing Systems, and international justice and public safety services such as those provided

41 by Nlets. This transition will foster critically needed interoperability within and among jurisdictions, but  
42 it will create a significant increase in the number of mobile devices that PSOs will need to manage.

43 Current PSO authentication services may not be sustainable in the face of this growth. There are needs  
44 to improve security assurance, limit authentication requirements that are imposed on users  
45 (e.g., reduce the number of passwords that are required), improve the usability and efficiency of user  
46 account management, and share identities across jurisdictional boundaries. There is no single  
47 management or administrative hierarchy spanning the PSFR population. PSFR organizations operate in a  
48 variety of environments with different authentication requirements. Standards-based solutions are  
49 needed to support technical interoperability and a diverse set of PSO environments.

## 50 SOLUTION

51 To address these challenges, the NCCoE brought together common identity and software application  
52 providers to demonstrate how a PSO can implement mobile native and web application SSO, access  
53 federated identity sources, and implement MFA. SSO limits the time and effort that PSFR personnel  
54 spend authenticating, while MFA provides PSOs with adequate confidence that users who are accessing  
55 their information are who they say they are. The architecture supports identity federation that allows  
56 PSOs to share identity assertions between applications and across PSO jurisdictions. A combination of all  
57 of these capabilities can allow PSFR personnel to authenticate—say, at the beginning of their shift—and  
58 leverage that high-assurance authentication to gain cross-jurisdictional access to many other mobile  
59 native and web applications while on duty.

60 The guide provides

- 61     ▪ a detailed example solution and capabilities that address risk and security controls
- 62     ▪ a demonstration of the approach using commercially available products
- 63     ▪ “how to” instructions for implementers and security engineers on integrating and configuring  
64         the example solution into their organization’s enterprise in a manner that achieves security  
65         goals with minimal impact on operational efficiency and expense

66 The NCCoE assembled existing technologies that support the following standards:

- 67     ▪ Internet Engineering Task Force Request for Comments 8252, *OAuth 2.0 for Native Apps*
- 68     ▪ FIDO Universal Second Factor and Universal Authentication Framework
- 69     ▪ Security Assertion Markup Language 2.0
- 70     ▪ OpenID Connect 1.0

71 Commercial, standards-based products, such as the ones that we used, are readily available and  
72 interoperable with existing information technology (IT) infrastructures. While the NCCoE used a suite of  
73 commercial products to address this challenge, this guide does not endorse these particular products,  
74 nor does it guarantee compliance with any regulatory initiatives. Your organization’s information  
75 security experts should identify the products that will best integrate with your existing tools and IT  
76 system infrastructure. Your organization can adopt this solution or one that adheres to these guidelines  
77 in whole, or you can use this guide as a starting point for tailoring and implementing parts of a solution.

78 **BENEFITS**

79 The NCCoE’s practice guide to *Mobile Application Single Sign-On* can help PSOs:

- 80       ▪ define requirements for mobile application SSO and MFA implementation
- 81       ▪ improve interoperability among mobile platforms, applications, and IdPs, regardless of the
- 82       application development platform used in their construction
- 83       ▪ enhance the efficiency of PSFRs by reducing the number of authentication steps, the time
- 84       needed to access critical data, and the number of credentials that need to be managed
- 85       ▪ support a diverse set of credentials, enabling a PSO to choose an authentication solution that
- 86       best meets its individual needs

87 **SHARE YOUR FEEDBACK**

88 You can view or download the guide at <https://www.nccoe.nist.gov/projects/use-cases/mobile-ss0>. Help  
89 the NCCoE make this guide better by sharing your thoughts with us as you read the guide. If you adopt  
90 this solution for your own organization, please share your experience and advice with us. We recognize  
91 that technical solutions alone will not fully enable the benefits of our solution, so we encourage  
92 organizations to share lessons learned and best practices for transforming the processes associated with  
93 implementing this guide.

94 To provide comments or to learn more by arranging a demonstration of this example implementation,  
95 contact the NCCoE at [psfr-nccoe@nist.gov](mailto:psfr-nccoe@nist.gov).

---

96 **TECHNOLOGY PARTNERS/COLLABORATORS**

97 Organizations participating in this project submitted their capabilities in response to an open call in the  
98 Federal Register for all sources of relevant security capabilities from academia and industry (vendors  
99 and integrators). The following respondents with relevant capabilities or product components (identified  
100 as “Technology Partners/Collaborators” herein) signed a Cooperative Research and Development  
101 Agreement (CRADA) to collaborate with NIST in a consortium to build this example solution.



102

103 Certain commercial entities, equipment, products, or materials may be identified by name or company  
104 logo or other insignia in order to acknowledge their participation in this collaboration or to describe an  
105 experimental procedure or concept adequately. Such identification is not intended to imply special  
106 status or relationship with NIST or recommendation or endorsement by NIST or NCCoE; neither is it  
107 intended to imply that the entities, equipment, products, or materials are necessarily the best available  
108 for the purpose.

---

The National Cybersecurity Center of Excellence (NCCoE), a part of the National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST), is a collaborative hub where industry organizations, government agencies, and academic institutions work together to address businesses’ most pressing cybersecurity challenges. Through this collaboration, the NCCoE develops modular, easily adaptable example cybersecurity solutions demonstrating how to apply standards and best practices using commercially available technology.

**LEARN MORE**

Visit <https://www.nccoe.nist.gov>  
[nccoe@nist.gov](mailto:nccoe@nist.gov)  
301-975-0200

# Mobile Application Single Sign-On

## Improving Authentication for Public Safety First Responders

---

**Volume B:**  
Approach, Architecture, and Security Characteristics

**Bill Fisher**  
**Paul Grassi\***

Applied Cybersecurity Division  
Information Technology Laboratory

**Spike E. Dog**  
**Santos Jha**  
**William Kim\***  
**Taylor McCorkill**  
**Joseph Portner\***

**Mark Russell**  
**Sudhi Umarji**  
The MITRE Corporation  
McLean, Virginia

**William C. Barker**  
Dakota Consulting  
Silver Spring, Maryland

*\*Former employee; all work for this publication was done while at employer.*

May 2019

SECOND DRAFT

This publication is available free of charge from  
<https://www.nccoe.nist.gov/projects/use-cases/mobile-ss0>

## DISCLAIMER

Certain commercial entities, equipment, products, or materials may be identified by name or company logo or other insignia in order to acknowledge their participation in this collaboration or to describe an experimental procedure or concept adequately. Such identification is not intended to imply special status or relationship with NIST or recommendation or endorsement by NIST or NCCoE; neither is it intended to imply that the entities, equipment, products, or materials are necessarily the best available for the purpose.

National Institute of Standards and Technology Special Publication 1800-13B, Natl. Inst. Stand. Technol. Spec. Publ. 1800-13B, 73 pages (May 2019), CODEN: NSPUE2

## FEEDBACK

You can improve this guide by contributing feedback. As you review and adopt this solution for your own organization, we ask you and your colleagues to share your experience and advice with us.

Comments on this publication may be submitted to: [psfr-nccoe@nist.gov](mailto:psfr-nccoe@nist.gov).

Public comment period: May 29, 2019, through June 28, 2019

All comments are subject to release under the Freedom of Information Act.

National Cybersecurity Center of Excellence  
National Institute of Standards and Technology  
100 Bureau Drive  
Mailstop 2002  
Gaithersburg, Maryland 20899  
Email: [nccoe@nist.gov](mailto:nccoe@nist.gov)

## NATIONAL CYBERSECURITY CENTER OF EXCELLENCE

The National Cybersecurity Center of Excellence (NCCoE), a part of the National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST), is a collaborative hub where industry organizations, government agencies, and academic institutions work together to address businesses' most pressing cybersecurity issues. This public-private partnership enables the creation of practical cybersecurity solutions for specific industries, as well as for broad, cross-sector technology challenges. Through consortia under Cooperative Research and Development Agreements (CRADAs), including technology partners—from Fortune 50 market leaders to smaller companies specializing in information technology security—the NCCoE applies standards and best practices to develop modular, easily adaptable example cybersecurity solutions using commercially available technology. The NCCoE documents these example solutions in the NIST Special Publication 1800 series, which maps capabilities to the NIST Cybersecurity Framework and details the steps needed for another entity to re-create the example solution. The NCCoE was established in 2012 by NIST in partnership with the State of Maryland and Montgomery County, Maryland.

To learn more about the NCCoE, visit <https://www.nccoe.nist.gov>. To learn more about NIST, visit <https://www.nist.gov>.

## NIST CYBERSECURITY PRACTICE GUIDES

NIST Cybersecurity Practice Guides (Special Publication 1800 series) target specific cybersecurity challenges in the public and private sectors. They are practical, user-friendly guides that facilitate the adoption of standards-based approaches to cybersecurity. They show members of the information security community how to implement example solutions that help them align more easily with relevant standards and best practices and provide users with the materials lists, configuration files, and other information they need to implement a similar approach.

The documents in this series describe example implementations of cybersecurity practices that businesses and other organizations may voluntarily adopt. These documents do not describe regulations or mandatory practices, nor do they carry statutory authority.

## ABSTRACT

On-demand access to public safety data is critical to ensuring that public safety and first responder (PSFR) personnel can deliver the proper care and support during an emergency. This requirement necessitates heavy reliance on mobile platforms while in the field, which may be used to access sensitive information, such as personally identifiable information, law enforcement sensitive information, and protected health information. However, complex authentication requirements can hinder the process of providing emergency services, and any delay—even seconds—can become a matter of life or death.

In collaboration with NIST'S Public Safety Communications Research lab and industry stakeholders, the NCCoE aims to help PSFR personnel efficiently and securely gain access to mission data via mobile devices and applications. This practice guide describes a reference design for multifactor authentication (MFA) and mobile single sign-on (MSSO) for native and web applications while improving interoperability among mobile platforms, applications, and identity providers, regardless of the application development platform used in their construction. This NCCoE practice guide details a

collaborative effort between the NCCoE and technology providers to demonstrate a standards-based approach that uses commercially available and open-source products.

This guide discusses potential security risks facing organizations, benefits that may result from implementation of an MFA/MSSO system, and the approach that the NCCoE took in developing a reference architecture and build. This guide includes a discussion of major architecture design considerations, an explanation of the security characteristics achieved by the reference design, and a mapping of the security characteristics to applicable standards and security control families.

For parties interested in adopting all or part of the NCCoE reference architecture, this guide includes a detailed description of the installation, configuration, and integration of all components.

## KEYWORDS

*access control; authentication; authorization; identity; identity management; identity provider; relying party; single sign-on*

## ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

We are grateful to the following individuals for their generous contributions of expertise and time.

Name	Organization
Donna Dodson	NIST NCCoE
Tim McBride	NIST NCCoE
Jeff Vettrano	FirstNet
FNU Rajan	FirstNet
John Beltz	NIST Public Safety Communications Research Lab
Chris Leggett	Ping Identity
Paul Madsen	Ping Identity
John Bradley	Yubico
Adam Migus	Yubico
Derek Hanson	Yubico
Adam Lewis	Motorola Solutions
Mike Korus	Motorola Solutions
Dan Griesmann	Motorola Solutions

Name	Organization
Arshad Noor	StrongKey
Pushkar Marathe	StrongKey
Max Smyth	StrongKey
Scott Wong	StrongKey
Akhilesh Sah	Nok Nok Labs
Avinash Umap	Nok Nok Labs

The Technology Partners/Collaborators who participated in this build submitted their capabilities in response to a notice in the Federal Register. Respondents with relevant capabilities or product components were invited to sign a Cooperative Research and Development Agreement (CRADA) with NIST, allowing them to participate in a consortium to build this example solution. We worked with:

Technology Partner/Collaborator	Build Involvement
<a href="#">Ping Identity</a>	Federation Server
<a href="#">Motorola Solutions</a>	Mobile Apps
<a href="#">Yubico</a>	External Authenticators
<a href="#">Nok Nok Labs</a>	Fast Identity Online (FIDO) Universal Authentication Framework Server
<a href="#">StrongKey</a>	FIDO Universal Second Factor Server

1 **Contents**

2 **1 Summary.....1**

3 1.1 Challenge..... 1

4 1.1.1 Easing User Authentication Requirements ..... 2

5 1.1.2 Improving Authentication Assurance ..... 2

6 1.1.3 Federating Identities and User Account Management ..... 2

7 1.2 Solution..... 3

8 1.3 Benefits..... 4

9 **2 How to Use This Guide.....4**

10 2.1 Typographic Conventions..... 6

11 **3 Approach.....6**

12 3.1 Audience..... 6

13 3.2 Scope ..... 7

14 3.3 Assumptions ..... 8

15 3.4 Business Case..... 9

16 3.5 Risk Assessment ..... 9

17 3.5.1 PSFR Risks ..... 10

18 3.5.2 Mobile Ecosystem Threats ..... 10

19 3.5.3 Authentication and Federation Threats ..... 13

20 3.6 Systems Engineering..... 15

21 3.7 Technologies..... 15

22 **4 Architecture.....17**

23 4.1 General Architectural Considerations ..... 17

24 4.1.1 SSO with OAuth 2.0, IETF RFC 8252, and AppAuth Open-Source Libraries ..... 18

25 4.1.2 Identity Federation ..... 19

26 4.1.3 FIDO and Authenticator Types ..... 19

27 4.2 High-Level Architecture..... 19

28 4.3 Detailed Architecture Flow..... 22

29            4.3.1    SAML and U2F Authentication Flow ..... 22

30            4.3.2    OpenID Connect and UAF Authentication Flow ..... 27

31            4.4      Single Sign-On with the OAuth Authorization Flow ..... 31

32            4.5      Application Developer Perspective of the Build ..... 32

33            4.6      Identity Provider Perspective of the Build ..... 32

34            4.7      Token and Session Management ..... 33

35    **5    Security Characteristic Analysis.....33**

36            5.1      Assumptions and Limitations ..... 34

37            5.2      Threat Analysis ..... 34

38            5.2.1    Mobile Ecosystem Threat Analysis ..... 34

39            5.2.2    Authentication and Federation Threat Analysis..... 36

40            5.3      Scenarios and Findings ..... 38

41    **6    Future Build Considerations .....39**

42            6.1      Single Logout ..... 39

43            6.2      Shared Devices ..... 40

44            6.3      Step-Up Authentication..... 40

45    **Appendix A    Mapping to Cybersecurity Framework Core.....41**

46    **Appendix B    Assumptions Underlying the Build .....45**

47            B.1      Identity Proofing..... 45

48            B.2      Mobile Device Security..... 45

49            B.3      Mobile Application Security ..... 45

50            B.4      Enterprise Mobility Management ..... 47

51            B.5      FIDO Enrollment Process..... 48

52    **Appendix C    Architectural Considerations for the Mobile Application Single**

53            **Sign-On Build.....49**

54            C.1      SSO with OAuth 2.0, IETF RFC 8252, and AppAuth Open-Source Libraries ..... 49

55                   C.1.1    Attributes and Authorization..... 51

56            C.2      Federation ..... 52

57	C.3 Authenticator Types .....	53
58	C.3.1 UAF Protocol .....	56
59	C.3.2 U2F Protocol .....	57
60	C.3.3 FIDO 2 .....	57
61	C.3.4 FIDO Key Registration .....	57
62	C.3.5 FIDO Authenticator Attestation .....	58
63	C.3.6 FIDO Deployment Considerations .....	59
64	<b>Appendix D Acronyms .....</b>	<b>61</b>
65	<b>Appendix E References .....</b>	<b>63</b>
66	<b>List of Figures</b>	
67	Figure 3-1 The Mobile Ecosystem .....	13
68	Figure 4-1 High-Level U2F Architecture .....	20
69	Figure 4-2 High-Level UAF Architecture .....	21
70	Figure 4-3 SAML and U2F Sequence Diagram .....	23
71	Figure 4-4 OIDC and UAF Sequence Diagram .....	27
72	Figure 5-1 Mobile Device Technology Stack .....	35
73	<b>List of Tables</b>	
74	Table 3-1 Threat Classes and Categories .....	11
75	Table 3-2 Products and Technologies .....	15
76	Table A-1 Cybersecurity Framework Categories .....	41
77	Table C-1 FAL Requirements .....	53
78	Table C-2 AAL Summary of Requirements .....	55

## 79 1 Summary

80 The National Cybersecurity Center of Excellence (NCCoE), with the National Institute of Standards and  
81 Technology's (NIST's) Public Safety Communications Research lab, is helping the public safety and first  
82 responder (PSFR) community address the challenge of securing sensitive information accessed on  
83 mobile applications. The Mobile Application Single Sign-On (SSO) Project is a collaborative effort with  
84 industry and the information technology (IT) community, including vendors of cybersecurity solutions.

85 This project aims to help PSFR personnel efficiently and securely gain access to mission-critical data via  
86 mobile devices and applications through mobile SSO, identity federation, and multifactor authentication  
87 (MFA) solutions for native and web applications by using standards-based commercially available and  
88 open-source products.

89 The reference design herein

- 90     ▪ provides a detailed example solution and capabilities that address risk and security controls
- 91     ▪ demonstrates standards-based MFA, identity federation, and mobile SSO for native and web  
92     applications
- 93     ▪ supports multiple authentication methods, considering unique environmental constraints faced  
94     by first responders in emergency medical services, law enforcement, and fire services

### 95 1.1 Challenge

96 On-demand access to public safety data is critical to ensuring that PSFR personnel can protect life and  
97 property during an emergency. Mobile platforms offer a significant operational advantage to public  
98 safety stakeholders by providing access to mission-critical information and services while deployed in  
99 the field, during training and exercises, or when participating in day-to-day business and preparing for  
100 emergencies during nonemergency periods. These advantages can be limited if complex authentication  
101 requirements hinder PSFR personnel, especially when a delay—even seconds—is a matter of containing  
102 or exacerbating an emergency. PSFR communities are challenged with implementing efficient and  
103 secure authentication mechanisms to protect access to this sensitive information while meeting the  
104 demands of their operational environment.

105 Many public safety organizations (PSOs) are in the process of transitioning from traditional land-based  
106 mobile communications to high-speed, regional or nationwide wireless broadband networks (e.g., First  
107 Responder Network Authority [FirstNet]). These emerging 5G systems employ internet protocol-based  
108 communications to provide secure and interoperable public safety communications to support  
109 initiatives such as Criminal Justice Information Services; Regional Information Sharing Systems; and  
110 international justice and public safety services, such as those provided by Nlets. This transition will  
111 foster critically needed interoperability within and among jurisdictions but will create a significant

112 increase in the number of mobile Android and iPhone operating system (iOS) devices that PSOs will need  
113 to manage.

114 Current PSO authentication services may not be sustainable in the face of this growth. There are needs  
115 to improve security assurance, limit authentication requirements that are imposed on users (e.g., avoid  
116 the number of passwords that are required), improve the usability and efficiency of user account  
117 management, and share identities across jurisdictional boundaries. There is no single management or  
118 administrative hierarchy spanning the PSFR population. PSFR organizations operate in a variety of  
119 environments with different authentication requirements. Standards-based solutions are needed to  
120 support technical interoperability and this diverse set of PSO environments.

### 121 1.1.1 Easing User Authentication Requirements

122 Many devices that digitally access public safety information employ different software applications to  
123 access different information sources. Single-factor authentication processes, usually passwords, are  
124 most commonly required to access each of these applications. Users often need different passwords or  
125 personal identification numbers (PINs) for each application used to access critical information.  
126 Authentication prompts, such as entering complex passwords on a small touchscreen for each  
127 application, can hinder PSFRs. There is an operational need for the mobile systems on which they rely to  
128 support a single authentication process that can be used to access multiple applications. This is referred  
129 to as single sign-on, or SSO.

### 130 1.1.2 Improving Authentication Assurance

131 Single-factor password authentication mechanisms for mobile native and web applications may not  
132 provide sufficient protection for control of access to law enforcement-sensitive information, protected  
133 health information, and personally identifiable information (PII). Replacement of passwords by  
134 multifactor technology (e.g., a PIN plus some physical token or biometric) is widely recognized as  
135 necessary for access to sensitive information. Technology for these capabilities exists, but budgetary,  
136 contractual, and operational considerations have impeded implementation and use of these  
137 technologies. PSOs need a solution that supports differing authenticator requirements across the  
138 community (e.g., law enforcement, fire response, emergency medical services) and a “future proof”  
139 solution allowing for adoption of evolving technologies that may better support PSFRs in the line of  
140 duty.

### 141 1.1.3 Federating Identities and User Account Management

142 PSFRs need access to a variety of applications and databases to support routine activities and  
143 emergency situations. These resources may be accessed by portable mobile devices or mobile data  
144 terminals in vehicles. It is not uncommon for these resources to reside within neighboring jurisdictions  
145 at the federal, state, county, or local level. Even when the information is within the same jurisdiction, it  
146 may reside in a third-party vendor’s cloud service. This environment results in issuance of many user

147 accounts to each PSFR that are managed and updated by those neighboring jurisdictions or cloud service  
148 providers. When a PSFR leaves or changes job functions, the home organization must ensure that  
149 accounts are deactivated, avoiding any orphaned accounts managed by third parties. PSOs need a  
150 solution that reduces the number of accounts managed and allows user accounts and credentials issued  
151 by a PSFR's home organization to access information across jurisdictions and with cloud services. The  
152 ability of one organization to accept the identity and credentials from another organization in the form  
153 of an identity assertion is called identity federation. Current commercially available standards support  
154 this functionality.

## 155 1.2 Solution

156 This NIST Cybersecurity Practice Guide demonstrates how commercially available technologies,  
157 standards, and best practices implementing SSO, identity federation, and MFA can meet the needs of  
158 public safety first responder communities when accessing services from mobile devices.

159 In our lab at the NCCoE, we built an environment that simulates common identity providers (IdPs) and  
160 software applications found in PSFR infrastructure. In this guide, we show how a PSFR entity can  
161 leverage this infrastructure to implement SSO, identity federation, and MFA for native and web  
162 applications on mobile platforms. SSO, federation, and MFA capabilities can be implemented  
163 independently, but implementing them together would achieve maximum improvement with respect to  
164 usability, interoperability, and security.

165 At its core, the architecture described in [Section 4](#) implements the Internet Engineering Task Force's  
166 (IETF's) best current practice (BCP) guidance found in Request for Comments (RFC) 8252, *OAuth 2.0 for*  
167 *Native Apps* [1]. Leveraging technology newly available in modern mobile operating systems (OSes), RFC  
168 8252 defines a specific flow allowing for authentication to mobile native applications without exposing  
169 user credentials to the client application. This authentication can be leveraged by additional mobile  
170 native and web applications to provide an SSO experience, avoiding the need for the user to manage  
171 credentials independently for each application. Using the Fast Identity Online (FIDO) Universal  
172 Authentication Framework (UAF) [2] and Universal Second Factor (U2F) [3] protocols, this solution  
173 supports MFA on mobile platforms that use a diverse set of authenticators. The use of security assertion  
174 markup language (SAML) 2.0 [4] and OpenID Connect (OIDC) 1.0 [5] federation protocols allows PSOs to  
175 share identity assertions between applications and across PSO jurisdictions. Using this architecture  
176 allows PSFR personnel to authenticate once—say, at the beginning of their shift—and then leverage that  
177 single authentication to gain access to many other mobile native and web applications while on duty,  
178 reducing the time needed for authentication.

179 The PSFR community comprises tens of thousands of different organizations across the United States,  
180 many of which may operate their own IdPs. Today, most IdPs use SAML 2.0, but OIDC is rapidly gaining  
181 market share as an alternative for identity federation. As this build architecture demonstrates, an OAuth  
182 authorization server (AS) can integrate with both OIDC and SAML IdPs.

183 The guide provides:

- 184       ▪ a detailed example solution and capabilities that may be implemented independently or in  
185       combination to address risk and security controls
- 186       ▪ a demonstration of the approach, which uses commercially available products
- 187       ▪ how-to instructions for implementers and security engineers on integrating and configuring the  
188       example solution into their organization's enterprise in a manner that achieves security goals  
189       with minimal impact on operational efficiency and expense

190 Organizations can adopt this solution or a different one that adheres to these guidelines in whole, or an  
191 organization can use this guide as a starting point for tailoring and implementing parts of a solution.

## 192 1.3 Benefits

193 The NCCoE, in collaboration with our stakeholders in the PSFR community, identified the need for a  
194 mobile SSO and MFA solution for native and web applications. This NCCoE practice guide, *Mobile*  
195 *Application Single Sign-On*, can help PSOs:

- 196       ▪ define requirements for mobile application SSO and MFA implementation
- 197       ▪ improve interoperability among mobile platforms, applications, and IdPs, regardless of the  
198       application development platform used in their construction
- 199       ▪ enhance the efficiency of PSFRs by reducing the number of authentication steps, the time  
200       needed to access critical data, and the number of credentials that need to be managed
- 201       ▪ support a diverse set of credentials, enabling a PSO to choose an authentication solution that  
202       best meets its individual needs
- 203       ▪ enable cross-jurisdictional information sharing by identity federation

## 204 2 How to Use This Guide

205 This NIST Cybersecurity Practice Guide demonstrates a standards-based reference design and provides  
206 users with the information they need to replicate an MFA and mobile SSO solution for mobile native and  
207 web applications. This reference design is modular and can be deployed in whole or in part.

208 This guide contains three volumes:

- 209       ▪ NIST Special Publication (SP) 1800-13A: *Executive Summary*
- 210       ▪ NIST SP 1800-13B: *Approach, Architecture, and Security Characteristics*—what we built and why  
211       **(you are here)**
- 212       ▪ NIST SP 1800-13C: *How-To Guides*—instructions for building the example solution

213 Depending on your role in your organization, you might use this guide in different ways:

214 **Business decision makers, including chief security and technology officers,** will be interested in the  
215 *Executive Summary* (NIST SP 1800-13A), which describes the following topics:

- 216       ▪ challenges that enterprises face in MFA and mobile SSO for native and web applications
- 217       ▪ example solution built at the NCCoE
- 218       ▪ benefits of adopting the example solution

219 **Technology or security program managers** who are concerned with how to identify, understand, assess,  
220 and mitigate risk will be interested in this part of the guide, NIST SP 1800-13B, which describes what we  
221 did and why. The following sections will be of particular interest:

- 222       ▪ [Section 3.5](#), Risk Assessment, provides a description of the risk analysis we performed.
- 223       ▪ [Appendix A](#), Mapping to Cybersecurity Framework Core, maps the security characteristics of this  
224 example solution to cybersecurity standards and best practices.

225 You might share the *Executive Summary*, NIST SP 1800-13A, with your leadership team members to help  
226 them understand the importance of adopting a standards-based MFA and mobile SSO solution for native  
227 and web applications.

228 **Information Technology (IT) professionals** who want to implement an approach like this will find the  
229 whole practice guide useful. You can use the how-to portion of the guide, NIST SP 1800-13C, to replicate  
230 all or parts of the build created in our lab. The how-to portion of the guide provides specific product  
231 installation, configuration, and integration instructions for implementing the example solution. We do  
232 not re-create the product manufacturer’s documentation, which is generally widely available. Rather,  
233 we show how we incorporated the products together in our environment to create an example solution.

234 This guide assumes that IT professionals have experience implementing security products within the  
235 enterprise. While we have used a suite of commercial products to address this challenge, this guide does  
236 not endorse these particular products. Your organization can adopt this solution or one that adheres to  
237 these guidelines in whole, or you can use this guide as a starting point for tailoring and implementing  
238 SSO or MFA separately. Your organization’s security experts should identify the products that will best  
239 integrate with your existing tools and IT system infrastructure. We hope you will seek products that are  
240 congruent with applicable standards and best practices. [Section 3.7](#), Technologies, lists the products we  
241 used and maps them to the cybersecurity controls provided by this reference solution.

242 A NIST Cybersecurity Practice Guide does not describe “the” solution, but a possible solution. This is a  
243 draft guide. We seek feedback on its contents and welcome your input. Comments, suggestions, and  
244 success stories will improve subsequent versions of this guide. Please contribute your thoughts to [psfr-  
245 nccoe@nist.gov](mailto:psfr-nccoe@nist.gov).

## 246 2.1 Typographic Conventions

247 The following table presents typographic conventions used in this volume.

Typeface/Symbol	Meaning	Example
<i>Italics</i>	file names and pathnames, references to documents that are not hyperlinks, new terms, and placeholders	For detailed definitions of terms, see the <i>NCCoE Glossary</i> .
<b>Bold</b>	names of menus, options, command buttons, and fields	Choose <b>File &gt; Edit</b> .
Monospace	command-line input, onscreen computer output, sample code examples, and status codes	<code>mkdir</code>
<b>Monospace Bold</b>	command-line user input contrasted with computer output	<b>service sshd start</b>
<a href="#">blue text</a>	link to other parts of the document, a web URL, or an email address	All publications from NIST's NCCoE are available at <a href="https://www.nccoe.nist.gov">https://www.nccoe.nist.gov</a> .

## 248 3 Approach

249 In conjunction with the PSFR community, the National Cybersecurity Center of Excellence developed a  
 250 project description identifying MFA and SSO for mobile native and web applications as a critical need for  
 251 PSFR organizations. The NCCoE then engaged subject matter experts from industry organizations,  
 252 technology vendors, and standards bodies to develop an architecture and reference design leveraging  
 253 new capabilities in modern mobile OSes and best current practices in SSO and MFA.

### 254 3.1 Audience

255 This guide is intended for individuals or entities that are interested in understanding the mobile native  
 256 and web application SSO and MFA reference designs that the NCCoE has implemented to allow PSFR

257 personnel to securely and efficiently gain access to mission-critical data by using mobile devices. Though  
258 the NCCoE developed this reference design with the PSFR community, any party interested in SSO and  
259 MFA for native mobile and web applications can leverage the architecture and design principles  
260 implemented in this guide.

261 The overall build architecture addresses three different audiences with somewhat separate concerns:

- 262     ▪ IdPs—PSFR organizations that issue and maintain user accounts for their users. Larger PSFR  
263     organizations may operate their own IdP infrastructures and may federate by using SAML or  
264     OIDC services, while others may seek to use an IdP service provider. IdPs are responsible for  
265     identity proofing, account creation, account and attribute management, and credential  
266     management.
- 267     ▪ Relying parties (RPs)—organizations providing application services to multiple PSFR  
268     organizations. RPs may be software as a service (SaaS) providers or PSFR organizations providing  
269     shared services consumed by other organizations. The RP operates an OAuth 2.0 AS, which  
270     integrates with users' IdPs and issues access tokens to enable mobile applications to make  
271     requests to the back-end application servers.
- 272     ▪ Application developers—mobile application developers. Today, mobile client applications are  
273     typically developed by the same software provider as the back-end RP applications. However,  
274     the OAuth framework enables interoperability between RP applications and third-party client  
275     applications. In any case, mobile application development is a specialized skill with unique  
276     considerations and requirements. Mobile application developers should consider implementing  
277     the AppAuth library for IETF RFC 8252 to enable standards-based SSO.

## 278 3.2 Scope

279 The focus of this project is to address the need for secure and efficient mobile native and web  
280 application SSO. The NCCoE drafted a use case that identified numerous desired solution characteristics.  
281 After an open call in the Federal Register for vendors to help develop a solution, we chose participating  
282 technology collaborators on a first-come, first-served basis. We scoped the project to produce the  
283 following high-level desired outcomes:

- 284     ▪ Provide a standards-based solution architecture that selects an effective and secure approach to  
285     implementing mobile SSO, leveraging native capabilities of the mobile OS.
- 286     ▪ Ensure that mobile applications do not have access to user credentials.
- 287     ▪ Support MFA and multiple authentication protocols.
- 288     ▪ Support multiple authenticators, considering unique environmental constraints faced by first  
289     responders in emergency medical services, law enforcement, and fire services.
- 290     ▪ Support cross-jurisdictional information sharing through identity federation.

291 To maintain the project’s focus on core SSO and MFA requirements, the following subjects are out of  
292 scope. These technologies and practices are critical to a successful implementation, but they do not  
293 directly affect the core design decisions.

- 294       ▪ Identity proofing—The solution creates synthetic digital identities that represent the identities  
295       and attributes of public safety personnel to test authentication assertions. This includes the  
296       usage of a lab-configured identity repository—not a genuine repository and schema provided by  
297       any PSO. This guide will not demonstrate an identity proofing process.
- 298       ▪ Access control—This solution supports the creation and federation of attributes but will not  
299       discuss or demonstrate access control policies that an RP might implement to govern access to  
300       specific resources.
- 301       ▪ Credential storage—This solution is agnostic to where credentials are stored on the mobile  
302       device. For example, this use case is not affected by storing a certificate in software versus  
303       hardware, such as a trusted platform module.
- 304       ▪ Enterprise Mobility Management (EMM)—The solution assumes that all applications involved in  
305       the SSO experience are allowable via an EMM. This implementation may be supported by using  
306       an EMM (for example, to automatically provision required mobile applications to the device),  
307       but it does not strictly depend on using an EMM.
- 308       ▪ Fallback authentication mechanisms—This solution involves the use of multifactor  
309       authenticators, which may consist of physical authentication devices or cryptographic keys  
310       stored directly on mobile devices. Situations may arise where a user’s authenticator or device  
311       has been lost or stolen. This practice guide recommends registering multiple authenticators for  
312       each user as a partial mitigation, but in some cases, it may be necessary to either enable users  
313       to fall back to single-factor authentication or provide other alternatives. Such fallback  
314       mechanisms must be evaluated considering the organization’s security and availability  
315       requirements.

### 316 3.3 Assumptions

317 Before implementing the capabilities described in this practice guide, organizations should review the  
318 assumptions underlying the NCCoE build. These assumptions are detailed in [Appendix B](#). Though not in  
319 scope for this effort, implementers should consider whether the same assumptions can be made based  
320 on current policy, process, and IT infrastructure. As detailed in [Appendix B](#), applicable and appropriate  
321 guidance is provided to assist this process for the following functions:

- 322       ▪ identity proofing
- 323       ▪ mobile device security
- 324       ▪ mobile application security
- 325       ▪ EMM

- 326       ▪ FIDO enrollment process

### 327   **3.4 Business Case**

328   Any decision to implement IT systems within an organization must begin with a solid business case. This  
329   business case could be an independent initiative or a component of the organization’s strategic planning  
330   cycle. Individual business units or functional areas typically derive functional or business unit strategies  
331   from the overall organization’s strategic plan. The business drivers for any IT project must originate in  
332   these strategic plans, and the decision to determine if an organization will invest in mobile SSO, identity  
333   federation, or MFA by implementing the solution in this practice guide will be based on the  
334   organization’s decision-making process for initiating new projects.

335   Important inputs to the business case are the risks to the organization from mobile authentication and  
336   identity management, as outlined in Section 3.5. Apart from addressing cybersecurity risks, SSO also  
337   improves the user experience and alleviates the overhead associated with maintaining and using  
338   passwords for multiple applications. This provides a degree of convenience to all types of users, but  
339   reducing the authentication overhead for PSFR users and reducing barriers to getting the information  
340   and applications that they need could have a tremendous effect. First responder organizations and  
341   application providers also benefit by using interoperable standards that provide easy integration across  
342   disparate technology platforms. In addition, the burden of account management is reduced by using a  
343   single user account managed by the organization to access multiple applications and services.

### 344   **3.5 Risk Assessment**

345   NIST SP 800-30 Revision 1 [\[6\]](#), *Guide for Conducting Risk Assessments*, states that risk is “a measure of  
346   the extent to which an entity is threatened by a potential circumstance or event, and typically a function  
347   of (i) the adverse impacts that would arise if the circumstance or event occurs; and (ii) the likelihood of  
348   occurrence.” The guide further defines risk assessment as “the process of identifying, estimating, and  
349   prioritizing risks to organizational operations (including mission, functions, image, reputation),  
350   organizational assets, individuals, other organizations, and the Nation, resulting from the operation of  
351   an information system. Part of risk management incorporates threat and vulnerability analyses, and  
352   considers mitigations provided by security controls planned or in place.”

353   The NCCoE recommends that any discussion of risk management, particularly at the enterprise level,  
354   begins with a comprehensive review of NIST SP 800-37 Revision 2, *Guide for Applying the Risk  
355   Management Framework to Federal Information Systems* [\[7\]](#)—material that is available to the public.  
356   The risk management framework guidance, as a whole, proved invaluable in giving us a baseline to  
357   assess risks, from which we developed the project, the security characteristics of the build, and this  
358   guide.

### 359 3.5.1 PSFR Risks

360 As PSFR communities adopt mobile platforms and applications, organizations should consider potential  
361 risks that these new devices and ecosystems introduce that may negatively affect PSFR organizations  
362 and the ability of PSFR personnel to operate. These are some of the risks:

- 363       ▪ The reliance on passwords alone by many PSFR entities effectively expands the scope of a single  
364 application/database compromise when users fall back to reusing a small set of easily  
365 remembered passwords across multiple applications.
- 366       ▪ Complex passwords are harder to remember and input to IT systems. Mobile devices exacerbate  
367 this issue with small touchscreens that may not work with gloves or other PSFR equipment, and  
368 with three separate keyboards among which the user must switch. In an emergency response,  
369 any delay in accessing information may prove critical to containing a situation.
- 370       ▪ Social engineering, man-in-the-middle attacks, replay attacks, and phishing all present real  
371 threats to password-based authentication systems.
- 372       ▪ Deterministic, cryptographic authentication mechanisms have security benefits yet come with  
373 the challenge of cryptographic key management. Loss or misuse of cryptographic keys could  
374 undermine an authentication system, leading to unauthorized access or data leakage.
- 375       ▪ Biometric authentication mechanisms may be optimal for some PSFR personnel, yet  
376 organizations need to ensure that PII, such as fingerprint templates, is protected.
- 377       ▪ Credentials exposed to mobile applications could be stolen by malicious applications or misused  
378 by nonmalicious applications. Previously, it was common for native applications to use  
379 embedded user-agents (commonly implemented with web views) for OAuth requests. That  
380 approach has many drawbacks, including the host application being able to copy user  
381 credentials and cookies, as well as the user needing to authenticate again in each application.

### 382 3.5.2 Mobile Ecosystem Threats

383 Any discussion of risks and vulnerabilities is incomplete without considering the threats that are  
384 involved. NIST SP 800-150, *Guide to Cyber Threat Information Sharing* [8], states that a cyber threat is  
385 “any circumstance or event with the potential to adversely impact organizational operations (including  
386 mission, functions, image, or reputation), organizational assets, individuals, other organizations, or the  
387 Nation through an information system via unauthorized access, destruction, disclosure, or modification  
388 of information, and/or denial of service.”

389 To simplify this concept, a *threat* is anything that can exploit a *vulnerability* to damage an *asset*. Finding  
390 the intersection of these three will yield a *risk*. Understanding the applicable threats to a system is the  
391 first step in determining its risks.

392 However, identifying and delving into mobile threats is not the primary goal of this practice guide.  
393 Instead, we rely on prior work from NIST’s [Mobile Threat Catalogue](#) (MTC), along with its associated

394 NIST Interagency Report 8144, *Assessing Threats to Mobile Devices & Infrastructure* [9]. Each entry in  
 395 the MTC contains several pieces of information: an identifier, a category, a high-level description, details  
 396 on its origin, exploit examples, examples of common vulnerabilities and exposures, possible  
 397 countermeasures, and academic references. For the purposes of this practice guide, we are primarily  
 398 interested in threat identifiers, categories, descriptions, and countermeasures.

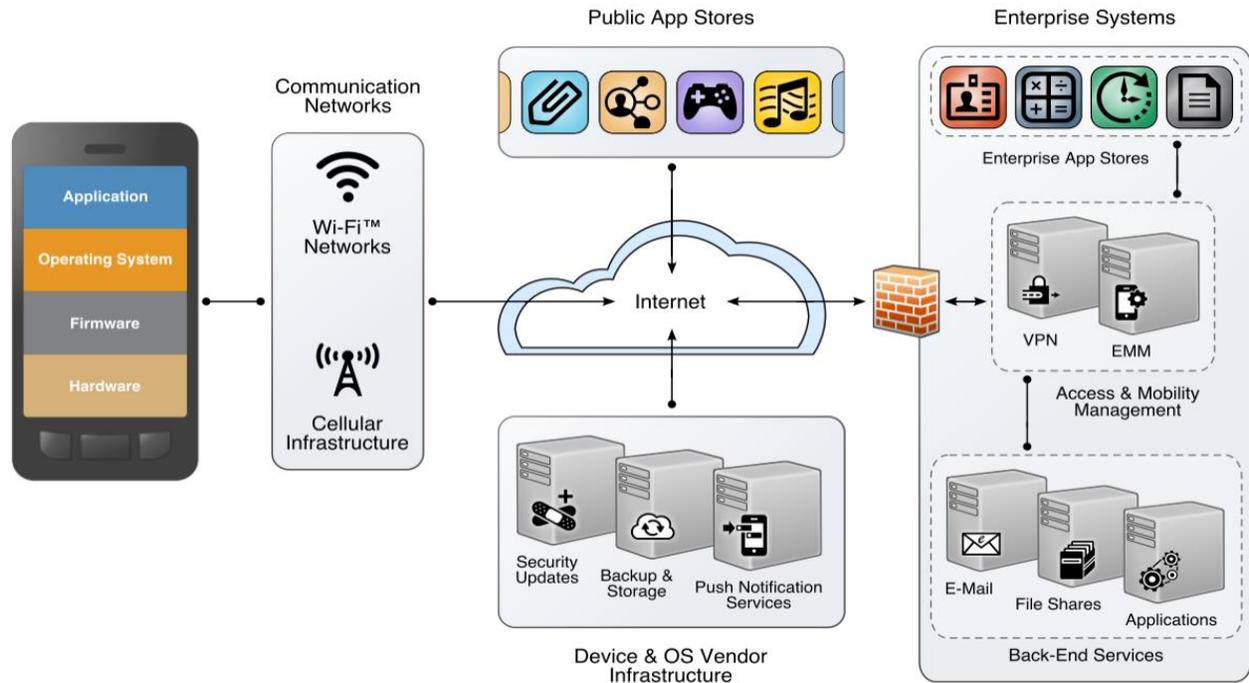
399 In broad strokes, the MTC covers 32 threat categories that are grouped into 12 distinct classes, as shown  
 400 in Table 3-1. Of these categories, three in particular, highlighted in green in the table, are covered by the  
 401 guidance in this practice guide. If implemented correctly, this guidance will help mitigate those threats.

402 **Table 3-1 Threat Classes and Categories**

Threat Class	Threat Category	Threat Class	Threat Category
<b>Application</b>	<a href="#">Malicious or Privacy-Invasive Applications</a>	<b>Local Area Network and Personal Area Network</b>	<a href="#">Network Threats: Bluetooth</a>
	<a href="#">Vulnerable Applications</a>		<a href="#">Network Threats: Near Field Communication (NFC)</a>
<b>Authentication</b>	<a href="#">Authentication: User or Device to Network</a>		<a href="#">Network Threats: Wi-Fi</a>
	<a href="#">Authentication: User or Device to Remote Service</a>	<b>Payment</b>	<a href="#">Application-Based</a>
	<a href="#">Authentication: User to Device</a>		<a href="#">In-Application Purchases</a>
	<a href="#">NFC-Based</a>		
<b>Cellular</b>	<a href="#">Carrier Infrastructure</a>	<b>Physical Access</b>	<a href="#">Physical Access</a>
	<a href="#">Carrier Interoperability</a>	<b>Privacy</b>	<a href="#">Behavior Tracking</a>
	<a href="#">Cellular Air Interface</a>	<b>Supply Chain</b>	<a href="#">Supply Chain</a>
	<a href="#">Consumer-Grade Femtocell</a>	<b>Stack</b>	<a href="#">Baseband Subsystem</a>
	<a href="#">SMS/MMS/RCS</a>		<a href="#">Boot Firmware</a>
	<a href="#">USSD</a>		<a href="#">Device Drivers</a>
	<a href="#">VoLTE</a>		

Threat Class	Threat Category	Threat Class	Threat Category
<b>Ecosystem</b>	<a href="#">Mobile Application Store</a>		<a href="#">Isolated Execution Environments</a>
	<a href="#">Mobile OS &amp; Vendor Infrastructure</a>		<a href="#">Mobile Operating System</a>
<b>EMM</b>	<a href="#">EMM</a>		<a href="#">SD Card</a>
<b>Global Positioning System (GPS)</b>	<a href="#">GPS</a>		<a href="#">USIM/SIM/UICC Security</a>

403 The other categories, while still important elements of the mobile ecosystem and critical to the health of  
 404 an overall mobility architecture, are out of scope for this document. The entire mobile ecosystem should  
 405 be considered when analyzing threats to the architecture; this ecosystem is depicted in Figure 3-1, taken  
 406 from NIST Interagency Report 8144. Each player in the ecosystem—the mobile device user, the  
 407 enterprise, the network operator, the application developer, and the original equipment manufacturer  
 408 (OEM)—can find suggestions to deter other threats by reviewing the MTC and NIST Interagency Report  
 409 8144. Many of these share common solutions, such as using EMM software to monitor device health,  
 410 and installing applications from only authorized sources.

411 **Figure 3-1 The Mobile Ecosystem**

412

413 **3.5.3 Authentication and Federation Threats**

414 The MTC is a useful reference from the perspective of mobile devices, applications, and networks. In the  
 415 context of mobile SSO, specific threats to authentication and federation systems must also be  
 416 considered. Table 8-1 in NIST SP 800-63B [10] lists several categories of threats against authenticators:

- 417     ▪ theft—stealing a physical authenticator, such as a smart card or U2F device
- 418     ▪ duplication—unauthorized copying of an authenticator, such as a password or private key
- 419     ▪ eavesdropping—interception of an authenticator secret when in use
- 420     ▪ offline cracking—attacks on authenticators that do not require interactive authentication  
 421 attempts, such as brute-force attacks on passwords used to protect cryptographic keys
- 422     ▪ side-channel attack—exposure of an authentication secret through observation of the  
 423 authenticator’s physical characteristics
- 424     ▪ phishing or pharming—capturing authenticator output through impersonation of the RP or IdP
- 425     ▪ social engineering—using a pretext to convince the user to subvert the authentication process

- 426       ▪ online guessing—attempting to guess passwords through repeated online authentication  
427       attempts with the RP or IdP
- 428       ▪ end point compromise—malicious code on the user’s device, which is stealing authenticator  
429       secrets, redirecting authentication attempts to unintended RPs, or otherwise subverting the  
430       authentication process
- 431       ▪ unauthorized binding—binding an attacker-controlled authenticator with the user’s account by  
432       intercepting the authenticator during provisioning or impersonating the user in the enrollment  
433       process

434 These threats undermine the basic assumption that use of an authenticator in an authentication  
435 protocol demonstrates that the user initiating the protocol is the individual referenced by the claimed  
436 user identifier. Mitigating these threats is the primary design goal of MFA, and the FIDO specifications  
437 address many of these threats.

438 An additional set of threats concerns federation protocols. Authentication threats affect the process of  
439 direct authentication of the user to the RP or IdP, whereas federation threats affect the assurance that  
440 the IdP can deliver assertions that are genuine and unaltered, only to the intended RP. Table 8-1 in NIST  
441 SP 800-63C [\[11\]](#) lists the following federation threats:

- 442       ▪ assertion manufacture or modification—generation of a false assertion or unauthorized  
443       modification of a valid assertion
- 444       ▪ assertion disclosure—disclosure of sensitive information contained in an assertion to an  
445       unauthorized third party
- 446       ▪ assertion repudiation by the IdP—IdP denies having authenticated a user after the fact
- 447       ▪ assertion repudiation by the subscriber—subscriber denies having authenticated and performed  
448       actions on the system
- 449       ▪ assertion redirect—subversion of the federation protocol flow to enable an attacker to obtain  
450       the assertion or to redirect it to an unintended RP
- 451       ▪ assertion reuse—attacker obtains a previously used assertion to establish his own session with  
452       the RP
- 453       ▪ assertion substitution—attacker substitutes an assertion for a different user in the federation  
454       flow, leading to session hijacking or fixation

455 Federation protocols are complex and require interaction among multiple systems, typically under  
456 different management. Implementers should carefully apply best security practices relevant to the  
457 federation protocols in use. Most federation protocols can incorporate security measures to address  
458 these threats, but this may require specific configuration and enabling optional features.

### 459 3.6 Systems Engineering

460 Some organizations use a systems engineering-based approach to plan and implement their IT projects.  
 461 Organizations wishing to implement IT systems should develop robust requirements, taking into  
 462 consideration the operational needs of each system stakeholder. Standards such as International  
 463 Organization for Standardization (ISO)/International Electrotechnical Commission (IEC) ISO/IEC/IEEE  
 464 15288:2015, *Systems and software engineering—System life cycle processes* [12]; and NIST SP 800-160,  
 465 *Systems Security Engineering: Considerations for a Multidisciplinary Approach in the Engineering of*  
 466 *Trustworthy Secure Systems* [13] provide guidance for applying security in systems development. With  
 467 both standards, organizations can choose to adopt only those sections of the standard that are relevant  
 468 to their development approach, environment, and business context. NIST SP 800-160 recommends a  
 469 thorough analysis of alternative solution classes accounting for security objectives, considerations,  
 470 concerns, limitations, and constraints. This advice applies to both new system developments and  
 471 integration of components into existing systems, the focus of this practice guide. [Section 4.1](#), General  
 472 Architecture Considerations, may assist organizations with this analysis.

### 473 3.7 Technologies

474 Table 3-2 lists all of the technologies used in this project and provides a mapping among the generic  
 475 application term, the specific product used, and the NIST Cybersecurity Framework Subcategory that the  
 476 product provides. For a mapping of Cybersecurity Framework Subcategories to security controls, please  
 477 refer to [Appendix A](#), Mapping to Cybersecurity Framework Core. Refer to Table A-1 for an explanation of  
 478 the Cybersecurity Framework Category and Subcategory codes.

479 **Table 3-2 Products and Technologies**

Component	Specific Product Used	How the Component Functions in the Build	Applicable Cybersecurity Framework Subcategories
Federation Server	Ping Federate 8.2	OAuth 2.0 AS OIDC provider SAML 2 IdP	PR.AC-3: Remote access is managed.
FIDO U2F Server	StrongKey Crypto Engine (SKCE) 2.0	FIDO U2F server	PR.AC-1: Identities and credentials are managed for authorized devices and users.

Component	Specific Product Used	How the Component Functions in the Build	Applicable Cybersecurity Framework Subcategories
External Authenticator	YubiKey Neo	FIDO U2F token supporting authentication over NFC	PR-AC-1: Identities and credentials are managed for authorized devices and users.
FIDO UAF Server	Nok Nok Labs FIDO UAF Server	UAF authenticator enrollment, authentication, and transaction confirmation	PR.AC-1: Identities and credentials are managed for authorized devices and users.
Mobile Applications (including SaaS back end)	Motorola Solutions Public Safety Experience (PSX) Cockpit, PSX Messenger, and PSX Mapping 5.2; custom demo applications developed by the build team	Provide application programming interfaces (APIs) for mobile client applications to access cloud-hosted services and data; consume OAuth tokens	PR.AC-3: Remote access is managed.
SSO Implementing Best Current Practice	AppAuth Software Development Kit (SDK) for iOS and Android	Library used by mobile applications, providing an IETF RFC 8252-compliant OAuth 2.0 client implementation; implements authorization requests, Proof Key for Code Exchange (PKCE), and token refresh	PR.AC-3: Remote access is managed.

## 480 **4 Architecture**

481 The NCCoE worked with industry subject matter experts to develop an open, standards-based,  
482 commercially available architecture demonstrating three main capabilities:

- 483     ▪ SSO to RP applications using OAuth 2.0 implemented in accordance with RFC 8252 (the *OAuth*  
484     *2.0 for Native Apps* BCP)
- 485     ▪ identity federation to RP applications using both SAML 2.0 and OIDC 1.0
- 486     ▪ MFA to mobile native and web applications using FIDO UAF and U2F

487 Though these capabilities are implemented as an integrated solution in this guide, organizational  
488 requirements may dictate that only a subset of these capabilities be implemented. The modular  
489 approach of this architecture is designed to support such use cases.

490 Additionally, the authors of this document recognize that PSFR organizations will have diverse IT  
491 infrastructures, which may include previously purchased authentication, federation, or SSO capabilities,  
492 and legacy technology. For this reason, Section 4.1 and [Appendix C](#) outline general considerations that  
493 any organization may apply when designing an architecture tailored to organizational needs. [Section 4.2](#)  
494 follows with considerations for implementing the architecture specifically developed by the NCCoE for  
495 this project.

496 Organizations are encouraged to read [Section 3.2](#), [Section 3.3](#), [Section 3.5](#), and [Appendix B](#) to  
497 understand context for this architecture design.

### 498 **4.1 General Architectural Considerations**

499 The PSFR community is large and diverse, comprising numerous state, local, tribal, and federal  
500 organizations with individual missions and jurisdictions. PSFR personnel include police, firefighters,  
501 emergency medical technicians, public health officials, and other skilled support personnel. There is no  
502 single management or administrative hierarchy spanning the PSFR population. PSFR organizations  
503 operate in a variety of environments with different technology requirements and wide variations in IT  
504 staffing and budgets.

505 Cooperation and communication among PSFR organizations at multiple levels is crucial to addressing  
506 emergencies that span organizational boundaries. Examples include coordination among multiple  
507 services within a city (e.g., fire and police services), among different state law enforcement agencies to  
508 address interstate crime, and among federal agencies like the Department of Homeland Security and its  
509 state and local counterparts. This coordination is generally achieved through peer-to-peer interaction  
510 and agreement or through federation structures, such as the National Identity Exchange Federation.  
511 Where interoperability is achieved, it is the result of the cooperation of willing partners rather than  
512 adherence to central mandates.

513 Enabling interoperability across the heterogeneous, decentralized PSFR user base requires a standards-  
514 based solution; a proprietary solution might not be uniformly adopted and could not be mandated. The  
515 solution must also support identity federation and federated authentication, as user accounts and  
516 authenticators are managed by several different organizations. The solution must also accommodate  
517 organizations of different sizes, levels of technical capabilities, and budgets. Compatibility with the  
518 existing capabilities of fielded identity systems can reduce the barrier to entry for smaller organizations.

519 Emergency response and other specialized work performed by PSFR personnel often require that they  
520 wear personal protective equipment, such as gloves, masks, respirators, and helmets. This equipment  
521 renders some authentication methods impractical or unusable. Fingerprint scanners cannot be used  
522 with gloves, authentication using a mobile device camera to analyze the user's face or iris may be  
523 hampered by masks or goggles, and entering complex passwords on small virtual keyboards is also  
524 impractical for gloved users. In addition, PSFR work often involves urgent and hazardous situations  
525 requiring the ability to quickly perform mission activities like driving, firefighting, and administering  
526 urgent medical aid. Therefore, the solution must support a variety of authenticators in an interoperable  
527 way so that individual user groups can select authenticators suited to their operational constraints.

528 In considering these requirements, the NCCoE implemented a standards-based architecture and  
529 reference design. Section 4.1.1 through [Section 4.1.3](#) detail the primary standards used, while  
530 [Appendix C](#) goes into great depth on architectural consideration when implementing these standards.

#### 531 [4.1.1 SSO with OAuth 2.0, IETF RFC 8252, and AppAuth Open-Source Libraries](#)

532 SSO enables a user to authenticate once and to subsequently access different applications without  
533 having to authenticate again. SSO on mobile devices is complicated by the sandboxed architecture,  
534 which makes it difficult to share the session state with back-end systems between individual  
535 applications. EMM vendors have provided solutions through proprietary SDKs, but this approach  
536 requires integrating the SDK with each individual application and does not scale to a large and diverse  
537 population, such as the PSFR user community.

538 OAuth 2.0 is an IETF standard that has been widely adopted to provide delegated authorization of  
539 clients accessing representational state transfer interfaces, including mobile applications. OAuth 2.0,  
540 when implemented in accordance with RFC 8252 (the *OAuth 2.0 for Native Apps* BCP), provides a  
541 standards-based SSO pattern for mobile applications. The OpenID Foundation's AppAuth libraries [\[14\]](#)  
542 can facilitate building mobile applications in full compliance with IETF RFC 8252, but any mobile  
543 application that follows RFC 8252's core recommendation of using a shared external user-agent for the  
544 OAuth authorization flow will have the benefit of SSO. OAuth considerations and recommendations are  
545 detailed in [Section C.1](#) of [Appendix C](#).

### 546 4.1.2 Identity Federation

547 SAML 2.0 [4] and OIDC 1.0 [5] are two standards that enable an application to redirect users to an IdP  
548 for authentication and to receive an assertion of the user's identity and other optional attributes.  
549 Federation is important in a distributed environment like the PSFR community, where user management  
550 occurs in numerous local organizations. Federated authentication relieves users of having to create  
551 accounts in each application that they need to access, and it frees application owners from managing  
552 user accounts and credentials. OIDC is a more recent protocol, but many organizations have existing  
553 SAML deployments. The architecture supports both standards to facilitate adoption without requiring  
554 upgrades or modifications to existing SAML IdPs. Federation considerations and recommendations are  
555 detailed in [Section C.2](#) of [Appendix C](#).

### 556 4.1.3 FIDO and Authenticator Types

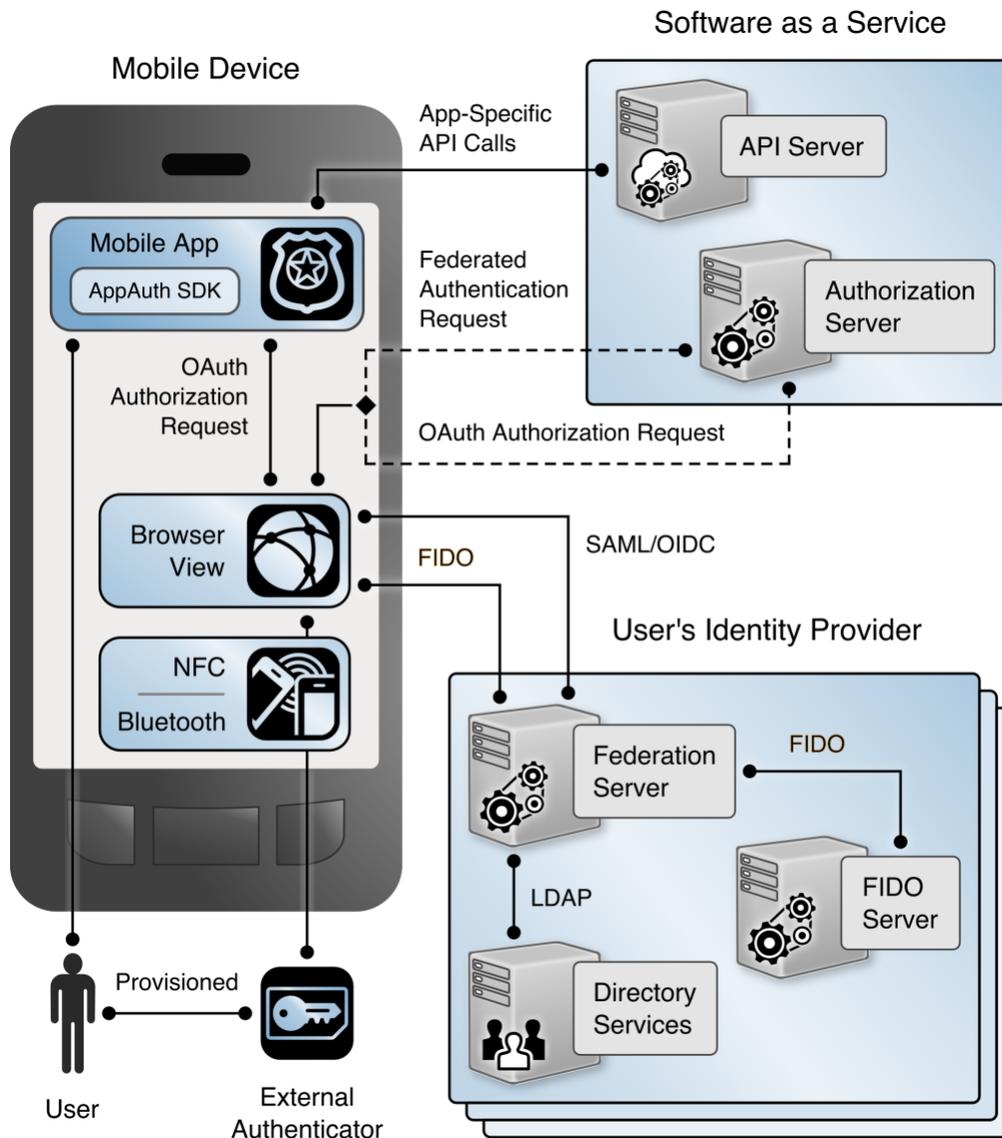
557 When considering MFA implementations, PSFR organizations should carefully consider organizationally  
558 defined authenticator requirements. These requirements are detailed in [Section C.3](#) of [Appendix C](#).

559 FIDO provides a standard framework within which vendors have produced a wide range of interoperable  
560 biometric, hardware, and software authenticators. This will enable PSFR organizations to choose  
561 authenticators suitable to their operational constraints. The FIDO Alliance has published specifications  
562 for two types of authenticators based on UAF and U2F. These protocols operate agnostic of the FIDO  
563 authenticator, allowing PSOs to choose any FIDO-certified authenticator that meets operational  
564 requirements and to implement it with this solution. The protocols, FIDO key registration, FIDO  
565 authenticator attestation, and FIDO deployment considerations are also detailed in [Section C.3](#) of  
566 [Appendix C](#).

## 567 4.2 High-Level Architecture

568 The NCCoE implemented both FIDO UAF and U2F for this project. The high-level architecture varies  
569 somewhat between the two implementations. Figure 4-1 depicts the interactions between the key  
570 elements of the build architecture with the U2F implementation.

571 Figure 4-1 High-Level U2F Architecture

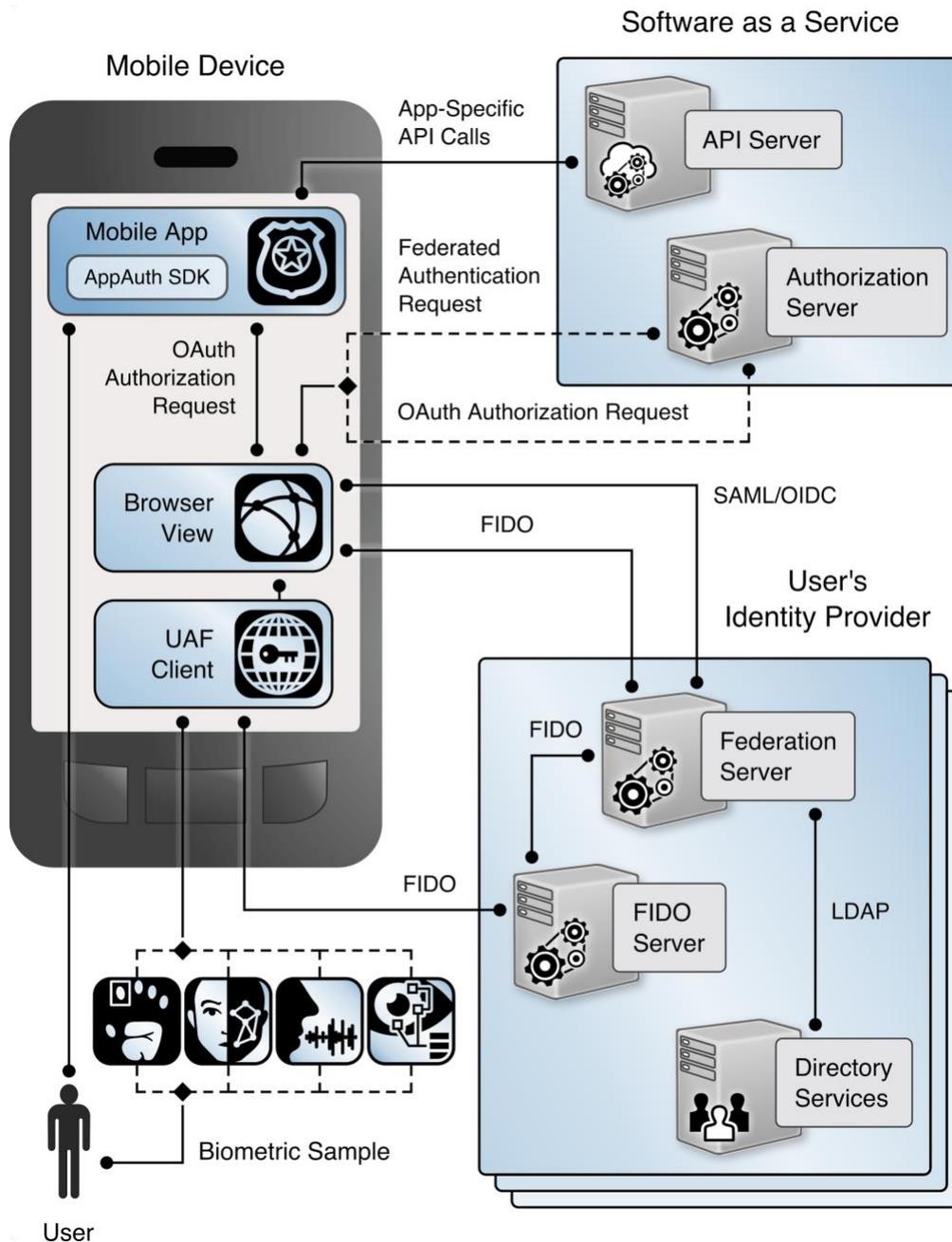


572

573 On the mobile device, the mobile application includes the OpenID Foundation's AppAuth library, which  
 574 streamlines implementation of the OAuth client functionality in accordance with the IETF RFC 8252,  
 575 *OAuth 2.0 for Native Apps*, guidance. AppAuth orchestrates the authorization request flow by using the  
 576 device's native browser capabilities, including in-application browser tabs on devices that support them.  
 577 The mobile device also supports the two FIDO authentication schemes, UAF and U2F. UAF typically  
 578 involves an internal (on-device) authenticator that authenticates the user directly to the device by using  
 579 biometrics, other hardware capabilities, or a software client. U2F typically involves an external hardware  
 580 authenticator token, which communicates with the device over NFC or Bluetooth.

581 Figure 4-2 shows the corresponding architecture view with the FIDO UAF components.

582 Figure 4-2 High-Level UAF Architecture



583 User

584 The SaaS provider hosts application servers that provide APIs consumed by mobile applications, as well  
 585 as an OAuth AS. The browser on the mobile device connects to the AS to initiate the OAuth

586 authorization code flow. The AS redirects the browser to the IdP of the user's organization to  
587 authenticate the user. Once the user has authenticated, the AS will issue an access token, which is  
588 returned to the mobile application through a browser redirect and can be used to authorize requests to  
589 the application servers.

590 The user's IdP includes a federation server that implements SAML or OIDC, directory services containing  
591 user accounts and attributes, and a FIDO authentication service that can issue authentication challenges  
592 and validate the responses that are returned from FIDO authenticators. The FIDO authentication service  
593 may be built into the IdP but is more commonly provided by a separate server.

594 A SaaS provider may provide multiple applications, which may be protected by the same AS. For  
595 example, Motorola Solutions provides both the PSX Mapping and PSX Messaging applications, which are  
596 protected by a shared AS. Users may also use services from different SaaS providers, which would have  
597 separate ASes. This build architecture can provide SSO between applications hosted by a single SaaS  
598 provider as well as across applications provided by multiple SaaS vendors.

599 Support for these two scenarios differs between the Android and iOS platforms. Today, U2F is not  
600 supported on iOS devices, while UAF is supported on both Android and iOS. The build team has only  
601 built and tested the U2F implementation on Android devices.

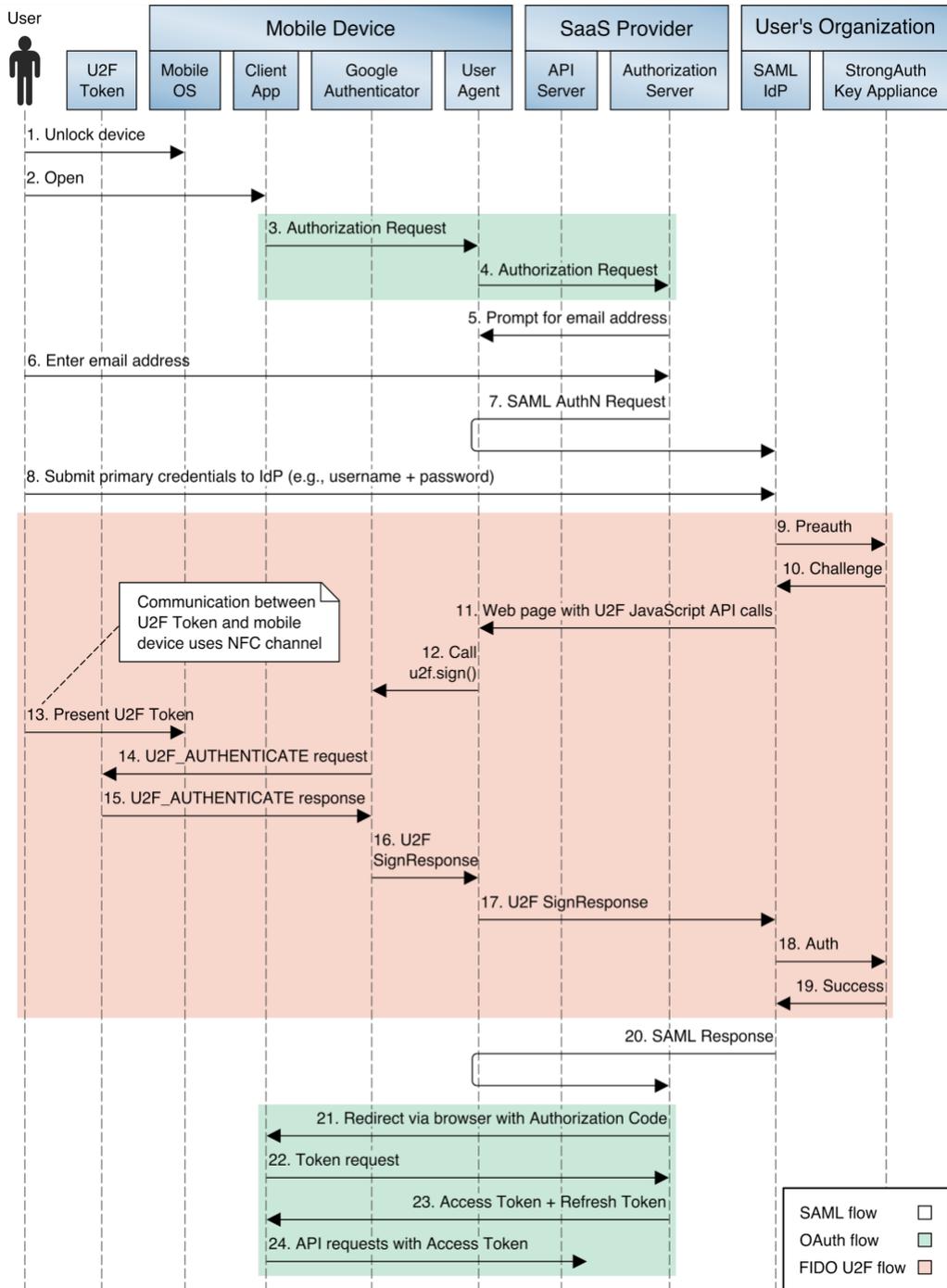
## 602 **4.3 Detailed Architecture Flow**

603 The mobile SSO lab implementation demonstrates two authentication flows: one in which the user  
604 authenticates to a SAML IdP with a YubiKey Neo U2F token and a PIN, and one in which the user  
605 authenticates to an OIDC IdP by using UAF with a fingerprint. These pairings of federation and  
606 authentication protocols are purely arbitrary; U2F could just as easily be used with OIDC, for example.

### 607 **4.3.1 SAML and U2F Authentication Flow**

608 The authentication flow using SAML and U2F is depicted in Figure 4-3. As explained in Section 4.2, at the  
609 time of publication this implementation is not supported on iOS devices. This figure depicts the message  
610 flows among different components on the mobile device or hosted by the SaaS provider or user  
611 organization. In the figure, colored backgrounds differentiate the SAML, OAuth, and FIDO U2F protocol  
612 flows. Prior to this authentication flow, the user must have registered a FIDO U2F token with the IdP,  
613 and the AS and IdP must have exchanged metadata and established an RP trust.

614 Figure 4-3 SAML and U2F Sequence Diagram



615

616 The detailed steps are as follows:

- 617 1. The user unlocks the mobile device. Any form of lock-screen authentication can be used; it is not  
618 directly tied to the subsequent authentication or authorization.
- 619 2. The user opens a mobile application that connects to the SaaS provider's back-end services. The  
620 mobile application determines that an OAuth token is needed. This may occur because the  
621 application has no access or refresh tokens cached or it has an existing token known to be  
622 expired based on token metadata, or it may submit a request to the API server with a cached  
623 bearer token and receive an HTTP 401 status code in the response.
- 624 3. The mobile application initiates an OAuth authorization request using the authorization code  
625 flow by invoking the system browser (or an in-application browser tab) with the uniform  
626 resource locator (URL) of the SaaS provider AS's authorization end point.
- 627 4. The browser submits the request to the AS over a hypertext transfer protocol secure (https)  
628 connection. This begins the OAuth 2 authorization flow.
- 629 5. The AS returns a page that prompts for the user's email address.
- 630 6. The user submits the email address. The AS uses the domain of the email address for IdP  
631 discovery. The user needs to specify the email address only one time; the address is stored in a  
632 cookie in the device browser and will be used to automatically determine the user's IdP on  
633 subsequent visits to the AS.
- 634 7. The AS redirects the device browser to the user's IdP with a SAML authentication request. This  
635 begins the SAML authentication flow.
- 636 8. The IdP returns a login page. The user submits a username and PIN. The IdP validates these  
637 credentials against the directory service. If the credentials are invalid, the IdP redirects back to  
638 the login page with an error message and prompts the user to authenticate again. If the  
639 credentials are valid, the IdP continues to step 9.
- 640 9. The IdP submits a "preauth" API request to the StrongKey SKCE server. The preauth request  
641 includes the authenticated username obtained in step 8. This begins the FIDO U2F  
642 authentication process.
- 643 10. The SKCE responds with a U2F challenge that must be signed by the user's registered key in the  
644 U2F token to complete authentication. If the user has multiple keys registered, the SKCE returns  
645 a challenge for each key so that the user can authenticate with any registered authenticator.

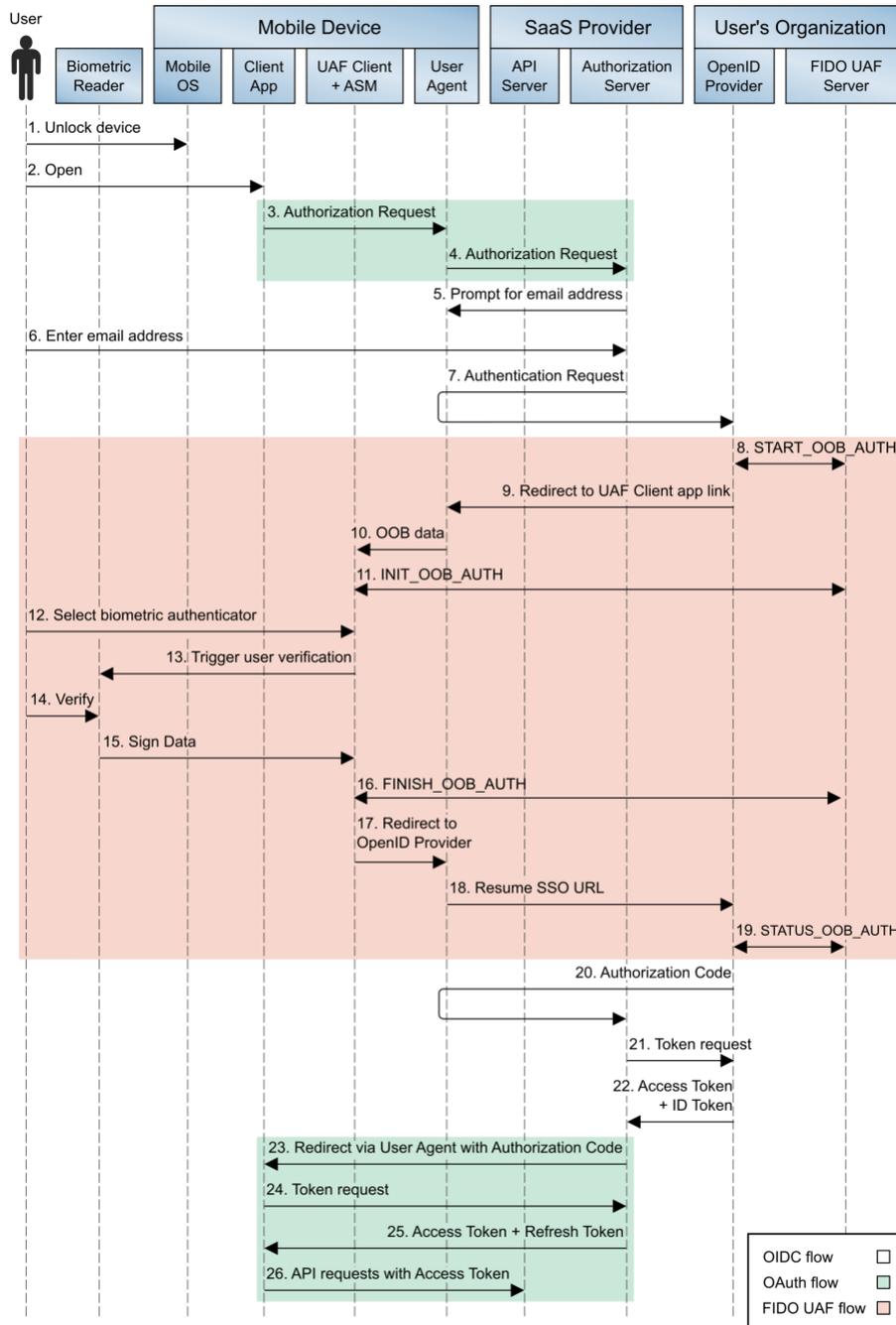
- 646 11. The IdP returns a page to the user's browser that includes Google's JavaScript U2F API and the  
647 challenge obtained from the SKCE in step 10. The user taps a button on the page to initiate U2F  
648 authentication, which triggers a call to the `u2f.sign` JavaScript function.
- 649 12. The `u2f.sign` function invokes the Google Authenticator application, passing it the challenge, the  
650 `appld` (typically the domain name of the IdP), and an array of the user's registered key.
- 651 13. Google Authenticator prompts the user to hold the U2F token against the NFC radio of the  
652 mobile device, which the user does.
- 653 14. Google Authenticator connects to the U2F token over the NFC channel and sends an applet  
654 selection command to activate the U2F applet on the token. Google Authenticator then submits  
655 a `U2F_AUTHENTICATE` message to the token.
- 656 15. Provided that the token has one of the keys registered at the IdP, it signs the challenge and  
657 returns the signature in an authentication success response over the NFC channel.
- 658 16. Google Authenticator returns the signature to the browser in a `SignResponse` object.
- 659 17. The callback script on the authentication web page returns the `SignResponse` object to the IdP.
- 660 18. The IdP calls the "authenticate" API on the SKCE, passing the `SignResponse` as a parameter.
- 661 19. The SKCE validates the signature of the challenge by using the registered public key and verifies  
662 that the `appld` matches the IdP's and that the response was received within the configured time-  
663 out. The API returns a response to the IdP, indicating success or failure and any error messages.  
664 This concludes the U2F authentication process; the user has now authenticated to the IdP,  
665 which sets a session cookie.
- 666 20. The IdP returns a SAML response indicating the authentication success or failure to the AS  
667 through a browser redirect. If authentication has succeeded, the response will include the user's  
668 identifier and, optionally, additional attribute assertions. This concludes the SAML  
669 authentication flow. The user is now authenticated to the AS, which sets a session cookie.  
670 Optionally, the AS could prompt the user to approve the authorization request, displaying the  
671 scopes of access being requested at this step.
- 672 21. The AS sends a redirect to the browser with the authorization code. The target of the redirect is  
673 the mobile application's `redirect_uri`, a link that opens in the mobile application through a  
674 mechanism provided by the mobile OS (e.g., custom request scheme or Android AppLink).
- 675 22. The mobile application extracts the authorization code from the URL and submits it to the AS's  
676 token end point.

- 677        23. The AS responds with an access token and, optionally, a refresh token that can be used to obtain  
678            an additional access token when the original token expires. This concludes the OAuth  
679            authorization flow.
- 680        24. The mobile application can now submit API requests to the SaaS provider’s back-end services by  
681            using the access token in accordance with the bearer token authorization scheme defined in  
682            RFC 6750, *The OAuth 2.0 Authorization Framework: Bearer Token Usage* [\[15\]](#).

683 4.3.2 OpenID Connect and UAF Authentication Flow

684 The authentication flow involving OIDC and UAF is depicted in Figure 4-4.

685 Figure 4-4 OIDC and UAF Sequence Diagram



686

687 Figure 4-4 uses the same conventions and color coding as the earlier SAML/U2F diagram (Figure 4-3) to  
688 depict components on the device, at the SaaS provider, and at the user's organization. Prior to this  
689 authentication flow, the user must have registered a FIDO UAF authenticator with the IdP, and the AS  
690 must be registered as an OIDC client at the IdP. The detailed steps are listed below. For ease of  
691 comparison, steps that are identical to the corresponding step in Figure 4-3 are shown in italics.

- 692 1. *The user unlocks the mobile device. Any form of lock-screen authentication can be used; it is not*  
693 *directly tied to the subsequent authentication or authorization.*
- 694 2. *The user opens a mobile application that connects to the SaaS provider's back-end services. The*  
695 *mobile application determines that an OAuth token is needed. This may occur because the*  
696 *application has no access or refresh tokens cached or it has an existing token known to be*  
697 *expired based on token metadata, or it may submit a request to the API server with a cached*  
698 *bearer token and receive an HTTP 401 status code in the response.*
- 699 3. *The mobile application initiates an OAuth authorization request by using the authorization code*  
700 *flow by invoking the system browser (or an in-application browser tab) with the URL of the SaaS*  
701 *provider AS's authorization end point.*
- 702 4. *The in-application browser tab submits the request to the AS over an https connection. This*  
703 *begins the OAuth 2 authorization flow.*
- 704 5. *The AS returns a page that prompts for the user's email address.*
- 705 6. *The user submits the email address. The AS uses the domain of the email address for IdP*  
706 *discovery. The user needs to specify the email address only one time; the address is stored in a*  
707 *cookie in the device browser and will be used to automatically determine the user's IdP on*  
708 *subsequent visits to the AS.*
- 709 7. The AS redirects the device browser to the user's IdP with an OIDC authentication request. This  
710 begins the OIDC authentication flow.
- 711 8. The IdP submits a START\_OOB\_AUTH request to the UAF authentication server. The server  
712 responds with a data structure containing the necessary information for a UAF client to initiate  
713 an Out-of-Band (OOB) authentication, including a transaction identifier linked to the user's  
714 session at the IdP.
- 715 9. The IdP returns an HTTP redirect to the browser. The redirect target URL is an application link  
716 that will pass the OOB data to the Nok Nok Labs Passport application on the device.
- 717 10. The Nok Nok Passport application opens and extracts the OOB data from the application link  
718 URL.

- 719 11. Passport sends an INIT\_OOB\_AUTH request to the UAF authentication server, including the OOB  
720 data and a list of authenticators available on the device that the user has registered for use at  
721 the IdP. The server responds with a set of UAF challenges for the registered authenticators.
- 722 12. If the user has multiple registered authenticators (e.g., fingerprint and voice authentication),  
723 Passport prompts the user to select which authenticator to use.
- 724 13. Passport activates the authenticator, which prompts the user to perform the required steps for  
725 verification. For example, if the selected authenticator is the Android Fingerprint authenticator,  
726 the standard Android fingerprint user interface (UI) overlay will pop over the browser and  
727 prompt the user to scan an enrolled fingerprint. The authenticator UI may be presented by  
728 Passport (for example, the PIN authenticator), or it may be provided by an OS component such  
729 as Apple Touch ID or Face ID.
- 730 14. The user completes the biometric scan or other user verification activity. Verification occurs  
731 locally on the device; biometrics and secrets are not transmitted to the server.
- 732 15. The authenticator signs the UAF challenge by using the private key that was created during  
733 initial UAF enrollment with the IdP. The authenticator returns control to the Passport  
734 application through an application link with the signed UAF challenge.
- 735 16. The Passport application sends a FINISH\_OOB\_AUTH API request to the UAF authentication  
736 server. The server extracts the username and registered public key and validates the signed  
737 response. The server can also validate the authenticator's attestation signature and check that  
738 the security properties of the authenticator satisfy the IdP's security policy. The server caches  
739 the authentication result.
- 740 17. The Passport application closes, returning control to the browser, which is redirected to the  
741 "resume SSO" URL at the IdP. This URL is defined on the Ping server to enable multistep  
742 authentication flows and allow the browser to be redirected back to the IdP after completing  
743 required authentication steps with another application.
- 744 18. The browser requests the Resume SSO URL at the IdP.
- 745 19. The IdP sends a STATUS\_OOB\_AUTH API request to the UAF authentication server. The UAF  
746 server responds with the success/failure status of the out-of-band authentication and any  
747 associated error messages. (Note: The IdP begins sending STATUS\_OOB\_AUTH requests  
748 periodically, following step 9 in the flow, and continues to do so until a final status is returned or  
749 the transaction times out.) This concludes the UAF authentication process; the user has now  
750 authenticated to the IdP, which sets a session cookie.
- 751 20. The IdP returns an authorization code to the AS through a browser redirect.

- 752 21. The AS submits a token request to the IdP's token end point, authenticating with its credentials  
753 and including the authorization code.
- 754 22. The IdP responds with an identification (ID) token and an access token. The ID token includes  
755 the user's identifier and, optionally, additional attribute assertions. The access token can  
756 optionally be used to request additional user claims at the IdP's user information end point. This  
757 concludes the OIDC authentication flow. The user is now authenticated to the AS, which sets a  
758 session cookie. Optionally, the AS could prompt for the user to approve the authorization  
759 request, displaying the scopes of access being requested at this step.
- 760 23. *The AS sends a redirect to the browser with the authorization code. The target of the redirect is*  
761 *the mobile application's redirect\_uri, a link that opens in the mobile application through a*  
762 *mechanism provided by the mobile OS (e.g., custom request scheme or Android AppLink).*
- 763 24. *The mobile application extracts the authorization code from the URL and submits it to the AS's*  
764 *token end point.*
- 765 25. *The AS responds with an access token and, optionally, a refresh token that can be used to obtain*  
766 *an additional access token when the original token expires. This concludes the OAuth*  
767 *authorization flow.*
- 768 26. *The mobile application can now submit API requests to the SaaS provider's back-end services by*  
769 *using the access token in accordance with the bearer token authorization scheme.*

770 Both authentication flows end with a single application obtaining an access token to access back-end  
771 resources. At this point, traditional OAuth token life-cycle management would begin. Access tokens  
772 have an expiration time. Depending on the application's security policy, refresh tokens may be issued  
773 along with the access token and used to obtain a new access token when the initial token expires.  
774 Refresh tokens and access tokens can continue to be issued in this manner for as long as the security  
775 policy allows. When the current access token has expired and no additional refresh tokens are available,  
776 the mobile application would submit a new authorization request to the AS.

777 Apart from obtaining an access token, the user has established sessions with the AS and IdP that can be  
778 used for SSO.

779 Implementation details for this scenario were slightly different on iOS and Android devices. On Android  
780 devices, a Chrome Custom Tab was used as the user-agent. On iOS, however, the team encountered  
781 issues using the custom tabs implementation in iOS 12 (provided by the ASWebAuthenticationSession  
782 API) in conjunction with Passport. At step 17 in the above sequence, where the Passport application  
783 should close and control should return to the in-application browser tab, instead a second Safari  
784 window opened, and the user was prompted again to authenticate using Passport. The team  
785 determined that ASWebAuthenticationSession does not seem to support opening a different application  
786 like Passport and then returning to the same ASWebAuthenticationSession instance once the other

787 application closes. This issue was resolved by configuring AppAuth to use Safari instead of  
788 ASWebAuthenticationSession.

#### 789 **4.4 Single Sign-On with the OAuth Authorization Flow**

790 When multiple applications invoke a common user-agent to perform the OAuth authorization flow, the  
791 user-agent maintains the session state with the AS and IdP. In the build architecture, this can enable SSO  
792 in two scenarios.

793 In the first case, assume that a user has launched a mobile application, has been redirected to an IdP to  
794 authenticate, and has completed the OAuth flow to obtain an access token. Later, the user launches a  
795 second application that connects to the same AS used by the first application. The application will  
796 initiate an authorization request using the same user-agent as the first application. Provided that the  
797 user has not logged out at the AS, this request will be sent with the session cookie that was established  
798 when the user authenticated in the previous authorization flow. The AS will recognize the user's active  
799 session and issue an access token to the second application without requiring the user to authenticate  
800 again.

801 In the second case, again assume that the user has completed an OAuth flow, including authentication  
802 to an IdP, while launching the first application. Later, the user launches a second application that  
803 connects to an AS that is different from the first application. Again, the second application initiates an  
804 authorization request using the same user-agent as the first application. The user has no active session  
805 with the second AS, so the user-agent is redirected to the IdP to obtain an authentication assertion.  
806 Provided that the user has not logged out at the IdP, the authentication request will include the  
807 previously established session cookie, and the user will not be required to authenticate again at the IdP.  
808 The IdP will return an assertion to the AS, which will then issue an access token to the second  
809 application.

810 This architecture can also provide SSO across native and web applications. If the web application is an RP  
811 to the same SAML or OIDC IdP used in the authentication flow described above, the application will  
812 redirect the browser to the IdP and resume the user's existing session without the need to  
813 reauthenticate, provided that the browser used to access the web application is the same one used in  
814 the authorization flow described above. For example, if a Google Chrome Custom Tab is used in the  
815 native-application OAuth flow, then accessing the web application in Chrome will provide a shared  
816 cookie store and SSO. If the web application uses the OAuth 2.0 implicit grant, then SSO could follow  
817 either of the above workflows, depending on whether the user is already authenticated at the AS used  
818 by the application.

819 When applications use embedded web views instead of the system browser or in-application tabs for  
820 the OAuth authorization flow, each individual application's web view has its own cookie store, so there  
821 is no continuity of the session state as the user transitions from one application to another, and the user  
822 must authenticate each time.

## 823 4.5 Application Developer Perspective of the Build

824 The following paragraphs provide takeaways from an application developer’s perspective regarding the  
825 experience of the build team, inclusive of FIDO, the AppAuth library, PKCE, and Chrome Custom Tabs.

826 AppAuth was integrated as described in [Section C.1](#) of [Appendix C](#). From an application developer  
827 perspective, the primary emphasis in the build was integrating AppAuth. The authentication technology  
828 was basically transparent to the developer. In fact, the native application developers for this project had  
829 no visibility to the FIDO U2F or UAF integration. This transparency was achieved through the AppAuth  
830 pattern of delegating the authentication process to the in-application browser tab capability of the OS.  
831 Other application developer effects are listed below:

- 832       ▪ Several pieces of information must be supplied by an application in the OAuth authorization  
833       request, such as the scope and the client ID, which an OAuth AS might use to apply appropriate  
834       authentication policy. These details are obtained during the OAuth client registration process  
835       with the AS.
- 836       ▪ The ability to support multiple IdPs without requiring any hard-coding of IdP URLs in the  
837       application itself was achieved by using hypertext markup language (HTML) forms hosted by the  
838       IdP to collect information from end users (e.g., domain) during login, which was used to perform  
839       IdP discovery.

## 840 4.6 Identity Provider Perspective of the Build

841 The IdP is responsible for account and attribute creation and maintenance, as well as credential  
842 provisioning, management, and deprovisioning. Some IdP concerns for this architecture are listed  
843 below:

- 844       ▪ Enrollment/registration of authenticators: IdPs should consider the enrollment process and life-  
845       cycle management for MFA. For this NCCoE project, FIDO UAF enrollment was launched by the  
846       user via tapping a native enrollment application (Nok Nok Labs’ Passport application). During  
847       user authentication, the same application (Passport) was invoked programmatically (via  
848       AppLink) to perform FIDO authentication. In a production implementation, the IdP would need  
849       to put processes in place to enroll, retire, or replace authenticators when needed. A process for  
850       responding when authenticators are lost or stolen is particularly important to prevent  
851       unauthorized access.
- 852       ▪ For UAF, a FIDO UAF client must be installed (e.g., we installed Nok Nok Labs’ NNL Passport).
- 853       ▪ For U2F, download and install Google Authenticator (or equivalent) because mobile browsers do  
854       not support FIDO U2F 1.1 natively (as do some desktop browsers). This situation is evolving with  
855       ratification of the World Wide Web Consortium Web Authentication (WebAuthn) standard [\[16\]](#)  
856       and mobile browser support for it. For implementations supporting U2F integration in the  
857       browser, such as the one described in this practice guide, Google Authenticator is still required

858 on Android devices. For implementations using WebAuthn, native browser support may  
859 eliminate the need for Google Authenticator.

## 860 4.7 Token and Session Management

861 RP application owners have two separate areas of concern when it comes to token and session  
862 management. They have authorization tokens to manage on the client side, and the identity  
863 tokens/sessions to receive and manage from the IdP side. Each of these functions has its own separate  
864 concerns and requirements.

865 When dealing with the native application's access to RP application data, RP operators need to make  
866 sure that appropriate authorization is in place. The architecture in [Section 4.2](#) uses OAuth 2.0 and  
867 authorization tokens for this purpose, following the guidance from IETF RFC 8252. Native-application  
868 clients present a special challenge, as mentioned earlier, especially when it comes to protecting the  
869 authorization code being returned to the client. To mitigate a code interception threat, RFC 8252  
870 requires that both clients and servers use PKCE for public native-application clients. ASes should reject  
871 authorization requests from native applications that do not use PKCE. The lifetime of the authorization  
872 tokens depends on the use case, but the general recommendation from the OAuth working group is to  
873 use short-lived access tokens and long-lived refresh tokens. The reauthentication requirements in NIST  
874 SP 800-63B [\[10\]](#) can be used as guidance for maximum refresh token lifetimes at each authenticator  
875 assurance level. All security considerations from RFC 8252 apply here as well, such as making sure that  
876 attackers cannot easily guess any of the token values or credentials.

877 The RP may directly authenticate the user, in which case all of the current best practices for web session  
878 security and protecting the channel with Transport Layer Security (TLS) apply. However, if there is  
879 delegated or federated authentication via a third-party IdP, then the RP must also consider the  
880 implications for managing the identity claims received from the IdP, whether it be an ID token from an  
881 OIDC provider or a SAML assertion from a SAML IdP. This channel is used for authentication of the user,  
882 which means that potential PII may be obtained. Care must be taken to obtain user consent prior to  
883 authorization for release and use of this information in accordance with relevant regulations. If OIDC is  
884 used for authentication to the RP, then all of the OAuth 2.0 security applies again here. In all cases, all  
885 channels between parties must be protected with TLS encryption.

## 886 5 Security Characteristic Analysis

887 The purpose of the security characteristic analysis is to understand the extent to which the project  
888 meets its objective of demonstrating MFA and mobile SSO for native and web applications. In addition, it  
889 seeks to document the security benefits and drawbacks of the example solution.

## 890 5.1 Assumptions and Limitations

891 This security characteristics analysis is focused on the specific design elements of the build, consisting of  
892 MFA, SSO, and federation implementation. It discusses some elements of application development, but  
893 only the aspects that directly interact with the SSO implementation. It does not focus on potential  
894 underlying vulnerabilities in OSes, application run times, hardware, or general secure coding practices. It  
895 is assumed that risks to these foundational components are managed separately (e.g., through asset and  
896 patch management). As with any implementation, all layers of the architecture must be appropriately  
897 secured, and it is assumed that implementers will adopt standard security and maintenance practices to  
898 the elements not specifically addressed here.

899 This project did not include a comprehensive test of all security components or “red team” penetration  
900 testing or adversarial emulation. Cybersecurity is a rapidly evolving field where new threats and  
901 vulnerabilities are continually discovered. Therefore, this security guidance cannot be guaranteed to  
902 identify every potential weakness of the build architecture. It is assumed that implementers will follow  
903 risk management procedures as outlined in the NIST Risk Management Framework.

## 904 5.2 Threat Analysis

905 The following subsections describe how the build architecture addresses the threats discussed in  
906 [Section 3.5](#).

### 907 5.2.1 Mobile Ecosystem Threat Analysis

908 In [Section 3.5.2](#), we introduced the MTC, described the 32 categories of mobile threats that it covers,  
909 and highlighted the three categories that this practice guide addresses: [Vulnerable Applications](#),  
910 [Authentication: User or Device to Network](#), and [Authentication: User or Device to Remote Service](#).

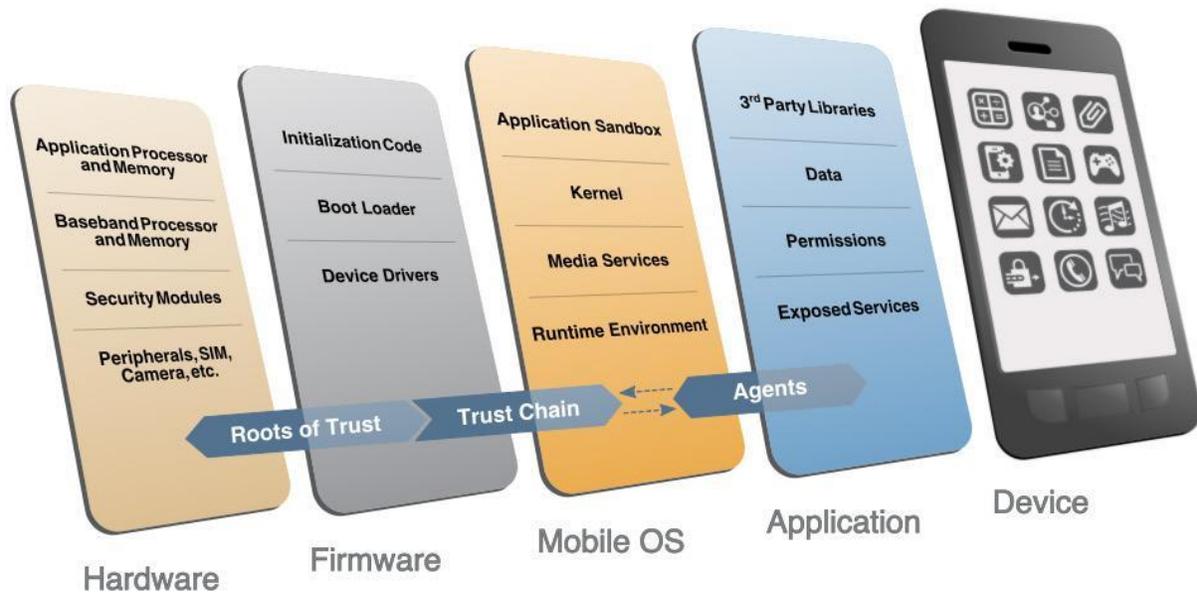
911 At the time of this writing, these categories encompass 18 entries in the MTC. However, the MTC is a  
912 living catalog, which is continually being updated. Instead of addressing each threat, we describe in  
913 general how these types of threats are mitigated by the architecture laid out in this practice guide:

- 914     ▪ Use encryption for data in transit: The IdP and AS enforce https encryption by default, which the  
915     application is required to use during SSO authentication.
- 916     ▪ Use newer mobile platforms: Volume C of this guide (NIST SP 1800-13C) calls for using at least  
917     Android 5.0 or iOS 8.0 or newer, which mitigates weaknesses of older versions (e.g., applications  
918     can access the system log in Android 4.0 and older).
- 919     ▪ Use built-in browser features: The AppAuth for Android library utilizes the Chrome Custom Tabs  
920     feature, which activates the device’s native browser. This allows the application to leverage  
921     built-in browser features, such as identifying and avoiding known malicious web pages. AppAuth  
922     for iOS supports using the SFSafariViewController and SFAuthenticationSession APIs or the Safari  
923     browser.

- 924       ▪ Avoid hard-coded secrets: The AppAuth guidance recommends and supports the use of PKCE.  
925       This allows developers to avoid using a hard-coded OAuth client secret.
- 926       ▪ Avoid logging sensitive data: The AppAuth library, which handles the OAuth 2 flow, does not log  
927       any sensitive data.
- 928       ▪ Use sound authentication practices: By using SSO, the procedures outlined in this guide allow  
929       application developers to rely on the IdP's implementation of authentication practices, such as  
930       minimum length and complexity requirements for passwords, maximum authentication  
931       attempts, and periodic reset requirements. In addition, the IdP can introduce new  
932       authenticators without any downstream effect to applications.
- 933       ▪ Use sound token management practices: Again, this guide allows application developers to rely  
934       on the IdP's implementation of authorization tokens and good management practices, such as  
935       replay-resistance mechanisms and token expirations.
- 936       ▪ Use two-factor authentication: Both FIDO U2F and UAF, as deployed in this build architecture,  
937       provide multifactor cryptographic user authentication. The U2F implementation requires the  
938       user to authenticate with a password or PIN and with a single-factor cryptographic token.  
939       However, the UAF implementation utilizes a key pair stored in the device's hardware-backed key  
940       store that is unlocked through user verification consisting of a biometric (e.g., fingerprint or  
941       voice match) or a password or PIN.
- 942       ▪ Protect cryptographic keys: FIDO U2F and UAF authentication leverage public key cryptography.  
943       In this architecture, U2F private keys are stored external to the mobile device in a hardware-  
944       secure element on a YubiKey Neo. UAF private keys are stored on the mobile device's hardware-  
945       backed key store. These private keys are never sent to external servers.
- 946       ▪ Protect biometric templates: When using biometric authentication mechanisms, organizations  
947       should consider storage and use of user biometric templates. This architecture relies on the  
948       native biometric mechanisms implemented by modern mobile devices and OSes, which verify  
949       biometric templates locally and store them in protected storage.

950 To fully address these threats and threats in other MTC categories, additional measures should be taken  
951 by all parties involved in the mobile ecosystem: the mobile device user, the enterprise, the network  
952 operator, the application developer, and the OEM. A figure depicting this ecosystem in total is shown in  
953 [Section 3.5.2](#). In addition, the mobile platform stack should be understood in great detail to fully assess  
954 the threats that may be applicable. An illustration of this stack, taken from NIST Interagency Report  
955 8144 [9], is shown in Figure 5-1.

956 **Figure 5-1 Mobile Device Technology Stack**



957

958 Several tools, techniques, and best practices are available to mitigate these other threats. EMM  
 959 software can allow enterprises to manage devices more fully and to gain a better understanding of  
 960 device health; one example of this is detecting whether a device has been *rooted* or *jailbroken*, which  
 961 compromises the security architecture of the entire platform. Application security-vetting software  
 962 (commonly known as app-vetting software) can be utilized to detect vulnerabilities in first-party  
 963 applications and to discover potentially malicious behavior in third-party applications. Using app-vetting  
 964 software in conjunction with EMM software prevents the installation of unauthorized applications and  
 965 reduces the attack surface of the platform. For more guidance on these threats and mitigations, refer to  
 966 the [MTC](#) and NIST Interagency Report 8144 [\[9\]](#).

## 967 5.2.2 Authentication and Federation Threat Analysis

968 [Section 3.5.3](#) discussed threats specific to authentication and federation systems, which are cataloged in  
 969 NIST SP 800-63-3 [\[17\]](#). MFA, provided in the build architecture by FIDO U2F and UAF, is designed to  
 970 mitigate several authentication risks:

- 971     ▪ Theft of physical authenticator: Possessing an authenticator, which could be a YubiKey (in the  
 972       case of U2F) or the mobile device itself (in the case of UAF), does not in itself enable an attacker  
 973       to impersonate the user to an RP or IdP. Additional knowledge or a biometric factor is needed to  
 974       authenticate.
- 975     ▪ Eavesdropping: Some MFA solutions, including many onetime password (OTP) implementations,  
 976       are vulnerable to eavesdropping attacks. FIDO implements cryptographic authentication, which  
 977       does not involve transmission of secrets over the network.

- 978       ▪ Social engineering: A typical social engineering exploit involves impersonating a system  
979       administrator or other authority figure under some pretext to convince users to disclose their  
980       passwords over the phone, but this comprises only a single authentication factor.
- 981       ▪ Online guessing: Traditional password authentication schemes may be vulnerable to online  
982       guessing attacks, though lockout and throttling policies can reduce the risk. Cryptographic  
983       authentication schemes are not vulnerable to online guessing.

984 FIDO also incorporates protections against phishing and pharming attacks. When a FIDO authenticator is  
985 registered with an RP, a new key pair is created and associated with the RP's application ID, which is  
986 derived from the domain name in the URL where the registration transaction was initiated. During  
987 authentication, the application ID is again derived from the URL of the page that is requesting  
988 authentication, and the authenticator will sign the authentication challenge only if a key pair has been  
989 registered with the matching application ID. The FIDO facets specification enables sites to define a list of  
990 domain names that should be treated as a single application ID to accommodate service providers that  
991 span multiple domain names, such as google.com and gmail.com.

992 The application ID verification effectively prevents the most common type of phishing attack, in which  
993 the attacker creates a new domain and tricks users into visiting that domain instead of an intended RP  
994 where the user has an account. For example, an attacker might register a domain called "google-  
995 accts.com" and send emails with a pretext to get users to visit the site, such as a warning that the user's  
996 account will be disabled unless some action is taken. The attacker's site would present a login screen  
997 identical to Google's login screen to obtain the user's password (and OTP, if enabled) credentials and to  
998 use them to impersonate the user to the real Google services. With FIDO, the authenticator would not  
999 have an existing key pair registered under the attacker's domain, so the user would be unable to return  
1000 a signed FIDO challenge to the attacker's site. If the attacker could convince the user to register the FIDO  
1001 authenticator with the malicious site and then sign an authentication challenge, the signed FIDO  
1002 assertion could not be used to authenticate to Google because the RP can also verify the application ID  
1003 associated with the signed challenge, and it would not be the expected ID.

1004 A more advanced credential theft attack involves an active man in the middle that can intercept the  
1005 user's requests to the legitimate RP and act as a proxy between the two. To avoid TLS server certificate  
1006 validation errors, in this case, the attacker must obtain a TLS certificate for the legitimate RP site that is  
1007 trusted by the user's device. This could be accomplished by exploiting a vulnerability in a commercial  
1008 certificate authority; it presents a high bar for the attacker but is not unprecedented. Application ID  
1009 validation is not sufficient to prevent this attacker from obtaining an authentication challenge from the  
1010 RP, proxying it to the user, and using the signed assertion that it gets back from the user to authenticate  
1011 to the RP. To prevent this type of attack, the FIDO specifications permit token binding to protect the  
1012 signed assertion that is returned to the RP by including information in the assertion about the TLS  
1013 channel over which it is being delivered. If there is a man in the middle (or a proxy of any kind) between  
1014 the user and the RP, the RP can detect it by examining the token-binding message included in the  
1015 assertion and comparing it with the TLS channel over which it was received. Token binding is not widely

1016 implemented today, but with finalization of the token-binding specification in RFC 8471 [18] and related  
1017 RFCs, adoption is expected to increase.

1018 Many of the federation threats discussed in [Section 3.5.3](#) can be addressed by signing assertions,  
1019 ensuring their integrity and authenticity. An encrypted assertion can also provide multiple protections,  
1020 preventing disclosure of sensitive information contained in the assertion and providing a strong  
1021 protection against assertion redirection because only the intended RP will have the key required to  
1022 decrypt the assertion. Most mitigations to federation threats require application of protocol-specific  
1023 guidance for SAML and OIDC. These considerations are not specific to the mobile SSO use case;  
1024 application of a security-focused profile of these protocols can mitigate many potential issues.

1025 In addition to RFC 8252, application developers and RP service providers should consult the *OAuth 2.0*  
1026 *Threat Model and Security Considerations* documented in RFC 6819 [19] for best practices for  
1027 implementing OAuth 2.0. The AppAuth library supports a secure OAuth client implementation by  
1028 automatically handling details like PKCE. Key protections for OAuth and OIDC include those listed below:

- 1029     ▪ Requiring https for protocol requests and responses protects access tokens and authorization  
1030     codes and authenticates the server to the client.
- 1031     ▪ Using the mobile operating system browser or in-application browser tabs for the  
1032     authentication flow, in conformance with RFC 8252, protects user credentials from exposure to  
1033     the mobile client application or the application service provider.
- 1034     ▪ OAuth tokens are associated with access scopes, which can be used to limit the authorizations  
1035     granted to any given client application, which somewhat mitigates the potential for misuse of  
1036     compromised access tokens.
- 1037     ▪ PKCE, as explained previously, prevents interception of the authorization code by malicious  
1038     applications on the mobile device.

### 1039 **5.3 Scenarios and Findings**

1040 The overall test scenario on Android devices involved launching the Motorola Solutions PSX Cockpit  
1041 mobile application, authenticating, and then subsequently launching additional PSX applications and  
1042 validating that the applications could access the back-end APIs and reflected the identity of the  
1043 authenticated user. To enable testing of the two different authentication scenarios, two separate “user  
1044 organization” infrastructures were created in the NCCoE lab, and both were registered as IdPs to the  
1045 test PingFederate instance acting as the PSX AS. A “domain selector” was created in PingFederate to  
1046 perform IdP discovery based on the domain of the user’s email address, enabling the user to trigger  
1047 authentication at one of the IdPs.

1048 On iOS devices, two demonstration applications—a chat application and a mapping application, with  
1049 corresponding back-end APIs—were developed to demonstrate SSO. The iOS demo used the same  
1050 authentication infrastructure in the NCCoE lab as the Android demo. The demo consisted of launching

1051 either application and authenticating to the IdP that supported OpenID Connect and FIDO UAF, then  
1052 launching the additional demo application to demonstrate SSO and access to the back-end APIs with the  
1053 identity of the authenticated user.

1054 Prior to testing the authentication infrastructure, users had to register U2F and UAF authenticators at  
1055 the respective IdPs. FIDO authenticator registration requires a process that provides high assurance that  
1056 the authenticator is in possession of the claimed account holder. In practice, this typically requires a  
1057 strongly authenticated session or an in-person registration process overseen by an administrator. In the  
1058 lab, a notional enrollment process was implemented with the understanding that real-world processes  
1059 would be different and subject to agency security policies. Organizations should refer to NIST SP 800-  
1060 63B [\[10\]](#) for specific considerations regarding credential enrollment. From a FIDO perspective, however,  
1061 the registration data used would be the same.

1062 Lab testing showed that the build architecture consistently provided SSO between applications. Two  
1063 operational findings were uncovered during testing:

- 1064     ▪ Knowing the location of the NFC radio on the mobile device greatly improves the user  
1065     experience when authenticating with an NFC token, such as the YubiKey Neo. The team found  
1066     that NFC radios are in different locations on different devices; on the Nexus 6P, for example, the  
1067     NFC radio is near the top of the device, near the camera, whereas on the Galaxy S6 Edge, the  
1068     NFC radio is slightly below the vertical midpoint of the device. After initial experimentation to  
1069     locate the radio, team members could quickly and reliably make a good NFC connection with the  
1070     YubiKey by holding it in the correct location. Device manufacturers provide NFC radio location  
1071     information via device technical specifications.
- 1072     ▪ Time synchronization between servers is critical. In lab testing, intermittent authentication  
1073     errors were found to be caused by clock drift between the IdP and the AS. This manifested as  
1074     the AS reporting JavaScript Object Notation Web Token validation errors when attempting to  
1075     validate ID tokens received from the IdP. All participants in the federation scheme should  
1076     synchronize their clocks to a reliable network time protocol (NTP) source, such as the NIST NTP  
1077     pools [\[20\]](#). Implementations should allow for a small amount of clock skew—on the order of a  
1078     few seconds—to account for the unpredictable latency of network traffic.

## 1079 **6 Future Build Considerations**

### 1080 **6.1 Single Logout**

1081 To ensure that only authorized personnel get access to application resources, users must be logged out  
1082 from application sessions when access is no longer needed or when a session expires. In an SSO  
1083 scenario, a user may need to be logged out from one or many applications at a given time. This scenario  
1084 will demonstrate architectures for tearing down user sessions, clearly communicating to the user which  
1085 application(s) has (have) active sessions, and ensuring that active sessions are not orphaned.

1086 **6.2 Shared Devices**

1087 This scenario will focus on a situation where two or more colleagues share a single mobile device to  
1088 accomplish a mission. The credentials, such as the FIDO UAF and U2F used in this guide, will be included  
1089 but may need to be registered to multiple devices. This scenario will explore situations in which multiple  
1090 profiles or no profiles are installed on a device, potentially requiring the user to log out prior to giving  
1091 the device to another user.

1092 **6.3 Step-Up Authentication**

1093 A user will access applications by using an acceptable but low assurance authenticator. Upon requesting  
1094 access to an application that requires higher assurance, the user will be prompted for an additional  
1095 authentication factor. Determinations on whether to step up may be based on risk-relevant data points  
1096 collected by the IdP at the time of authentication, referred to as the authentication context.

1097 **Appendix A Mapping to Cybersecurity Framework Core**

1098 Table A-1 maps informative National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST) and consensus  
 1099 security references to the Cybersecurity Framework core Subcategories that are addressed by NIST  
 1100 Special Publication (SP) 1800-13. The references do not include protocol specifications that are  
 1101 implemented by the individual products that compose the demonstrated security platforms. While  
 1102 some of the references provide general guidance that informs implementation of referenced  
 1103 Cybersecurity Framework core functions, the NIST SP 1800-13 references provide specific  
 1104 recommendations that should be considered when composing and configuring security platforms and  
 1105 technologies described in this practice guide.

1106 **Table A-1 Cybersecurity Framework Categories**

Category	Subcategory	Informative References
<p><b>Asset Management (ID.AM):</b> The data, personnel, devices, systems, and facilities that enable the organization to achieve business purposes are identified and managed consistent with their relative importance to business objectives and the organization’s risk strategy.</p>	<p><b>ID.AM-1:</b> Physical devices and systems within the organization are inventoried.</p>	<p><b>CCS CSC 1</b>  <b>COBIT 5</b> BAI09.01, BAI09.02  <b>ISA 62443-2-1:2009</b> 4.2.3.4  <b>ISA 62443-3-3:2013</b> SR 7.8  <b>ISO/IEC 27001:2013</b> A.8.1.1, A.8.1.2  <b>NIST SP 800-53 Rev. 4</b> CM-8</p>
<p><b>Access Control (PR.AC):</b> Access to assets and associated facilities is limited to authorized users, processes, or devices, and to authorized activities and transactions.</p>	<p><b>PR.AC-1:</b> Identities and credentials are managed for authorized devices and users.</p>	<p><b>CCS CSC 16</b>  <b>COBIT 5</b> DSS05.04, DSS06.03  <b>ISA 62443-2-1:2009</b> 4.3.3.5.1  <b>ISA 62443-3-3:2013</b> SR 1.1, SR 1.2, SR 1.3, SR 1.4, SR 1.5, SR 1.7, SR 1.8, SR 1.9  <b>ISO/IEC 27001:2013</b> A.9.2.1, A.9.2.2, A.9.2.4, A.9.3.1, A.9.4.2, A.9.4.3  <b>NIST SP 800-53 Rev. 4</b> AC-2, Information Assurance Family</p>

Category	Subcategory	Informative References
	<p><b>PR.AC-3:</b> Remote access is managed.</p>	<p><b>COBIT 5</b> APO13.01, DSS01.04, DSS05.03  <b>ISA 62443-2-1:2009</b> 4.3.3.6.6  <b>ISA 62443-3-3:2013</b> SR 1.13, SR 2.6  <b>ISO/IEC 27001:2013</b> A.6.2.2, A.13.1.1, A.13.2.1  <b>NIST SP 800-53 Rev. 4</b> AC-17, AC-19, AC-20</p>
	<p><b>PR.AC-4:</b> Access permissions are managed, incorporating the principles of least privilege and separation of duties.</p>	<p><b>CCS CSC</b> 12, 15  <b>ISA 62443-2-1:2009</b> 4.3.3.7.3  <b>ISA 62443-3-3:2013</b> SR 2.1  <b>ISO/IEC 27001:2013</b> A.6.1.2, A.9.1.2, A.9.2.3, A.9.4.1, A.9.4.4  <b>NIST SP 800-53 Rev. 4</b> AC-2, AC-3, AC-5, AC-6, AC-16</p>
<p><b>Data Security (PR.DS):</b>  Information and records (data) are managed consistent with the organization’s risk strategy to protect the confidentiality, integrity, and availability of information.</p>	<p><b>PR.DS-5:</b> Protections against data leaks are implemented.</p>	<p><b>CCS CSC</b> 17  <b>COBIT 5</b> APO01.06  <b>ISA 62443-3-3:2013</b> SR 5.2  <b>ISO/IEC 27001:2013</b> A.6.1.2, A.7.1.1, A.7.1.2, A.7.3.1, A.8.2.2, A.8.2.3, A.9.1.1, A.9.1.2, A.9.2.3, A.9.4.1, A.9.4.4, A.9.4.5, A.13.1.3, A.13.2.1, A.13.2.3, A.13.2.4, A.14.1.2, A.14.1.3  <b>NIST SP 800-53 Rev. 4</b> AC-4, AC-5, AC-6, PE-19, PS-3, PS-6, SC-7, SC-8, SC-13, SC-31, SI-4</p>

Category	Subcategory	Informative References
<p><b>Protective Technology (PR.PT):</b>                      Technical security solutions are managed to ensure the security and resilience of systems and assets, consistent with related policies, procedures, and agreements.</p>	<p><b>PR.PT-1:</b> Audit/log records are determined, documented, implemented, and reviewed in accordance with policy.</p>	<p><b>CCS CSC 14</b>  <b>COBIT 5 APO11.04</b>  <b>ISA 62443-2-1:2009</b> 4.3.3.3.9, 4.3.3.5.8, 4.3.4.4.7, 4.4.2.1, 4.4.2.2, 4.4.2.4  <b>ISA 62443-3-3:2013</b> SR 2.8, SR 2.9, SR 2.10, SR 2.11, SR 2.12  <b>ISO/IEC 27001:2013</b> A.12.4.1, A.12.4.2, A.12.4.3, A.12.4.4, A.12.7.1  <b>NIST SP 800-53 Rev. 4</b> Audit and Accountability Family</p>
	<p><b>PR.PT-2:</b> Removable media is protected and its use restricted according to policy.</p>	<p><b>COBIT 5 DSS05.02, APO13.01</b>  <b>ISA 62443-3-3:2013</b> SR 2.3  <b>ISO/IEC 27001:2013</b> A.8.2.2, A.8.2.3, A.8.3.1, A.8.3.3, A.11.2.9  <b>NIST SP 800-53 Rev. 4</b> MP-2, MP-4, MP-5, MP-7</p>
	<p><b>PR.PT-3:</b> Access to systems and assets is controlled, incorporating the principle of least functionality.</p>	<p><b>COBIT 5 DSS05.02</b>  <b>ISA 62443-2-1:2009</b> 4.3.3.5.1, 4.3.3.5.2, 4.3.3.5.3, 4.3.3.5.4, 4.3.3.5.5, 4.3.3.5.6, 4.3.3.5.7, 4.3.3.5.8, 4.3.3.6.1, 4.3.3.6.2, 4.3.3.6.3, 4.3.3.6.4, 4.3.3.6.5, 4.3.3.6.6, 4.3.3.6.7, 4.3.3.6.8, 4.3.3.6.9, 4.3.3.7.1, 4.3.3.7.2, 4.3.3.7.3, 4.3.3.7.4  <b>ISA 62443-3-3:2013</b> SR 1.1, SR 1.2, SR 1.3, SR 1.4, SR 1.5, SR 1.6, SR 1.7, SR 1.8, SR 1.9, SR 1.10, SR 1.11, SR 1.12, SR 1.13, SR 2.1, SR 2.2, SR 2.3, SR 2.4, SR 2.5, SR 2.6, SR 2.7  <b>ISO/IEC 27001:2013</b> A.9.1.2  <b>NIST SP 800-53 Rev. 4</b> AC-3, CM-7</p>

Category	Subcategory	Informative References
	<p><b>PR.PT-4:</b> Communications and control networks are protected.</p>	<p><b>CCS CSC 7</b>  <b>COBIT 5</b> DSS05.02, APO13.01  <b>ISA 62443-3-3:2013</b> SR 3.1, SR 3.5, SR 3.8, SR 4.1, SR 4.3, SR 5.1, SR 5.2, SR 5.3, SR 7.1, SR 7.6  <b>ISO/IEC 27001:2013</b> A.13.1.1, A.13.2.1  <b>NIST SP 800-53 Rev. 4</b> AC-4, AC-17, AC-18, CP-8, SC-7</p>

## Appendix B Assumptions Underlying the Build

1107 This project is guided by the following assumptions. Implementers are advised to consider whether the  
1108 same assumptions can be made based on current policy, process, and information technology (IT)  
1109 infrastructure. Where applicable, appropriate guidance is provided to assist this process as described in  
1110 the following subsections.

### 1111 B.1 Identity Proofing

1112 National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST) Special Publication (SP) 800-63A, *Enrollment and*  
1113 *Identity Proofing* [21], addresses how applicants can prove their identities and become enrolled as valid  
1114 subjects within an identity system. It provides requirements for processes by which applicants can both  
1115 proof and enroll at one of three different levels of risk mitigation, in both remote and physically present  
1116 scenarios. NIST SP 800-63A contains both normative and informative material. An organization should  
1117 use NIST SP 800-63A to develop and implement an identity proofing plan within its enterprise.

### 1118 B.2 Mobile Device Security

1119 Mobile devices can add to an organization's productivity by providing employees with access to business  
1120 resources at any time. Not only has this reshaped how traditional tasks are accomplished but  
1121 organizations are also devising entirely new ways to work. However, mobile devices may be lost or  
1122 stolen. A compromised mobile device may allow remote access to sensitive on-premises organizational  
1123 data or any other data that the user has entrusted to the device. Several methods exist to address these  
1124 concerns (e.g., using a device lock screen, setting shorter screen time-outs, forcing a device wipe in case  
1125 of too many failed authentication attempts). It is up to the organization to implement these types of  
1126 security controls, which can be enforced with Enterprise Mobility Management (EMM) software (see  
1127 [Section B.4](#)).

1128 NIST SP 1800-4, *Mobile Device Security: Cloud and Hybrid Builds* [22], demonstrates how to secure  
1129 sensitive enterprise data that is accessed by and/or stored on employees' mobile devices. The NIST  
1130 *Mobile Threat Catalogue* [23] identifies threats to mobile devices and associated mobile infrastructure  
1131 to support development and implementation of mobile security capabilities, best practices, and security  
1132 solutions to better protect enterprise IT. We strongly encourage organizations implementing this  
1133 practice guide in whole or in part to consult these resources when developing and implementing a  
1134 mobile device security plan for their organizations.

### 1135 B.3 Mobile Application Security

1136 The security qualities of an entire platform can be compromised if an application exhibits vulnerable or  
1137 malicious behavior. Application security is paramount in ensuring that the security controls  
1138 implemented in other architecture components can effectively mitigate threats. The practice of making

1139 sure that an application is secure is known as software assurance (SwA). This is defined as “the level of  
1140 confidence that software is free from vulnerabilities, either intentionally designed into the software or  
1141 accidentally inserted at any time during its lifecycle, and that the software functions in the intended  
1142 manner” [\[24\]](#).

1143 In an architecture that largely relies on third-party—usually closed-source—applications to handle daily  
1144 user functions, good SwA hygiene can be difficult to implement. To address this problem, NIST has  
1145 released guidance on how to structure and implement an application-vetting process (also known as  
1146 “app vetting”) [\[25\]](#). This takes an organization through the following steps:

- 1147 1. understanding the process for vetting the security of mobile applications
- 1148 2. planning for implementation of an app-vetting process
- 1149 3. developing application security requirements
- 1150 4. understanding types of application vulnerabilities and testing methods used to detect those  
1151 vulnerabilities
- 1152 5. determining whether an application is acceptable for deployment on the organization’s mobile  
1153 devices

1154 Public safety organizations (PSOs) should carefully consider their application-vetting needs. Though  
1155 major mobile-application stores, such as Apple’s iTunes Store and Google’s Play Store, have vetting  
1156 mechanisms to find vulnerable and malicious applications, organizations may have needs beyond these  
1157 proprietary tools. Per NIST SP 800-163, *Vetting the Security of Mobile Applications* [\[25\]](#):

1158 App stores may perform app vetting processes to verify compliance with their own  
1159 requirements. However, because each app store has its own unique, and not always  
1160 transparent, requirements and vetting processes, it is necessary to consult current agreements  
1161 and documentation for a particular app store to assess its practices. Organizations should not  
1162 assume that an app has been fully vetted and conforms to their security requirements simply  
1163 because it is available through an official app store. Third party assessments that carry a  
1164 moniker of “approved by” or “certified by” without providing details of which tests are  
1165 performed, what the findings were, or how apps are scored or rated, do not provide a reliable  
1166 indication of software assurance. These assessments are also unlikely to take organization  
1167 specific requirements and recommendations into account, such as federal-specific cryptography  
1168 requirements.

1169 The First Responder Network Authority (FirstNet) provides an application store specifically geared  
1170 toward first responder applications. Through the FirstNet Developer Portal [\[26\]](#), application developers  
1171 can submit mobile applications for evaluation against its published development guidelines. The  
1172 guidelines include security, scalability, and availability. Compliant applications can be selected for

1173 inclusion in the FirstNet App Store. This provides first responder agencies with a repository of  
1174 applications that have been tested to a known set of standards.

1175 PSOs should avoid the unauthorized “side loading” of mobile applications that are not subject to  
1176 organizational vetting requirements.

## 1177 **B.4 Enterprise Mobility Management**

1178 The rapid evolution of mobile devices has introduced new paradigms for work environments, along with  
1179 new challenges for enterprise IT to address. EMM solutions, as part of an EMM program, provide a  
1180 variety of ways to view, organize, secure, and maintain a fleet of mobile devices. EMM solutions can  
1181 vary greatly in form and function, but in general, they use platform-provided application programming  
1182 interfaces. Sections 3 and 4 of NIST SP 800-124 [27] describe the two basic approaches of EMM, along  
1183 with components, capabilities, and their uses. One approach, commonly known as “fully managed,”  
1184 controls the entire device. Another approach, usually used for bring-your-own-device situations, wraps  
1185 or “containerizes” applications inside a secure sandbox so that they can be managed without affecting  
1186 the rest of the device.

1187 EMM capabilities can be grouped into four general categories:

- 1188 1. General policy—centralized technology to enforce security policies of particular interest for  
1189 mobile device security, such as accessing hardware sensors like global positioning system (GPS),  
1190 accessing native operating-system (OS) services like a web browser or email client, managing  
1191 wireless networks, monitoring when policy violations occur, and limiting access to enterprise  
1192 services if the device is vulnerable or compromised
- 1193 2. Data communication and storage—automatically encrypting data in transit between the device  
1194 and the organization (e.g., through a virtual private network); strongly encrypting data at rest on  
1195 internal and removable media storage; and wiping the device if it is being reissued to another  
1196 user, has been lost, or has surpassed a certain number of incorrect unlock attempts
- 1197 3. User and device authentication—requiring a device password/passcode and parameters for  
1198 password strength, remotely restoring access to a locked device, automatically locking the  
1199 device after an idle period, and remotely locking the device if needed
- 1200 4. Applications—restricting which application stores may be used, restricting which applications can  
1201 be installed, requiring specific application permissions (such as using the camera or GPS),  
1202 restricting use of OS synchronization services, verifying digital signatures to ensure that  
1203 applications are unmodified and sourced from trusted entities, and automatically  
1204 installing/updating/removing applications according to administrative policies

1205 Public safety and first responder (PSFR) organizations will have different requirements for EMM; this  
1206 document does not prescribe any specific processes or procedures but assumes that they have been

1207 established in accordance with agency requirements. However, sections of this document refer to the  
1208 NIST Mobile Threat Catalogue [\[23\]](#), which does list the use of EMM solutions as mitigations for certain  
1209 types of threats.

## 1210 **B.5 FIDO Enrollment Process**

1211 Fast Identity Online (FIDO) provides a framework for users to register a variety of different multifactor  
1212 authenticators and use them to authenticate to applications and identity providers. Before an  
1213 authenticator can be used in an online transaction, it must be associated with the user's identity. This  
1214 process is described in NIST SP 800-63B [\[10\]](#) as *authenticator binding*. NIST SP 800-63B specifies  
1215 requirements for binding authenticators to a user's account both during initial enrollment and after  
1216 enrollment, and recommends that relying parties support binding multiple authenticators to each user's  
1217 account to enable alternative strong authenticators in case the primary authenticator is lost, stolen, or  
1218 damaged.

1219 Authenticator binding may be an in-person or remote process, but in both cases, the user's identity and  
1220 control over the authenticator being bound to the account must be established. This is related to  
1221 identity proofing, discussed in [Section B.1](#), but requires that credentials be issued in a manner that  
1222 maintains a tight binding with the user identity that has been established through proofing. PSFR  
1223 organizations will have different requirements for identity and credential management; this document  
1224 does not prescribe any specific processes or procedures but assumes that they have been established in  
1225 accordance with agency requirements.

1226 As an example, in-person authenticator binding could be implemented by having administrators  
1227 authenticate with their own credentials and authorize the association of an authenticator with an  
1228 enrolling user's account. Once a user has one enrolled authenticator, it can be used for online  
1229 enrollment of other authenticators at the same assurance level or lower. Allowing users to enroll strong  
1230 multifactor authenticators based on authentication with weaker credentials, such as username and  
1231 password or knowledge-based questions, can undermine the security of the overall authentication  
1232 scheme and should be avoided.

## 1233 **Appendix C Architectural Considerations for the Mobile** 1234 **Application Single Sign-On Build**

1235 This appendix details architectural considerations relating to single sign-on (SSO) with OAuth 2.0;  
1236 Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF) Request for Comments (RFC) 8252; and AppAuth open-source  
1237 libraries, federation, and types of multifactor authentication (MFA).

### 1238 **C.1 SSO with OAuth 2.0, IETF RFC 8252, and AppAuth Open-Source** 1239 **Libraries**

1240 As stated above, SSO streamlines the user experience by enabling a user to authenticate once and to  
1241 subsequently access different applications without having to authenticate again. SSO on mobile devices  
1242 is complicated by the sandboxed architecture, which makes it difficult to share the session state with  
1243 back-end systems between individual applications. Enterprise Mobility Management (EMM) vendors  
1244 have provided solutions through proprietary software development kits (SDKs), but this approach  
1245 requires integrating the SDK with each individual application and does not scale to a large and diverse  
1246 population, such as the public safety and first responder (PSFR) user community.

1247 OAuth 2.0, when implemented in accordance with RFC 8252 (the *OAuth 2.0 for Native Apps Best Current*  
1248 *Practice*), provides a standards-based SSO pattern for mobile applications. The OpenID Foundation's  
1249 AppAuth libraries [14] can facilitate building mobile applications in full compliance with IETF RFC 8252,  
1250 but any mobile application that follows RFC 8252's core recommendation of using a shared external  
1251 user-agent for the OAuth authorization flow will have the benefit of SSO.

1252 To implement SSO with OAuth 2.0, this practice guide recommends that application developers choose  
1253 one of the following options:

- 1254     ▪ Implement IETF RFC 8252 themselves. This RFC specifies that OAuth 2.0 authorization requests  
1255     from native applications should be made only through external user-agents, primarily the user's  
1256     browser. This specification details the security and usability reasons for why this is the case and  
1257     how native applications and authorization servers can implement this best practice. RFC 8252  
1258     also recommends the use of Proof Key for Code Exchange (PKCE), as detailed in RFC 7636 [28],  
1259     which protects against authorization code interception attacks.
- 1260     ▪ Integrate the AppAuth open-source libraries (that implement RFC 8252 and RFC 7636) for  
1261     mobile SSO. The AppAuth libraries make it easy for application developers to enable standards-  
1262     based authentication, SSO, and authorization to application programming interfaces. This was  
1263     the option chosen by the implementers of this build.

1264 When OAuth is implemented in a native application, it operates as a *public client*; this presents security  
1265 concerns with aspects like client secrets and redirected uniform resource identifiers (URIs). The AppAuth  
1266 pattern mitigates these concerns and provides several security advantages for developers. The primary

1267 benefit of RFC 8252 is that native applications use an external user-agent (e.g., the Chrome for Android  
1268 web browser) instead of an embedded user-agent (e.g., an Android WebView) for their OAuth  
1269 authorization requests.

1270 An embedded user-agent is demonstrably less secure and user-friendly than an external user-agent.  
1271 Embedded user-agents potentially allow the client to log keystrokes, capture user credentials, copy  
1272 session cookies, and automatically submit forms to bypass user consent. In addition, session information  
1273 for embedded user-agents is stored on a per-application basis. This does not allow for SSO functionality,  
1274 which users generally prefer and which this practice guide sets out to implement. Recent versions of  
1275 Android and iPhone operating system (iOS) both provide implementations of “in-application browser  
1276 tabs” that retain the security benefits of using an external user-agent while avoiding visible context-  
1277 switching between the application and the browser; RFC 8252 recommends their use where available.  
1278 In-application browser tabs are supported in Android 4.1 and higher and in iOS 9 and higher.

1279 AppAuth also requires that public client applications eschew client secrets in favor of PKCE, which is a  
1280 standard extension to the OAuth 2.0 framework. When using the AppAuth pattern, the following steps  
1281 are performed:

- 1282 1. The user opens the client application and initiates a sign-in.
- 1283 2. The client uses a browser to initiate an authorization request to the authentication server (AS).
- 1284 3. The user authenticates to the identity provider (IdP).
- 1285 4. The OpenID Connect (OIDC)/security assertion markup language (SAML) flow takes place, and  
1286 the user authenticates to the AS.
- 1287 5. The browser requests an authorization code from the AS.
- 1288 6. The browser returns the authorization code to the client.
- 1289 7. The client uses its authorization code to request and obtain an access token.

1290 There is a possible attack vector at the end user’s device in this workflow if PKCE is not enabled. During  
1291 step 6, so that the client application can receive the authorization code, the AS redirects the browser to  
1292 a URI on which the client application is listening. However, a malicious application could register for this  
1293 URI and attempt to intercept the code so that it may obtain an access token. PKCE-enabled clients use a  
1294 dynamically generated random *code verifier* to ensure proof of possession for the authorization code. If  
1295 the grant is intercepted by a malicious application before being returned to the client, the malicious  
1296 application will be unable to use the grant without the client’s secret verifier.

1297 AppAuth also outlines several other actions to consider, such as three types of redirect URIs, native-  
1298 application client registration guidance, and reverse domain-name-based schemes. These are supported  
1299 and/or enforced with secure defaults in the AppAuth libraries. The libraries are open-source and include

1300 sample code for implementation. In addition, if Universal Second Factor (U2F) or Universal  
1301 Authentication Framework (UAF) is desired, that flow is handled entirely by the external user-agent, so  
1302 client applications do not need to implement any of that functionality.

1303 The AppAuth library takes care of several boilerplate tasks for developers, such as caching access tokens  
1304 and refresh tokens, checking access-token expiration, and automatically refreshing access tokens. To  
1305 implement the AppAuth pattern in an Android application by using the provided library, a developer  
1306 needs to perform the following actions:

- 1307     ▪ Add the Android AppAuth library as a Gradle dependency.
- 1308     ▪ Add a redirect URI to the Android manifest.
- 1309     ▪ Add the Java code to initiate the AppAuth flow and to use the access token afterward.
- 1310     ▪ Register the application's redirect URI with the AS.

1311 Using the AppAuth library in an iOS application is a similar process:

- 1312     ▪ Add the AppAuth library by using either Pods or Carthage.
- 1313     ▪ Configure a custom uniform resource locator (URL) scheme in the info.plist file.
- 1314     ▪ Update the view controllers and application delegate to initiate the AppAuth flow and to use the  
1315         access token afterward.
- 1316     ▪ Register the application's redirect URI with the AS.

1317 To implement the AppAuth pattern *without* using a library, the user will need to follow the general  
1318 guidance laid out in RFC 8252, review and follow the operating system-specific guidance in the AppAuth  
1319 documentation [\[14\]](#), and adhere to the requirements of both the OAuth 2.0 framework documented in  
1320 RFC 6749 [\[29\]](#) and the PKCE.

### 1321 C.1.1 Attributes and Authorization

1322 Authorization, in the sense of applying a policy to determine the rights and privileges that apply to  
1323 application requests, is beyond the scope of this practice guide. OAuth 2.0 provides delegation of user  
1324 authorizations to mobile applications acting on their behalf, but this is distinct from the authorization  
1325 policy enforced by the application. This guide is agnostic to the specific authorization model (e.g., role-  
1326 based access control [RBAC], attribute-based access control [ABAC], capability lists) that applications will  
1327 use, and the SSO mechanism documented here is compatible with virtually any back-end authorization  
1328 policy.

1329 While applications could potentially manage user roles and privileges internally, federated  
1330 authentication provides the capability for the IdP to provide user attributes to relying parties (RPs).  
1331 These attributes might be used to map users to defined application roles or used directly in an ABAC

1332 policy (e.g., to restrict access to sworn law enforcement officers). Apart from authorization, attributes  
1333 may provide identifying information useful for audit functions, contact information, or other user data.

1334 In the build architecture, the AS is an RP to the user's IdP, which is either a SAML IdP or an OIDC  
1335 provider. SAML IdPs can return attribute elements in the SAML response. OIDC providers can return  
1336 attributes as claims in the identification (ID) token, or the AS can request them from the user  
1337 information end point. In both cases, the AS can validate the IdP's signature of the asserted attributes to  
1338 ensure their validity and integrity. Assertions can also optionally be encrypted, which both protects their  
1339 confidentiality in transit and enforces audience restrictions because only the intended RP will be able to  
1340 decrypt them.

1341 Once the AS has received and validated the asserted user attributes, it could use them as issuance  
1342 criteria to determine whether an access token should be issued for the client to access the requested  
1343 scopes. In the OAuth 2.0 framework, *scopes* are individual access entitlements that can be granted to a  
1344 client application. In addition, the attributes could be provided to the protected resource server to  
1345 enable the application to enforce its own authorization policies. Communications between the AS and  
1346 protected resource are internal design concerns for the software as a service (SaaS) provider. One  
1347 method of providing attributes to the protected resource is for the AS to issue the access token as a  
1348 JavaScript Object Notation (JSON) Web Token (JWT) containing the user's attributes. The protected  
1349 resource could also obtain attributes by querying the AS's token introspection end point, where they  
1350 could be provided as part of the token metadata in the introspection response.

## 1351 C.2 Federation

1352 The preceding section discussed the communication of attributes from the IdP to the AS for use in  
1353 authorization decisions. In the build architecture, it is assumed that the SaaS provider may be an RP of  
1354 many IdPs supporting different user organizations. Several first responder organizations have their own  
1355 IdPs, each managing its own users' attributes. This presents a challenge if the RP needs to use those  
1356 attributes for authorization. Local variations in attribute names, values, and encodings would make it  
1357 difficult to apply a uniform authorization policy across the user base. If the SaaS platform enables  
1358 sharing of sensitive data between organizations, participants would need some assurance that their  
1359 partners were establishing and managing user accounts and attributes appropriately—promptly  
1360 removing access for terminated employees and performing appropriate validation before assigning  
1361 attributes that enable privileged access. Federations attempt to address this issue by creating common  
1362 profiles and policies governing use and management of attributes and authentication mechanisms,  
1363 which members are expected to follow. This facilitates interoperability, and members are also typically  
1364 audited for compliance with the federation's policies and practices, enabling mutual trust in attributes  
1365 and authentication.

1366 As an example, the National Identity Exchange Federation (NIEF) is a federation serving law enforcement  
1367 organizations and networks, including the Federal Bureau of Investigation, the Department of Homeland

1368 Security, the Regional Information Sharing System, and the Texas Department of Public Safety. NIEF has  
 1369 established SAML profiles for both web-browser and system-to-system use cases, and a registry of  
 1370 common attributes for users, resources, and other entities. NIEF attributes are grouped into attribute  
 1371 bundles, with some designated as mandatory, meaning that all participating IdPs must provide those  
 1372 attributes, and participating RPs can depend on their presence in the SAML response.

1373 The architecture documented in this build guide is fully compatible with NIEF and other federations,  
 1374 though this would require configuring IdPs and RPs in compliance with the federation’s policies. The use  
 1375 of SAML IdPs is fully supported by this architecture, as is the coexistence of SAML IdPs and OIDC  
 1376 providers.

1377 NIST SP 800-63-3 [\[17\]](#) defines Federation Assurance Levels (FALs) and their implementation  
 1378 requirements. FALs are a measure of the assurance that assertions presented to an RP are genuine and  
 1379 unaltered, pertain to the individual presenting them, are not subject to replay at other RPs, and are  
 1380 protected from many additional potential attacks on federated authentication schemes. A high-level  
 1381 summary of the requirements for FALs 1–3 is provided in Table C-1.

1382 **Table C-1 FAL Requirements**

FAL	Requirement
1	Bearer assertion, signed by IdP
2	Bearer assertion, signed by IdP, and encrypted to RP
3	Holder of key assertion, signed by IdP, and encrypted to RP

1383 IdPs typically sign assertions, and this functionality is broadly supported in available software. For SAML,  
 1384 the IdP’s public key is provided in the SAML metadata. For OIDC, the public key can be provided through  
 1385 the discovery end point, if supported; otherwise, the key would be provided to the RP out of band.  
 1386 Encrypting assertions is also relatively trivial and requires providing the RP’s public key to the IdP. The  
 1387 build architecture in this guide can support FAL-1 and FAL-2 with relative ease.

1388 The requirement for holder of key assertions makes FAL-3 more difficult to implement. A SAML holder  
 1389 of key profile exists but has never been widely implemented in a web-browser SSO context. The OIDC  
 1390 core specification does not include a mechanism for a holder of key assertions; however, the  
 1391 forthcoming token binding over the hypertext transfer protocol (http) specification [\[30\]](#) and related  
 1392 RFCs may provide a pathway to supporting FAL-3 in an OIDC implementation.

### 1393 **C.3 Authenticator Types**

1394 When considering MFA implementations, PSFR organizations should carefully consider organizationally  
 1395 defined authenticator requirements. These requirements may include:

- 1396       ▪ the sensitivity of data being accessed and the commensurate level of authentication assurance  
1397       needed
- 1398       ▪ environmental constraints, such as gloves or masks, that may limit the usability and  
1399       effectiveness of certain authentication modalities
- 1400       ▪ costs throughout the authenticator life cycle, such as authenticator binding, loss, theft,  
1401       unauthorized duplication, expiration, and revocation
- 1402       ▪ policy and compliance requirements, such as the Health Insurance Portability and Accountability  
1403       Act (HIPAA) [\[31\]](#), the Criminal Justice Information System Security Policy [\[32\]](#), or other  
1404       organizationally defined requirements
- 1405       ▪ support of current information technology infrastructure, including mobile devices, for various  
1406       authenticator types

1407       The new, third revision of NIST SP 800-63, *Digital Identity Guidelines* [\[17\]](#), is a suite of documents that  
1408       provide technical requirements and guidance for federal agencies implementing digital identity services,  
1409       and it may assist PSFR organizations when selecting authenticators. The most significant difference from  
1410       previous versions of NIST SP 800-63 is the retirement of the previous assurance rating system, known as  
1411       the Levels of Assurance (LOA), established by Office of Management and Budget Memorandum M-04-  
1412       04, *E-Authentication Guidance for Federal Agencies*. In the new NIST SP 800-63-3 guidance, digital  
1413       identity assurance is split into three ordinals as opposed to the single ordinal in LOA. The three ordinals  
1414       are listed below:

- 1415       ▪ identity assurance level (IAL)
- 1416       ▪ authenticator assurance level (AAL)
- 1417       ▪ FAL

1418       This practice guide is primarily concerned with AALs and how they apply to the reference architecture  
1419       outlined in Table 3-2.

1420       The strength of an authentication transaction is measured by the AAL. A higher AAL means stronger  
1421       authentication and requires more resources and capabilities by attackers to subvert the authentication  
1422       process. We discuss a variety of multifactor implementations in this practice guide. NIST SP 800-63-3  
1423       gives us a reference to map the risk reduction of the various implementations recommended in this  
1424       practice guide.

1425       The AAL is determined by authenticator type and combination, verifier requirements, reauthentication  
1426       policies, and security control baselines, as defined in NIST SP 800-53, *Security and Privacy Controls for  
1427       Federal Information Systems and Organizations* [\[33\]](#). A summary of requirements at each of the levels is  
1428       provided in Table C-2.

1429       A memorized secret (most commonly implemented as a password) satisfies AAL1, but this alone is not  
1430       enough to reach the higher levels shown in Table C-2. For AAL2 and AAL3, some form of MFA is

1431 required. MFA comes in many forms. The architecture in this practice guide describes two examples.  
 1432 One example is a multifactor software cryptographic authenticator, where a biometric authenticator  
 1433 application is installed on the mobile device—the two factors being possession of the private key and  
 1434 the biometric. The other example is a combination of a memorized secret and a single-factor  
 1435 cryptographic device, which performs cryptographic operations via a direct connection to the user end  
 1436 point.

1437 Reauthentication requirements also become more stringent for higher levels. AAL1 requires  
 1438 reauthentication only every 30 days, but AAL2 and AAL3 require reauthentication every 12 hours. At  
 1439 AAL2, users may reauthenticate by using a single authentication factor, but at AAL3, users must  
 1440 reauthenticate by using both of their authentication factors. At AAL2, 30 minutes of idle time is allowed,  
 1441 but only 15 minutes is allowed at AAL3.

1442 For a full description of the different types of multifactor authenticators and AAL requirements, please  
 1443 refer to NIST SP 800-63B [\[10\]](#).

1444 **Table C-2 AAL Summary of Requirements**

Requirement	AAL1	AAL2	AAL3
Permitted authenticator types	Memorized Secret; Lookup Secret; Out of Band; Single Factor (SF) Onetime Password (OTP) Device; Multifactor (MF) OTP Device; SF Crypto Software; SF Crypto Device; MF Crypto Software; MF Crypto Device	MF OTP Device; MF Crypto Software; MF Crypto Device; or Memorized Secret plus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Lookup Secret</li> <li>▪ Out of Band</li> <li>▪ SF OTP Device</li> <li>▪ SF Crypto Software</li> <li>▪ SF Crypto Device</li> </ul>	MF Crypto Device; SF Crypto Device plus Memorized Secret; SF OTP Device plus MF Crypto Device or Software; SF OTP Device plus SF Crypto Software plus Memorized Secret
Federal Information Processing Standard (FIPS) 140-2 verification	Level 1 (government agency verifiers)	Level 1 (government agency authenticators and verifiers)	Level 2 overall (MF authenticators) Level 1 overall (verifiers and SF Crypto Devices) Level 3 physical security (all authenticators)

Requirement	AAL1	AAL2	AAL3
Reauthentication	30 days	12 hours, or after 30 minutes of inactivity; MAY use one authentication factor	12 hours, or after 15 minutes of inactivity; SHALL use both authentication factors
Security controls	NIST SP 800-53 Low Baseline (or equivalent)	NIST SP 800-53 Moderate Baseline (or equivalent)	NIST SP 800-53 High Baseline (or equivalent)
Man-in-the-middle resistance	Required	Required	Required
Verifier-impersonation resistance	Not required	Not required	Required
Verifier-compromise resistance	Not required	Not required	Required
Replay resistance	Not required	Required	Required
Authentication intent	Not required	Recommended	Required
Records retention policy	Required	Required	Required
Privacy controls	Required	Required	Required

1445 The Fast Identity Online (FIDO) Alliance has published specifications for two types of authenticators  
1446 based on UAF and U2F. These protocols operate agnostic of the FIDO authenticator, allowing PSOs to  
1447 choose any FIDO-certified authenticator that meets operational requirements and to implement it with  
1448 this solution. As new FIDO-certified authenticators become available in the marketplace, PSOs may  
1449 choose to migrate to these new authenticators if they better meet PSFR needs in their variety of duties.

### 1450 C.3.1 UAF Protocol

1451 The UAF protocol [2] allows users to register their device to the online service by selecting a local  
1452 authentication mechanism, such as swiping a finger, looking at the camera, speaking into the  
1453 microphone, or entering a personal identification number (PIN). The UAF protocol allows the service to  
1454 select which mechanisms are presented to the user. Once registered, the user simply repeats the local  
1455 authentication action whenever they need to authenticate to the service. The user no longer needs to  
1456 enter their password when authenticating from that device. UAF also allows experiences that combine  
1457 multiple authentication mechanisms, such as fingerprint plus PIN. Data used for local user verification,

1458 such as biometric templates, passwords, or PINs, is validated locally on the device and is not transmitted  
1459 to the server. Authentication to the server is performed with a cryptographic key pair, which is unlocked  
1460 after local user verification.

### 1461 C.3.2 U2F Protocol

1462 The U2F protocol [\[3\]](#) allows online services to augment the security of their existing password  
1463 infrastructure by adding a strong second factor to user login, typically an external hardware-backed  
1464 cryptographic device. The user logs in with a username and password as before and is then prompted to  
1465 present the external second factor. The service can prompt the user to present a second-factor device at  
1466 any time that it chooses. The strong second factor allows the service to simplify its passwords (e.g., four-  
1467 digit PIN) without compromising security. During registration and authentication, the user presents the  
1468 second factor by simply pressing a button on a universal serial bus device or tapping over near field  
1469 communication.

1470 The user can use their FIDO U2F device across all online services that support the protocol. On desktop  
1471 operating systems, the Google Chrome and Opera browsers currently support U2F. U2F is also  
1472 supported on Android through the Google Authenticator application, which must be installed from the  
1473 Play Store.

### 1474 C.3.3 FIDO 2

1475 The FIDO 2 project comprises a set of related standardization efforts undertaken by the FIDO Alliance  
1476 and the World Wide Web Consortium (W3C). The second iteration of the FIDO standards will support  
1477 the W3C's Web Authentication standard [\[16\]](#). As a W3C recommendation, Web Authentication is  
1478 expected to be widely adopted by web browser developers and to provide out-of-the-box FIDO support  
1479 without the need to install additional client applications or extensions.

1480 In addition, the proposed FIDO Client-to-Authenticator Protocol (CTAP) standard will support new  
1481 authenticator functions, including the ability to set a PIN on authenticators such as YubiKeys. By  
1482 requiring a PIN at authentication time, a CTAP-compliant authenticator can provide MFA in a manner  
1483 similar to a smart card. This would eliminate the need to pair an external authenticator with an existing  
1484 knowledge factor such as username/password authentication against an LDAP database, as was used in  
1485 the U2F implementation of this build.

### 1486 C.3.4 FIDO Key Registration

1487 From the perspective of an IdP, enabling users to authenticate themselves with FIDO-based credentials  
1488 requires that users register a cryptographic key with the IdP and associate the registered key with the  
1489 username or distinguished name known to the IdP. FIDO registration must be repeated for each  
1490 authenticator that the user chooses to associate with their account. FIDO protocols are different from  
1491 most authentication protocols in that they permit registering multiple cryptographic keys (from different

1492 authenticators) to use with a single account. This is convenient for end users as it provides a natural  
1493 backup solution to lost, misplaced, or forgotten authenticators—users may use any one of their  
1494 registered authenticators to access their applications.

1495 The process of a first-time FIDO key registration is fairly simple:

1496 1. A user creates an account for themselves at an application site, or one is created for them as  
1497 part of a business process.

1498 2. The user registers a FIDO key with the application through one of the following processes:

1499 a. as part of the account self-creation process

1500 b. upon receiving an email with an invitation to register

1501 c. as part of a registration process, after an authentication process within an organization  
1502 application

1503 d. A FIDO authenticator with a temporary, preregistered key is provided so that the user  
1504 can strongly authenticate to register a new key with the application, at which point the  
1505 temporary key is deleted permanently. Authenticators with preregistered keys may be  
1506 combined with shared secrets given/sent to the user out of band to verify their identity  
1507 before enabling them to register a new FIDO key with the organization's application.

1508 e. as part of a custom process local to the IdP

1509 Policy at the organization dictates what might be considered most appropriate for a registration process.

### 1510 C.3.5 FIDO Authenticator Attestation

1511 To meet AAL requirements, RPs may need to restrict the types of FIDO authenticators that can be  
1512 registered and used to authenticate. They may also require assurances that the authenticators in use are  
1513 not counterfeit or vulnerable to known attacks. The FIDO specifications include mechanisms that enable  
1514 the RP to validate the identity and security properties of authenticators, which are provided in a  
1515 standard metadata format.

1516 Each FIDO authenticator has an attestation key pair and certificate. To maintain FIDO's privacy  
1517 guarantees, these attestation keys are not unique for each device but are typically assigned on a  
1518 manufacturing batch basis. During authenticator registration, the RP can check the validity of the  
1519 attestation certificate and validate the signed registration data to verify that the authenticator  
1520 possesses the private attestation key.

1521 For software authenticators, which cannot provide protection of a private attestation key, the UAF  
1522 protocol allows for surrogate basic attestation. In this mode, the key pair generated to authenticate the  
1523 user to the RP is used to sign the registration data object, including the attestation data. This is

1524 analogous to the use of self-signed certificates for https in that it does not actually provide  
1525 cryptographic proof of the security properties of the authenticator. A potential concern is that the RP  
1526 could not distinguish between a genuine software authenticator and a malicious look-alike  
1527 authenticator that could provide registered credentials to an attacker. In an enterprise setting, this  
1528 concern could be mitigated by delivering the valid authenticator application using EMM or another  
1529 controlled distribution mechanism.

1530 Authenticator metadata would be most important in scenarios where an RP accepts multiple  
1531 authenticators with different assurance levels and applies authorization policies based on the security  
1532 properties of the authenticators (e.g., whether they provide FIPS 140-2-validated key storage [34]). In  
1533 practice, most existing enterprise implementations use a single type of authenticator.

### 1534 C.3.6 FIDO Deployment Considerations

1535 To support any of the FIDO standards for authentication, some integration needs to happen on the  
1536 server side. Depending on how the federated architecture is set up—whether with OIDC or SAML—this  
1537 integration may look different. In general, there are two servers where a FIDO server can be integrated:  
1538 the AS (also known as the RP) and the IdP.

#### 1539 **FIDO Integration at the IdP**

1540 Primary authentication already happens at the IdP, so logic follows that FIDO authentication (e.g., U2F,  
1541 UAF) would as well. This is the most common and well-understood model for using a FIDO  
1542 authentication server and, consequently, there is solid guidance for setting up such an architecture. The  
1543 IdP already has detailed knowledge of the user and directly interacts with the user (e.g., during  
1544 registration), so it is not difficult to insert the FIDO server into the registration and authentication flows.  
1545 In addition, this gives PSOs the most control over the security controls that are used to authenticate  
1546 their users. However, there are a few downsides to this approach:

- 1547     ▪ The PSO must now budget, host, manage, and/or pay for the cost of the FIDO server.
- 1548     ▪ The only authentication of the user at the AS is the bearer assertion from the IdP, so an  
1549         assertion intercepted by an attacker could be used to impersonate the legitimate user at the AS.

#### 1550 **FIDO Integration at the AS**

1551 Another option is to integrate FIDO authentication at the AS. One benefit of this is that PSOs will not be  
1552 responsible for the expenses of maintaining a FIDO server. In addition, an attacker who intercepted a  
1553 valid user's SAML assertion or ID token could not easily impersonate the user because of the  
1554 requirement to authenticate to the AS as well. This approach assumes that some mechanism is in place  
1555 for tightly binding the FIDO authenticator with the user's identity, which is a nontrivial task. In addition,  
1556 this approach has several downsides:

- 1557       ▪ Splitting authentication into a two-stage process that spans the IdP and AS is a less well  
1558       understood model for authentication, which may lead to subtle issues.
- 1559       ▪ The AS does not have detailed knowledge of—or direct action with—users, so enrollment is  
1560       more difficult.
- 1561       ▪ Users would have to register their FIDO authenticators at every AS that is federated to their IdP,  
1562       which adds complexity and frustration to the process.
- 1563       ▪ PSOs would lose the ability to enforce which kinds of FIDO token(s) their users utilize.

1564 **Appendix D Acronyms**

<b>AAL</b>	Authenticator Assurance Level
<b>ABAC</b>	Attribute-Based Access Control
<b>API</b>	Application Programming Interface
<b>AS</b>	Authorization Server
<b>BCP</b>	Best Current Practice
<b>CRADA</b>	Cooperative Research and Development Agreement
<b>CTAP</b>	Client-to-Authenticator Protocol
<b>EMM</b>	Enterprise Mobility Management
<b>FAL</b>	Federation Assurance Level
<b>FIDO</b>	Fast Identity Online
<b>FIPS</b>	Federal Information Processing Standard
<b>FirstNet</b>	First Responder Network Authority
<b>GPS</b>	Global Positioning System
<b>HTML</b>	Hypertext Markup Language
<b>HTTP</b>	Hypertext Transfer Protocol
<b>HTTPS</b>	Hypertext Transfer Protocol Secure
<b>ID</b>	Identification
<b>IdP</b>	Identity Provider
<b>IEC</b>	International Electrotechnical Commission
<b>IETF</b>	Internet Engineering Task Force
<b>iOS</b>	iPhone Operating System
<b>ISO</b>	International Organization for Standardization
<b>IT</b>	Information Technology
<b>LOA</b>	Level of Assurance
<b>MF</b>	Multifactor
<b>MFA</b>	Multifactor Authentication
<b>MSSO</b>	Mobile Single Sign-On
<b>MTC</b>	Mobile Threat Catalogue
<b>NCCoE</b>	National Cybersecurity Center of Excellence
<b>NFC</b>	Near Field Communication
<b>NIEF</b>	National Identity Exchange Federation
<b>NIST</b>	National Institute of Standards and Technology
<b>NTP</b>	Network Time Protocol
<b>OEM</b>	Original Equipment Manufacturer
<b>OIDC</b>	OpenID Connect
<b>OOB</b>	Out of Band
<b>OS</b>	Operating System
<b>OTP</b>	Onetime Password
<b>PII</b>	Personally Identifiable Information
<b>PIN</b>	Personal Identification Number

<b>PKCE</b>	Proof Key for Code Exchange
<b>PSFR</b>	Public Safety and First Responder
<b>PSO</b>	Public Safety Organization
<b>PSX</b>	Public Safety Experience
<b>RFC</b>	Request for Comments
<b>RP</b>	Relying Party
<b>SaaS</b>	Software as a Service
<b>SAML</b>	Security Assertion Markup Language
<b>SDK</b>	Software Development Kit
<b>SF</b>	Single Factor
<b>SKCE</b>	StrongKey Crypto Engine
<b>SP</b>	Special Publication
<b>SSO</b>	Single Sign-On
<b>SwA</b>	Software Assurance
<b>TLS</b>	Transport Layer Security
<b>U2F</b>	Universal Second Factor
<b>UAF</b>	Universal Authentication Framework
<b>UI</b>	User Interface
<b>URI</b>	Uniform Resource Identifier
<b>URL</b>	Uniform Resource Locator
<b>W3C</b>	World Wide Web Consortium

1565 **Appendix E** **References**

- [1] W. Denniss and J. Bradley, *OAuth 2.0 for Native Apps*, Best Current Practice 212, Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF) Network Working Group Request for Comments (RFC) 8252, Oct. 2017. Available: <https://www.rfc-editor.org/info/rfc8252>.
- [2] S. Machani et al., *FIDO UAF Architectural Overview: FIDO Alliance Implementation Draft*, FIDO Alliance, Wakefield, Mass., 2017. Available: <https://fidoalliance.org/specs/fido-uaf-v1.1-id-20170202/fido-uaf-overview-v1.1-id-20170202.html>.
- [3] S. Srinivas et al., *Universal 2nd Factor (U2F) Overview: FIDO Alliance Proposed Standard*, FIDO Alliance, Wakefield, Mass., 2017. Available: <https://fidoalliance.org/specs/fido-u2f-v1.2-ps-20170411/fido-u2f-overview-v1.2-ps-20170411.html>.
- [4] S. Cantor et al., *Assertions and Protocols for the OASIS Security Assertion Markup Language (SAML) V2.0*, OASIS Standard, Mar. 2005. Available: <http://docs.oasis-open.org/security/saml/v2.0/saml-core-2.0-os.pdf>.
- [5] N. Sakimura et al., *OpenID Connect Core 1.0 incorporating errata set 1*, Nov. 2014. Available: <http://openid.net/specs/openid-connect-core-1.0.html>.
- [6] Joint Task Force Transformation Initiative, *Guide for Conducting Risk Assessments*, National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST) Special Publication (SP) 800-30 Revision 1, Gaithersburg, Md., Sept. 2012. Available: <https://doi.org/10.6028/NIST.SP.800-30r1>.
- [7] Joint Task Force Transformation Initiative, *Guide for Applying the Risk Management Framework to Federal Information Systems: A Security Life Cycle Approach*, NIST SP 800-37 Revision 1, Gaithersburg, Md., Feb. 2010. Available: <https://nvlpubs.nist.gov/nistpubs/SpecialPublications/NIST.SP.800-37r1.pdf>.
- [8] C. Johnson et al., *Guide to Cyber Threat Information Sharing*, NIST SP 800-150, Gaithersburg, Md., Oct. 2016. Available: <https://doi.org/10.6028/NIST.SP.800-150>.
- [9] C. Brown et al., *Assessing Threats to Mobile Devices & Infrastructure: The Mobile Threat Catalogue*, Draft NIST Interagency Report 8144, Gaithersburg, Md., Sept. 2016. Available: <https://nccoe.nist.gov/sites/default/files/library/mtc-nistir-8144-draft.pdf>.
- [10] P. Grassi et al., *Digital Identity Guidelines: Authentication and Lifecycle Management*, NIST SP 800-63B, Gaithersburg, Md., June 2017. Available: <https://doi.org/10.6028/NIST.SP.800-63b>.

- [11] P. Grassi et al., *Digital Identity Guidelines: Federation and Assertions*, NIST SP 800-63C, Gaithersburg, Md., June 2017. Available: <https://doi.org/10.6028/NIST.SP.800-63c>.
- [12] International Organization for Standardization/International Electrotechnical Commission/Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers, *Systems and software engineering—System life cycle processes*, ISO/IEC/IEEE 15288:2015, 2015. Available: <https://www.iso.org/standard/63711.html>.
- [13] R. Ross et al., *Systems Security Engineering: Considerations for a Multidisciplinary Approach in the Engineering of Trustworthy Secure Systems*, NIST SP 800-160, Gaithersburg, Md., Nov. 2016. Available: <https://nvlpubs.nist.gov/nistpubs/SpecialPublications/NIST.SP.800-160v1.pdf>
- [14] AppAuth. *AppAuth*. Available: <https://appauth.io/>.
- [15] M. Jones and D. Hardt, *The OAuth 2.0 Authorization Framework: Bearer Token Usage*, IETF Network Working Group RFC 6750, Oct. 2012. Available: <https://www.rfc-editor.org/info/rfc6750>.
- [16] D. Balfanz et al., *Web Authentication: An API for accessing Public Key Credentials Level 1*, W3C Recommendation, Mar. 2019. Available: <https://www.w3.org/TR/webauthn/>.
- [17] P. Grassi et al., *Digital Identity Guidelines*, NIST SP 800-63-3, Gaithersburg, Md., June 2017. Available: <https://pages.nist.gov/800-63-3/>.
- [18] A. Popov et al., *The Token Binding Protocol Version 1.0*, IETF Network Working Group RFC 8471, Oct. 2018. Available: <https://www.rfc-editor.org/info/rfc8471>.
- [19] T. Lodderstedt, Ed., et al., *OAuth 2.0 Threat Model and Security Considerations*, IETF Network Working Group RFC 6819, Jan. 2013. Available: <https://www.rfc-editor.org/info/rfc6819>.
- [20] NIST. *NIST Internet Time Servers*. Available: <https://tf.nist.gov/tf-cgi/servers.cgi>.
- [21] P. Grassi et al., *Digital Identity Guidelines: Enrollment and Identity Proofing*, NIST SP 800-63A, Gaithersburg, Md., June 2017. Available: <https://doi.org/10.6028/NIST.SP.800-63a>.
- [22] J. Franklin et al., *Mobile Device Security: Cloud and Hybrid Builds*, NIST SP 1800-4, Gaithersburg, Md., Nov. 2015. Available: <https://www.nccoe.nist.gov/sites/default/files/library/sp1800/mds-nist-sp1800-4-draft.pdf>.
- [23] C. Brown et al., *Mobile Threat Catalogue*, NIST, 2016. Available: <https://pages.nist.gov/mobile-threat-catalogue/>.

- [24] Committee on National Security Systems (CNSS), *National Information Assurance (IA) Glossary*, CNSS Instruction Number 4009, Apr. 2015. Available: <https://rmf.org/wp-content/uploads/2017/10/CNSSI-4009.pdf>.
- [25] S. Quirolgico et al., *Vetting the Security of Mobile Applications*, NIST SP 800-163, Gaithersburg, Md., Jan. 2015. <https://doi.org/10.6028/NIST.SP.800-163>.
- [26] First Responder Network Authority. *FirstNet Developer Portal*. Available: <https://developer.firstnet.com/firstnet>.
- [27] M. Souppaya and K. Scarfone, *Guidelines for Managing the Security of Mobile Devices in the Enterprise*, NIST SP 800-124 Revision 1, Gaithersburg, Md., June 2013. Available: <https://doi.org/10.6028/NIST.SP.800-124r1>.
- [28] N. Sakimura et al., *Proof Key for Code Exchange by OAuth Public Clients*, IETF Network Working Group RFC 7636, Sept. 2015. Available: <https://www.rfc-editor.org/info/rfc7636>.
- [29] D. Hardt, Ed., *The OAuth 2.0 Authorization Framework*, IETF Network Working Group RFC 6749, Oct. 2012. Available: <https://www.rfc-editor.org/info/rfc6749>.
- [30] A. Popov et al., *Token Binding over HTTP*, IETF Network Working Group RFC 8473, Oct. 2018. Available: <https://www.rfc-editor.org/info/rfc8473>.
- [31] U.S. Department of Labor, Employee Benefits Security Administration. *Fact Sheet: The Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act (HIPAA)*. Available: <https://permanent.access.gpo.gov/gpo10291/fshipaa.html>.
- [32] *Criminal Justice Information Services (CJIS) Security Policy*, Version 5.6, U.S. Department of Justice, Federal Bureau of Investigation, Criminal Justice Information Services Division, June 2017. Available: <https://www.fbi.gov/services/cjis/cjis-security-policy-resource-center>.
- [33] Joint Task Force Transformation Initiative, *Security and Privacy Controls for Federal Information Systems and Organizations*, NIST SP 800-53 Revision 4, Gaithersburg, Md., Jan. 2015. Available: <https://dx.doi.org/10.6028/NIST.SP.800-53r4>.
- [34] U.S. Department of Commerce. *Security Requirements for Cryptographic Modules*, Federal Information Processing Standards (FIPS) Publication 140-2, May 2001. Available: <https://doi.org/10.6028/NIST.FIPS.140-2>.

# Mobile Application Single Sign-On

## Improving Authentication for Public Safety First Responders

---

**Volume C:**  
**How-To Guides**

**Bill Fisher**  
**Paul Grassi\***

Applied Cybersecurity Division  
Information Technology Laboratory

**Spike E. Dog**  
**Santos Jha**  
**William Kim\***  
**Taylor McCorkill**  
**Joseph Portner\***

**Mark Russell**  
**Sudhi Umarji**  
The MITRE Corporation  
McLean, Virginia

**William C. Barker**  
Dakota Consulting  
Silver Spring, Maryland

*\*Former employee; all work for this publication was done while at employer.*

May 2019

SECOND DRAFT

This publication is available free of charge from  
<https://www.nccoe.nist.gov/projects/use-cases/mobile-ss0>

## DISCLAIMER

Certain commercial entities, equipment, products, or materials may be identified by name or company logo or other insignia in order to acknowledge their participation in this collaboration or to describe an experimental procedure or concept adequately. Such identification is not intended to imply special status or relationship with NIST or recommendation or endorsement by NIST or NCCoE; neither is it intended to imply that the entities, equipment, products, or materials are necessarily the best available for the purpose.

National Institute of Standards and Technology Special Publication 1800-13C, Natl. Inst. Stand. Technol. Spec. Publ. 1800-13C, 174 pages (May 2019), CODEN: NSPUE2

## FEEDBACK

You can improve this guide by contributing feedback. As you review and adopt this solution for your own organization, we ask you and your colleagues to share your experience and advice with us.

Comments on this publication may be submitted to: [psfr-nccoe@nist.gov](mailto:psfr-nccoe@nist.gov).

Public comment period: May 29, 2019, through June 28, 2019

All comments are subject to release under the Freedom of Information Act.

National Cybersecurity Center of Excellence  
National Institute of Standards and Technology  
100 Bureau Drive  
Mailstop 2002  
Gaithersburg, Maryland 20899  
Email: [nccoe@nist.gov](mailto:nccoe@nist.gov)

## NATIONAL CYBERSECURITY CENTER OF EXCELLENCE

The National Cybersecurity Center of Excellence (NCCoE), a part of the National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST), is a collaborative hub where industry organizations, government agencies, and academic institutions work together to address businesses' most pressing cybersecurity issues. This public-private partnership enables the creation of practical cybersecurity solutions for specific industries, as well as for broad, cross-sector technology challenges. Through consortia under Cooperative Research and Development Agreements (CRADAs), including technology partners—from Fortune 50 market leaders to smaller companies specializing in information technology security—the NCCoE applies standards and best practices to develop modular, easily adaptable example cybersecurity solutions using commercially available technology. The NCCoE documents these example solutions in the NIST Special Publication 1800 series, which maps capabilities to the NIST Cybersecurity Framework and details the steps needed for another entity to re-create the example solution. The NCCoE was established in 2012 by NIST in partnership with the State of Maryland and Montgomery County, Maryland.

To learn more about the NCCoE, visit <https://nccoe.nist.gov>. To learn more about NIST, visit <https://www.nist.gov>.

## NIST CYBERSECURITY PRACTICE GUIDES

NIST Cybersecurity Practice Guides (Special Publication 1800 series) target specific cybersecurity challenges in the public and private sectors. They are practical, user-friendly guides that facilitate the adoption of standards-based approaches to cybersecurity. They show members of the information security community how to implement example solutions that help them align more easily with relevant standards and best practices and provide users with the materials lists, configuration files, and other information they need to implement a similar approach.

The documents in this series describe example implementations of cybersecurity practices that businesses and other organizations may voluntarily adopt. These documents do not describe regulations or mandatory practices, nor do they carry statutory authority.

## ABSTRACT

On-demand access to public safety data is critical to ensuring that public safety and first responder (PSFR) personnel can deliver the proper care and support during an emergency. This requirement necessitates heavy reliance on mobile platforms while in the field, which may be used to access sensitive information, such as personally identifiable information (PII), law enforcement sensitive (LES) information, or protected health information (PHI). However, complex authentication requirements can hinder the process of providing emergency services, and any delay—even seconds—can become a matter of life or death.

In collaboration with NIST’s Public Safety Communications Research lab (PSCR) and industry stakeholders, the NCCoE aims to help PSFR personnel to efficiently and securely gain access to mission data via mobile devices and applications. This practice guide describes a reference design for multifactor authentication (MFA) and mobile single sign-on (MSSO) for native and web applications, while improving interoperability between mobile platforms, applications, and identity providers, irrespective of the application development platform used in their construction. This NCCoE practice guide details a collaborative effort between the NCCoE and technology providers to demonstrate a standards-based approach using commercially available and open-source products.

This guide discusses potential security risks facing organizations, benefits that may result from the implementation of an MFA/MSSO system, and the approach that the NCCoE took in developing a reference architecture and build. This guide includes a discussion of major architecture design considerations, an explanation of the security characteristics achieved by the reference design, and a mapping of the security characteristics to applicable standards and security control families.

For parties interested in adopting all or part of the NCCoE reference architecture, this guide includes a detailed description of the installation, configuration, and integration of all components.

## KEYWORDS

*access control; authentication; authorization; identity; identity management; identity provider; relying party; single sign-on*

## ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

We are grateful to the following individuals for their generous contributions of expertise and time.

Name	Organization
Donna Dodson	NIST NCCoE
Tim McBride	NIST NCCoE
Jeff Vettrano	FirstNet
FNU Rajan	FirstNet
John Beltz	NIST Public Safety Communications Research Lab
Chris Leggett	Ping Identity

Name	Organization
Paul Madsen	Ping Identity
John Bradley	Yubico
Adam Migus	Yubico
Derek Hanson	Yubico
Adam Lewis	Motorola Solutions
Mike Korus	Motorola Solutions
Dan Griesmann	Motorola Solutions
Arshad Noor	StrongKey
Pushkar Marathe	StrongKey
Max Smyth	StrongKey
Scott Wong	StrongKey
Akhilesh Sah	Nok Nok Labs
Avinash Umap	Nok Nok Labs

The Technology Partners/Collaborators who participated in this build submitted their capabilities in response to a notice in the Federal Register. Respondents with relevant capabilities or product components were invited to sign a Cooperative Research and Development Agreement (CRADA) with NIST, allowing them to participate in a consortium to build this example solution. We worked with:

Technology Partner/Collaborator	Build Involvement
<a href="#">Ping Identity</a>	Federation Server

Technology Partner/Collaborator	Build Involvement
<a href="#">Motorola Solutions</a>	Mobile Applications
<a href="#">Yubico</a>	External Authenticators
<a href="#">Nok Nok Labs</a>	Fast Identity Online (FIDO) Universal Authentication Framework (UAF) Server
<a href="#">StrongKey</a>	FIDO Universal Second Factor (U2F) Server

1	<b>Contents</b>	
2	<b>1 Introduction.....</b>	<b>1</b>
3	1.1 Practice Guide Structure .....	1
4	1.2 Build Overview.....	1
5	1.2.1 Usage Scenarios.....	2
6	1.2.2 Architectural Overview.....	3
7	1.2.3 General Infrastructure Requirements .....	5
8	1.3 Typographic Conventions.....	5
9	<b>2 How to Install and Configure the Mobile Device.....</b>	<b>6</b>
10	2.1 Platform and System Requirements .....	6
11	2.1.1 Supporting SSO on Android Devices.....	7
12	2.1.2 Supporting SSO on iOS Devices .....	8
13	2.1.3 Supporting FIDO U2F on Android Devices.....	10
14	2.1.4 Supporting FIDO U2F on iOS Devices .....	10
15	2.1.5 Supporting FIDO UAF.....	10
16	2.2 How to Install and Configure the Mobile Applications.....	11
17	2.2.1 How to Install and Configure SSO-Enabled Applications .....	11
18	2.2.2 How to Install and Configure a FIDO U2F Authenticator .....	23
19	2.2.3 How to Install and Configure a FIDO UAF Client .....	25
20	2.3 How Application Developers Must Integrate AppAuth for SSO.....	34
21	2.3.1 AppAuth Integration for Android .....	35
22	2.3.2 AppAuth Integration for iOS.....	43
23	<b>3 How to Install and Configure the OAuth 2 AS.....</b>	<b>51</b>
24	3.1 Platform and System Requirements .....	51
25	3.1.1 Software Requirements.....	51
26	3.1.2 Hardware Requirements .....	51
27	3.1.3 Network Requirements .....	52
28	3.2 How to Install the OAuth 2 AS.....	53
29	3.2.1 Java Installation .....	53

30	3.2.2	Java Post Installation .....	53
31	3.2.3	PingFederate Installation.....	55
32	3.2.4	Certificate Installation .....	55
33	3.3	How to Configure the OAuth 2 AS.....	55
34	3.4	How to Configure the OAuth 2 AS for Authentication.....	69
35	3.4.1	How to Configure Direct Authentication.....	70
36	3.4.2	How to Configure SAML Authentication .....	79
37	3.4.3	How to Configure OIDC Authentication .....	86
38	3.4.4	How to Configure the Authentication Policy.....	93
39	<b>4</b>	<b>How to Install and Configure the Identity Providers .....</b>	<b>99</b>
40	4.1	How to Configure the User Store.....	99
41	4.2	How to Install and Configure the SAML Identity Provider .....	103
42	4.2.1	Configuring Authentication to the IdP .....	105
43	4.2.2	Configure the SP Connection.....	115
44	4.3	How to Install and Configure the OIDC Identity Provider .....	122
45	4.3.1	Configuring Authentication to the OIDC IdP .....	123
46	4.3.2	Configuring the OIDC Client Connection .....	135
47	<b>5</b>	<b>How to Install and Configure the FIDO UAF Authentication Server ...</b>	<b>137</b>
48	5.1	Platform and System Requirements .....	138
49	5.1.1	Hardware Requirements .....	138
50	5.1.2	Software Requirements.....	138
51	5.2	How to Install and Configure the FIDO UAF Authentication Server .....	139
52	5.3	How to Install and Configure the FIDO UAF Gateway Server .....	140
53	5.4	How to Install and Configure the FIDO UAF Adapter for the OAuth 2 AS.....	140
54	<b>6</b>	<b>How to Install and Configure the FIDO U2F Authentication Server ...</b>	<b>141</b>
55	6.1	Platform and System Requirements .....	141
56	6.1.1	Software Requirements.....	141
57	6.1.2	Hardware Requirements .....	142
58	6.1.3	Network Requirements .....	142

59 6.2 How to Install and Configure the FIDO U2F Authentication Server..... 143

60 6.3 How to Install and Configure the FIDO U2F Adapter for the IdP ..... 147

61 6.3.1 FIDO U2F Registration in Production..... 148

62 **7 Functional Tests ..... 148**

63 7.1 Testing FIDO Authenticators ..... 148

64 7.2 Testing FIDO Servers..... 149

65 7.3 Testing IdPs..... 149

66 7.4 Testing the AS..... 155

67 7.5 Testing the Application..... 157

68 **Appendix A Abbreviations and Acronyms..... 158**

69 **Appendix B References ..... 160**

70 **List of Figures**

71 **Figure 1-1 Lab Build Architecture ..... 3**

72 **Figure 2-1 Comparison of UAF and U2F Standards ..... 7**

73 **Figure 2-2 SFAuthenticationSession Consent Prompt ..... 8**

74 **Figure 2-3 Safari Transition Prompt ..... 9**

75 **Figure 2-4 FIDO UAF Architectural Overview ..... 11**

76 **Figure 2-5 PSX Cockpit Setup ..... 13**

77 **Figure 2-6 PSX Cockpit Setup, Continued..... 14**

78 **Figure 2-7 PSX Cockpit Group List Selection..... 15**

79 **Figure 2-8 PSX Cockpit Groups..... 16**

80 **Figure 2-9 PSX Cockpit Group List Setup Complete ..... 17**

81 **Figure 2-10 PSX Cockpit User Interface ..... 18**

82 **Figure 2-11 PSX Mapping User Interface ..... 19**

83 **Figure 2-12 PSX Mapping Group Member Information ..... 20**

84 **Figure 2-13 PSX Messenger User Interface ..... 21**

85	Figure 2-14 PSX Messenger Messages .....	22
86	Figure 2-15 FIDO U2F Registration .....	24
87	Figure 2-16 FIDO U2F Authentication .....	25
88	Figure 2-17 Nok Nok Labs Tutorial Application Authentication .....	27
89	Figure 2-18 Nok Nok Labs Tutorial Application Login .....	28
90	Figure 2-19 FIDO UAF Registration Interface .....	29
91	Figure 2-20 FIDO UAF Registration QR Code .....	30
92	Figure 2-21 FIDO UAF Registration Device Flow, Android Device.....	31
93	Figure 2-22 FIDO UAF Registration Device Flow, iPhone X.....	32
94	Figure 2-23 FIDO UAF Fingerprint Authenticator, Android Device .....	33
95	Figure 2-24 FIDO UAF Registration Success .....	34
96	Figure 2-25 Linked Frameworks and Libraries.....	44
97	Figure 2-26 Creating a New Run Script Phase .....	45
98	Figure 2-27 Carthage Run Script.....	45
99	Figure 2-28 Custom URL Scheme.....	47
100	Figure 3-1 Access Token Attribute Mapping Framework.....	56
101	Figure 3-2 Server Roles for AS.....	59
102	Figure 3-3 Federation Info .....	60
103	Figure 3-4 AS Settings.....	61
104	Figure 3-5 Scopes .....	63
105	Figure 3-6 Access Token Management Instance .....	64
106	Figure 3-7 Access Token Manager Instance Configuration .....	65
107	Figure 3-8 Access Token Manager Attribute Contract .....	66
108	Figure 3-9 OAuth Client Registration, Part 1 .....	67
109	Figure 3-10 OAuth Client Registration, Part 2 .....	68
110	Figure 3-11 Create Adapter Instance.....	71
111	Figure 3-12 FIDO Adapter Settings.....	72
112	Figure 3-13 FIDO Adapter Contract .....	73

113 **Figure 3-14 FIDO Adapter Instance Summary .....74**

114 **Figure 3-15 Policy Contract Information.....75**

115 **Figure 3-16 Policy Contract Attributes.....75**

116 **Figure 3-17 Create Authentication Policy Contract Mapping .....76**

117 **Figure 3-18 Authentication Policy Contract Fulfillment .....77**

118 **Figure 3-19 Create Access Token Attribute Mapping .....78**

119 **Figure 3-20 Access Token Mapping Contract Fulfillment .....78**

120 **Figure 3-21 Create IdP Connection .....80**

121 **Figure 3-22 IdP Connection Options.....80**

122 **Figure 3-23 IdP Connection General Info .....81**

123 **Figure 3-24 IdP Connection–User-Session Creation.....82**

124 **Figure 3-25 IdP Connection OAuth Attribute Mapping.....83**

125 **Figure 3-26 IdP Connection–Protocol Settings .....84**

126 **Figure 3-27 Policy Contract for SAML RP .....85**

127 **Figure 3-28 Contract Mapping for SAML RP.....86**

128 **Figure 3-29 IdP Connection Type .....87**

129 **Figure 3-30 IdP Connection Options.....87**

130 **Figure 3-31 IdP Connection General Info .....88**

131 **Figure 3-32 IdP Connection Authentication Policy Contract .....89**

132 **Figure 3-33 IdP Connection Policy Contract Mapping.....90**

133 **Figure 3-34 IdP Connection OAuth Attribute Mapping.....91**

134 **Figure 3-35 IdP Connection Protocol Settings .....92**

135 **Figure 3-36 IdP Connection Activation and Summary .....93**

136 **Figure 3-37 Authentication Selector Instance .....94**

137 **Figure 3-38 Authentication Selector Details .....95**

138 **Figure 3-39 Selector Result Values .....96**

139 **Figure 3-40 Policy Settings.....96**

140 **Figure 3-41 Authentication Policy .....97**

141	<b>Figure 3-42 Policy Contract Mapping for IdP Connections</b> .....	<b>98</b>
142	<b>Figure 3-43 Policy Contract Mapping for Local Authentication</b> .....	<b>99</b>
143	<b>Figure 4-1 Active Directory Users and Computers</b> .....	<b>100</b>
144	<b>Figure 4-2 Server Configuration</b> .....	<b>101</b>
145	<b>Figure 4-3 Data Store Type</b> .....	<b>102</b>
146	<b>Figure 4-4 LDAP Data Store Configuration</b> .....	<b>103</b>
147	<b>Figure 4-5 Server Roles for SAML IdP</b> .....	<b>104</b>
148	<b>Figure 4-6 SAML IdP Federation Info</b> .....	<b>105</b>
149	<b>Figure 4-7 Create Password Credential Validator</b> .....	<b>106</b>
150	<b>Figure 4-8 Credential Validator Configuration</b> .....	<b>107</b>
151	<b>Figure 4-9 Password Credential Validator Extended Contract</b> .....	<b>108</b>
152	<b>Figure 4-10 Password Validator Summary</b> .....	<b>109</b>
153	<b>Figure 4-11 HTML Form Adapter Instance</b> .....	<b>110</b>
154	<b>Figure 4-12 Form Adapter Settings</b> .....	<b>111</b>
155	<b>Figure 4-13 Form Adapter Extended Contract</b> .....	<b>112</b>
156	<b>Figure 4-14 Create U2F Adapter Instance</b> .....	<b>113</b>
157	<b>Figure 4-15 U2F Adapter Settings</b> .....	<b>114</b>
158	<b>Figure 4-16 IdP Authentication Policy</b> .....	<b>115</b>
159	<b>Figure 4-17 SP Connection Type</b> .....	<b>116</b>
160	<b>Figure 4-18 SP Connection General Info</b> .....	<b>117</b>
161	<b>Figure 4-19 SP Browser SSO Profiles</b> .....	<b>118</b>
162	<b>Figure 4-20 Assertion Identity Mapping</b> .....	<b>119</b>
163	<b>Figure 4-21 Assertion Attribute Contract</b> .....	<b>119</b>
164	<b>Figure 4-22 Assertion Attribute Contract Fulfillment</b> .....	<b>120</b>
165	<b>Figure 4-23 Browser SSO Protocol Settings</b> .....	<b>121</b>
166	<b>Figure 4-24 OIDC IdP Roles</b> .....	<b>122</b>
167	<b>Figure 4-25 Create Access Token Manager</b> .....	<b>124</b>
168	<b>Figure 4-26 Access Token Manager Configuration</b> .....	<b>125</b>

169 **Figure 4-27 Access Token Attribute Contract.....126**

170 **Figure 4-28 Access Token Contract Fulfillment .....127**

171 **Figure 4-29 Data Store for User Lookup .....128**

172 **Figure 4-30 Attribute Directory Search.....129**

173 **Figure 4-31 Access Token Contract Fulfillment .....130**

174 **Figure 4-32 Access Token Issuance Criteria.....131**

175 **Figure 4-33 OIDC Policy Creation .....132**

176 **Figure 4-34 OIDC Policy Attribute Contract .....133**

177 **Figure 4-35 OIDC Policy Contract Fulfillment .....134**

178 **Figure 4-36 OIDC Client Configuration.....136**

179 **Figure 6-1 Glassfish SSL Settings .....146**

180 **Figure 7-1 Using Postman to Obtain the ID Token .....154**

181 **Figure 7-2 Authorization Prompt .....156**

182 **Figure 7-3 Token Introspection Request and Response.....157**

## 183 **1 Introduction**

184 The following guide demonstrates a standards-based example solution for efficiently and securely  
185 gaining access to mission-critical data via mobile devices and applications. This guide demonstrates  
186 multifactor authentication (MFA) and mobile single sign-on (MSSO) solutions for native and web  
187 applications using standards-based commercially available and open-source products. We cover all of  
188 the products that we employed in our solution set. We do not re-create the product manufacturer’s  
189 documentation. Instead, we provide pointers to where this documentation is available from the  
190 manufacturers. This guide shows how we incorporated the products together in our environment as a  
191 reference implementation of the proposed build architecture for doing MSSO.

192 *Note: This is not a comprehensive tutorial. There are many possible service and security configurations*  
193 *for these products that are out of scope for this reference solution set.*

### 194 **1.1 Practice Guide Structure**

195 This National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST) Cybersecurity Practice Guide demonstrates a  
196 standards-based example solution and provides users with the information they need to replicate this  
197 approach to implementing our MSSO build. The example solution is modular and can be deployed in  
198 whole or in part.

199 This guide contains three volumes:

- 200     ▪ NIST SP 1800-13A: *Executive Summary*
- 201     ▪ NIST SP 1800-13B: *Approach, Architecture, and Security Characteristics*—what we built and why
- 202     ▪ NIST SP 1800-13C: *How-To Guides*—instructions for building the example solution (**you are here**)

203 See Section 2 in Volume B of this guide for a more detailed overview of the different volumes and  
204 sections, and the audiences that may be interested in each.

### 205 **1.2 Build Overview**

206 The National Cybersecurity Center of Excellence (NCCoE) worked with its build team partners to create a  
207 lab demonstration environment that includes all of the architectural components and functionality  
208 described in Section 4 of Volume B of this build guide. This includes mobile devices with sample  
209 applications, hardware and software-based authenticators to demonstrate the Fast Identity Online  
210 (FIDO) standards for MFA, and the authentication server and authorization server (AS) components  
211 required to demonstrate the AppAuth authorization flows (detailed in Internet Engineering Task Force  
212 [IETF] Request for Comments [RFC] 8252 [\[1\]](#)) with federated authentication to a Security Assertion  
213 Markup Language (SAML) Identity Provider (IdP) and an OpenID Connect (OIDC) provider. The complete

214 build includes several systems deployed in the NCCoE lab by StrongKey, Yubico, and Ping Identity as well  
215 as cloud-hosted resources made available by Motorola Solutions and by Nok Nok Labs.

216 This section of the build guide documents the build process and specific configurations that were used in  
217 the lab.

### 218 1.2.1 Usage Scenarios

219 The build architecture supports three usage scenarios. The scenarios all demonstrate single sign-on  
220 (SSO) among Motorola Solutions Public Safety Experience (PSX) applications and custom-built Apple  
221 iPhone operating system (iOS) demo applications using the AppAuth pattern but differ in the details of  
222 the authentication process. The three authentication mechanisms are as follows:

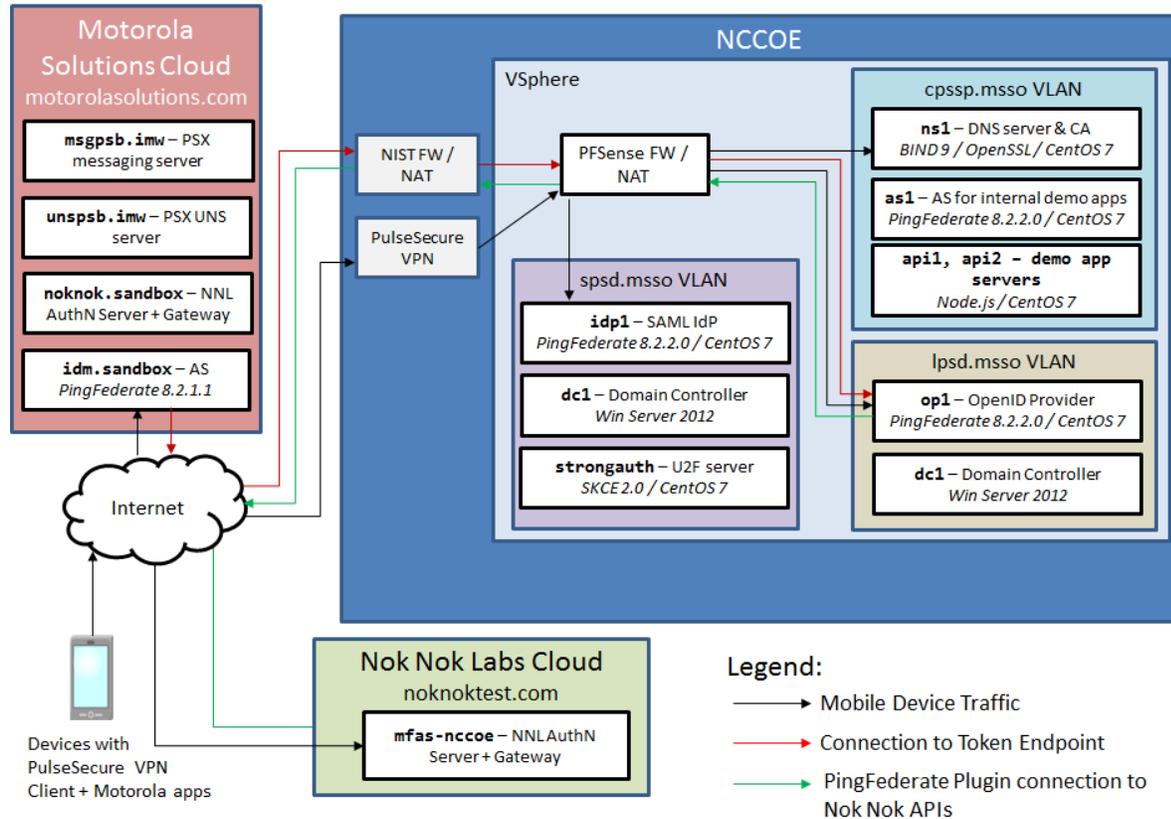
- 223       ▪ The OAuth AS directly authenticates the user with FIDO Universal Authentication Framework  
224       (UAF); user accounts are managed directly by the service provider.
- 225       ▪ The OAuth AS redirects the user to a SAML IdP, which authenticates the user with a password  
226       and FIDO Universal Second Factor (U2F).
- 227       ▪ The OAuth AS redirects the user to an OIDC IdP, which authenticates the user with FIDO UAF.

228 In all three scenarios, once the authentication flow is completed, the user can launch multiple mobile  
229 applications without additional authentication, demonstrating SSO. These three scenarios were chosen  
230 to reflect different real-world implementation options that public safety and first responder (PSFR)  
231 organizations might choose. Larger PSFR organizations may host (or obtain from a service provider) their  
232 own IdPs, enabling them to locally manage user accounts, group memberships, and other user  
233 attributes, and to provide them to multiple Relying Parties (RPs) through federation. SAML is currently  
234 the most commonly used federation protocol, but OIDC might be preferred for new implementations.  
235 As demonstrated in this build, RPs can support both protocols more or less interchangeably. For smaller  
236 organizations, a service provider might also act in the role of “identity provider of last resort,”  
237 maintaining user accounts and attributes on behalf of organizations.

238 **1.2.2 Architectural Overview**

239 Figure 1-1 shows the lab build architecture.

240 **Figure 1-1 Lab Build Architecture**



241

242 Figure 1-1 depicts the four environments that interact in the usage scenarios:

- 243
- 244
- 245
- 246
- 247
- 248
- 249
- 250
- 251
- 252
- Motorola Solutions cloud—a cloud-hosted environment providing the back-end application servers for the Motorola Solutions PSX Mapping and Messaging applications, as well as an OAuth AS that the application servers use to authorize requests from mobile devices
  - Nok Nok Labs cloud—a cloud-hosted server running both the Nok Nok Authentication Server (NNAS) and the Nok Nok Labs Gateway
  - NCCoE—the NCCoE lab, including several servers hosted in a vSphere environment running the IdPs and directory services that would correspond to PSFR organizations’ infrastructure to support federated authentication to a service provider, like Motorola Solutions. An additional AS and some demonstration application back ends are also hosted in the NCCoE lab for internal testing.

- 253       ▪ mobile devices connected to public cellular networks with the required client software to  
254       authenticate to, and access, Motorola Solutions back-end applications and the NCCoE lab  
255       systems

256 The names of the virtual local area networks (VLANs) in the NCCoE lab are meant to depict different  
257 organizations participating in an MSSO scheme:

- 258       ▪ SPSP—State Public Safety Department, a PSFR organization with a SAML IdP  
259       ▪ LPSD—Local Public Safety Department, a PSFR organization with an OIDC IdP  
260       ▪ CPSSP—Central Public Safety Service Provider, a software as a service (SaaS) provider serving the  
261       PSFR organizations, analogous to Motorola Solutions

262 The fictitious *.mssso* top-level domain is simply a reference to the MSSO project. The demonstration  
263 applications hosted in the CPSSP VLAN were used to initially test and validate the federation setups in  
264 the user organization and were later expanded to support the iOS demonstration build.

265 The arrows in Figure 1-1 depict traffic flows between the three different environments to illustrate the  
266 networking requirements for cross-organizational MSSO flows. This diagram does not depict traffic flows  
267 within environments (e.g., between the IdPs and the Domain Controllers providing directory services).  
268 The depicted traffic flows are described below:

- 269       ▪ Mobile device traffic—The PSX client applications on the device connect to the publicly routable  
270       PSX application servers in the Motorola Solutions cloud. The mobile browser also connects to  
271       the Motorola Solutions AS and, in the federated authentication scenarios, the browser is  
272       redirected to the IdPs in the NCCoE lab. The mobile devices use the Pulse Secure Virtual Private  
273       Network (VPN) client to access internal lab services through Network Address Translation (NAT)  
274       addresses established on the pfSense firewall. This enables the use of the internal lab domain  
275       name system (DNS) server to resolve the host names under the *.mssso* top-level domain, which is  
276       not actually registered in a public DNS. To support UAF authentication at the lab-hosted OIDC  
277       IdP, the Nok Nok Passport application on the devices also connects to the publicly routable  
278       NNAS instance hosted in the Nok Nok Labs cloud environment.
- 279       ▪ Connection to Token Endpoint—The usage scenario where the Motorola Solutions AS redirects  
280       the user to the OIDC IdP in the lab requires the AS to initiate an inbound connection to the IdP’s  
281       Token Endpoint. To enable this, the PingFederate run-time port, 9031, is exposed via NAT  
282       through the NIST firewall. Note that no inbound connection is required in the SAML IdP  
283       integration, as the SAML web browser SSO does not require direct back-channel communication  
284       between the AS and the IdP. SAML authentication requests and responses are transmitted  
285       through browser redirects.
- 286       ▪ PingFederate plug-in connection to Nok Nok Application Programming Interfaces (APIs)—To  
287       support UAF authentication, the OIDC IdP includes a PingFederate adapter developed by Nok  
288       Nok Labs that needs to connect to the APIs on the NNAS.

289 In a typical production deployment, the NNAS would not be directly exposed to the internet; instead,  
 290 mobile client interactions with the Authentication Server APIs would traverse a reverse proxy server.  
 291 Nok Nok Labs provided a cloud instance of its software as a matter of expedience in completing the lab  
 292 build.

293 Additionally, the use of a VPN client on mobile devices is optional. Many organizations directly expose  
 294 their IdPs to the public internet, though some organizations prefer to keep those services internal and  
 295 use a VPN to access them. Organizations can decide this based on their risk tolerance, but this build  
 296 architecture can function with or without a VPN client on the mobile devices.

### 297 1.2.3 General Infrastructure Requirements

298 Some general infrastructure elements must be in place to support the components of this build guide.  
 299 These are assumed to exist in the environment prior to the installation of the architecture components  
 300 in this guide. The details of how these services are implemented are not directly relevant to the build.

- 301     ▪ DNS—All server names are expected to be resolvable in a DNS. This is especially important for  
 302 FIDO functionality, as the application identification (App ID) associated with cryptographic keys  
 303 is derived from the host name used in application uniform resource locators (URLs).
- 304     ▪ Network Time Protocol (NTP)—Time synchronization among servers is important. A clock  
 305 difference of five minutes or more is sufficient to cause JavaScript Object Notation (JSON) Web  
 306 Token (JWT) validation, for example, to fail. All servers should be configured to synchronize time  
 307 with a reliable NTP source.
- 308     ▪ Certificate Authority (CA)—Hypertext Transfer Protocol Secure (https) connections should be  
 309 used throughout the architecture. Transport Layer Security (TLS) certificates are required for all  
 310 servers in the build. If an in-house CA is used to issue certificates, the root and any intermediate  
 311 certificates must be provisioned to the trust stores in client mobile devices and servers.

## 312 1.3 Typographic Conventions

313 The following table presents typographic conventions used in this volume.

Typeface/ Symbol	Meaning	Example
<i>Italics</i>	file names and path names, references to documents that are not hyperlinks, new terms, and placeholders	For detailed definitions of terms, see the <i>NCCoE Glossary</i> .

Typeface/ Symbol	Meaning	Example
<b>Bold</b>	names of menus, options, command buttons, and fields	Choose <b>File &gt; Edit</b> .
Monospace	command-line input, onscreen computer output, sample code examples, and status codes	<code>mkdir</code>
<b>Monospace Bold</b>	command-line user input contrasted with computer output	<code>service sshd start</code>
<a href="#">blue text</a>	link to other parts of the document, a web URL, or an email address	All publications from NIST’s NCCoE are available at <a href="https://www.nccoe.nist.gov">https://www.nccoe.nist.gov</a> .

## 314 2 How to Install and Configure the Mobile Device

315 This section covers all of the different aspects of installing and configuring the mobile device. There are  
 316 several prerequisites and different components that need to work in tandem for the entire SSO  
 317 architecture to work.

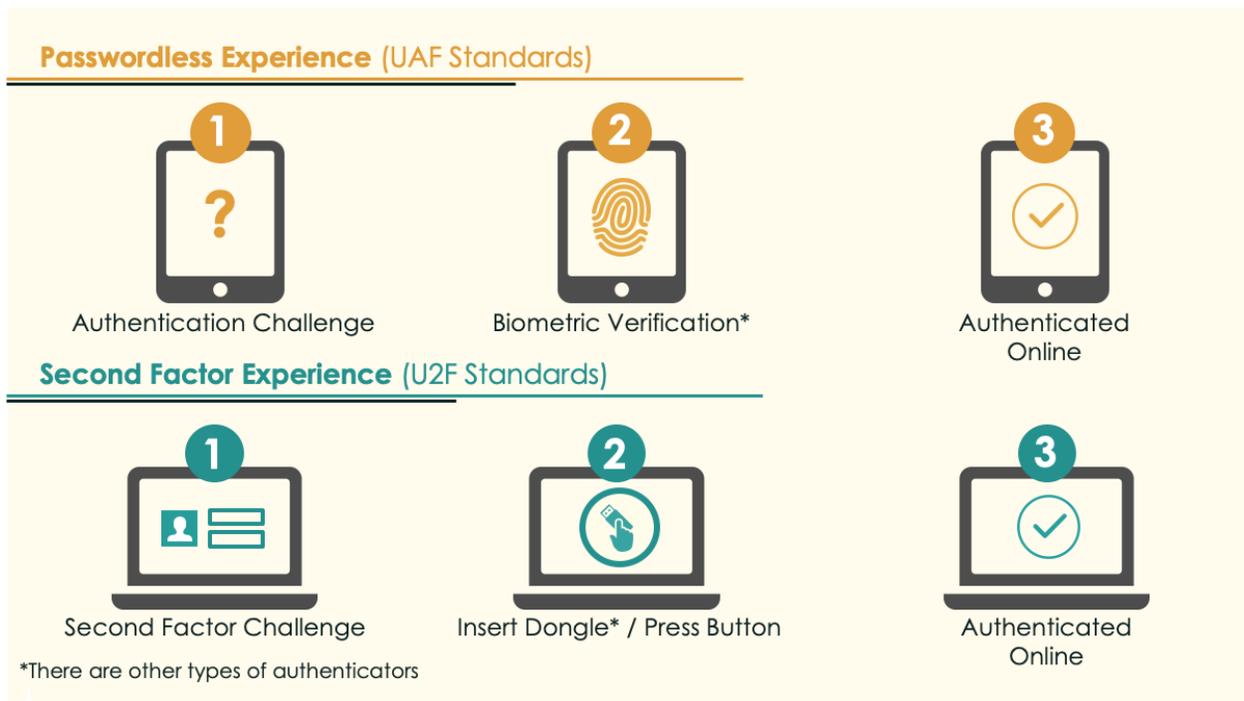
### 318 2.1 Platform and System Requirements

319 This section covers requirements for mobile devices—both hardware and software—for the SSO and  
 320 FIDO authentication components of the architecture to work properly. The two dominant mobile  
 321 platforms are Google’s Android and Apple’s iOS. The NCCoE reference architecture incorporates both  
 322 iOS and Android devices and applications.

323 First, for SSO support, the NCCoE reference architecture follows the guidance of the *OAuth 2.0 for*  
 324 *Native Apps* Best Current Practice (BCP) [1]. That guidance, also known as *AppAuth*, requires that  
 325 developers use an *external user-agent* (e.g., Google’s Chrome for Android web browser) instead of an  
 326 *embedded user-agent* (e.g., an Android WebView) for their OAuth authorization requests. Because of  
 327 this, the mobile platform must support the use of external user-agents.

328 Second, for FIDO support, this architecture optionally includes two different types of authenticators:  
 329 UAF and U2F. The *FIDO Specifications Overview* presentation [2] explains the difference, as shown in  
 330 Figure 2-1.

331 Figure 2-1 Comparison of UAF and U2F Standards



332

333 The following subsections address mobile device requirements to support SSO and FIDO authentication.

334 **2.1.1 Supporting SSO on Android Devices**

335 While it is not strictly required, the BCP recommends that the device provide an external user-agent that  
 336 supports “in-application browser tabs,” which Google describes as the *Android Custom Tab* feature. The  
 337 following excerpt is from the AppAuth Android-specific guidance in Appendix B.2 of RFC 8252:

338 *Apps can initiate an authorization request in the browser without the user leaving the app,*  
 339 *through the Android Custom Tab feature which implements the in-app browser tab pattern. The*  
 340 *user’s default browser can be used to handle requests when no browser supports Custom Tabs.*

341 *Android browser vendors should support the Custom Tabs protocol (by providing an*  
 342 *implementation of the “CustomTabsService” class), to provide the in-app browser tab user*  
 343 *experience optimization to their users. Chrome is one such browser that implements Custom*  
 344 *Tabs.*

345 Any device manufacturer can support Custom Tabs in its Android browser. However, Google  
 346 implemented this in its Chrome for Android web browser in September 2015 [3]. Because Chrome is not  
 347 part of the operating system (OS) itself but is downloaded from the Google Play Store, recent versions of  
 348 Chrome can be used on older versions of Android. In fact, the Chrome Developer website’s page on

349 Chrome Custom Tabs [4] states that it can be used on Android Jelly Bean (4.1), which was released in  
350 2012, and up.

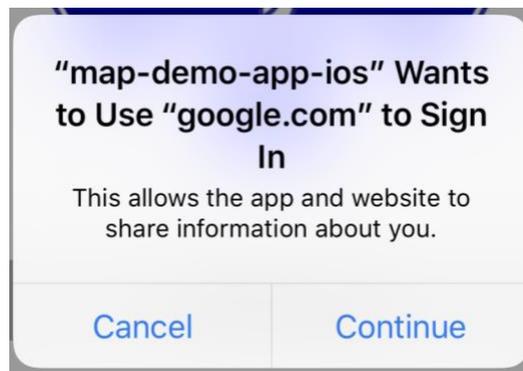
351 To demonstrate SSO, the NCCoE reference architecture utilizes the Motorola Solutions PSX App Suite,  
352 which requires Android Lollipop (5.0) or newer.

### 353 2.1.2 Supporting SSO on iOS Devices

354 Apple's Safari browser is the default external user-agent provided on iOS devices, and iOS has also  
355 supported in-application browser tabs with the SFSafariViewController API [5] since iOS 9. Like Chrome  
356 Custom Tabs, SFSafariViewController provides the functionality of the OS browser without exiting from  
357 the mobile application.

358 Apple made changes to its in-application browser tab implementation in iOS 11 [6] that impacted SSO  
359 functionality. SFSafariViewController instances created by different applications are now effectively  
360 sandboxed from each other, with no shared cookie store between them. As described in Section 4.4 of  
361 Volume B of this practice guide, the AppAuth pattern depends on shared cookie storage to provide SSO  
362 between applications. Apple introduced a new API called SFAuthenticationSession to provide an in-  
363 application browser tab implementation specifically for authentication with SSO capabilities with access  
364 to the shared Safari cookie store. iOS also prompts for the user's consent when SFAuthenticationSession  
365 is used. An example of the consent prompt is shown in Figure 2-2.

366 **Figure 2-2 SFAuthenticationSession Consent Prompt**



367

368 In iOS 12, Apple replaced the SFAuthenticationSession API with ASWebAuthenticationSession [7], which  
369 performs the same functions as SFAuthenticationSession and presents an identical consent prompt. In  
370 lab testing, the build team frequently encountered issues with SFAuthenticationSession where cookies  
371 created in an SFAuthenticationSession spawned by one application were not available in an  
372 SFAuthenticationSession spawned by another application. When this issue occurred, users would be  
373 prompted to authenticate in each application that was launched and SSO did not function properly. The  
374 team has not encountered these issues with ASWebAuthenticationSession, and the SSO capabilities of  
375 in-application browser tabs are much improved in iOS 12.

376 By default, the AppAuth library for iOS [8] automatically selects an appropriate user-agent based on the  
 377 version of iOS installed on the mobile device as shown in Table 2-1.

378 **Table 2-1 AppAuth User-Agent by iOS Version**

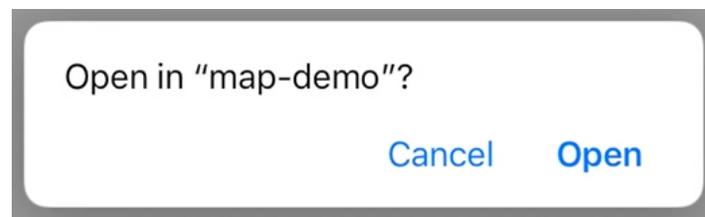
iOS Version	User-Agent
12 and higher	ASWebAuthenticationSession
11	SFAuthenticationSession
9 or 10	SFSafariViewController
8 and lower	Safari

379

380 The build team encountered issues with the FIDO UAF login flow demonstrated in this practice guide  
 381 and the iOS in-application browser tab APIs (SFAuthenticationSession and  
 382 ASWebAuthenticationSession). In the demo scenario, the login flow begins in the browser, which then  
 383 launches the Passport application for user verification and FIDO authentication, and then control is  
 384 returned to the browser to complete the authentication flow and return the user to the application.  
 385 With ASWebAuthenticationSession, the authentication flow begins successfully in an in-application  
 386 browser tab, and the user is redirected to the Passport application to authenticate, but control is not  
 387 properly returned to the in-application browser tab when the Passport application closes. See Section  
 388 4.3.2 of Volume B of this practice guide for additional details about this issue. The build team speculates  
 389 that this issue would generally apply to any login flow that entails launching an external application and  
 390 then returning control to an in-application browser tab.

391 This issue was resolved by overriding the default user-agent selection in the AppAuth library. AppAuth  
 392 provides the `OIDExternalUserAgentIOSCustomBrowser` interface to enable an application to specify the  
 393 user-agent that should be used for the login flow. The iOS demo applications were configured to use the  
 394 Safari browser instead of an in-application browser tab, which enabled the UAF login flow to succeed.  
 395 The user experience with Safari is very similar to that with ASWebAuthenticationSession. The animation  
 396 shown when transitioning to the web session is slightly different, and the consent dialogue shown in  
 397 Figure 2-2 is not shown. After authentication is completed, however, a different dialogue is displayed,  
 398 prompting the user to open the mobile application as shown in Figure 2-3.

399 **Figure 2-3 Safari Transition Prompt**



400

### 401 2.1.3 Supporting FIDO U2F on Android Devices

402 The device will need the following components for FIDO U2F:

- 403     ▪ a web browser compatible with FIDO U2F
- 404     ▪ a FIDO U2F client application capable of handling the challenge
- 405     ▪ Near Field Communication (NFC) hardware support

406 Chrome for Android [\[9\]](#) is a U2F-compatible browser. Google has added U2F functionality to the Google  
407 Play Services component of Android [\[10\]](#), so devices running Android 5 and later can natively support  
408 U2F authentication over NFC, Universal Serial Bus (USB), and Bluetooth Low Energy (BLE) with an over-  
409 the-air update to Play Services. To support U2F in the browser, the Google Authenticator application  
410 [\[11\]](#) (available on Android Gingerbread [\[2.3.3\]](#) and up) must also be installed.

### 411 2.1.4 Supporting FIDO U2F on iOS Devices

412 At the time of writing, the U2F login flow demonstrated in this practice guide cannot be implemented on  
413 iOS devices. Apple's Core NFC APIs do not expose required functionality to implement U2F over NFC.  
414 Yubico has published an API enabling the YubiKey Neo to be used for authentication over NFC with an  
415 iOS device, but this implementation uses the onetime password authentication mechanism of the  
416 YubiKey, not the U2F protocol [\[12\]](#). BLE U2F authenticators can be paired and used with iOS devices, but  
417 their use has been limited. The Google Smart Lock application, which protects Google accounts with U2F  
418 authentication on iOS devices, is the only notable U2F implementation on iOS of which the build team is  
419 aware.

420 Yubico has announced development of an authenticator with a Lightning adapter, specifically targeting  
421 iOS and Mac devices; and a corresponding mobile software development kit (SDK) for iOS that could  
422 enable U2F authentication in native iOS applications [\[13\]](#). To enable the AppAuth login flow used in this  
423 practice guide, a U2F-capable browser is also needed. If Apple adds W3C Web Authentication support to  
424 the Safari browser, it may support U2F authentication over Lightning and BLE in the future. Apple has  
425 already added experimental support to the Safari Technology Preview release for Mac OS [\[14\]](#).

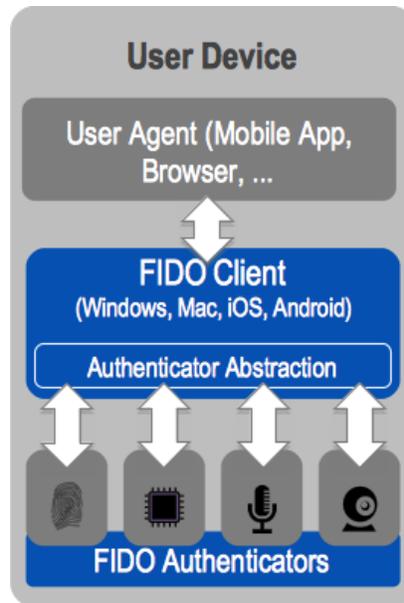
### 426 2.1.5 Supporting FIDO UAF

427 Supporting FIDO UAF is fairly similar on Android and iOS devices. The device will need the following  
428 components for FIDO UAF:

- 429     ▪ a web browser
- 430     ▪ a FIDO UAF client application capable of handling the challenge
- 431     ▪ a FIDO UAF authenticator

432 These components are pictured in Figure 2-4, which is from the *FIDO UAF Architectural Overview* [\[15\]](#).

433 Figure 2-4 FIDO UAF Architectural Overview



434

435 While the overview refers to the last two components (client and authenticator) as separate  
 436 components, these components can—and often do—come packaged in a single application. The NCCoE  
 437 reference architecture utilizes the Nok Nok Passport application for Android [16] and iOS [17] to provide  
 438 these two components. In addition to the applications, the device will need to provide some hardware  
 439 component to support the FIDO UAF authenticator. For example, for biometric-based FIDO UAF  
 440 authenticators, a camera would be needed to support face or iris scanning, a microphone would be  
 441 needed to support voice prints, and a fingerprint sensor would be needed to support fingerprint  
 442 biometrics. Of course, if a personal identification number (PIN) authenticator is used, a specific  
 443 hardware sensor is not required. Beyond the actual input method of the FIDO UAF factor, additional  
 444 (optional) hardware considerations for a UAF authenticator include secure key storage for registered  
 445 FIDO key pairs, storage of biometric templates, and execution of matching functions (e.g., within  
 446 dedicated hardware or on processor trusted execution environments).

## 447 2.2 How to Install and Configure the Mobile Applications

448 This section covers the installation and configuration of the mobile applications needed for various  
 449 components of the reference architecture: SSO, FIDO U2F, and FIDO UAF.

### 450 2.2.1 How to Install and Configure SSO-Enabled Applications

451 For SSO-enabled applications, there is no universal set of installation and configuration procedures;  
 452 these will vary depending on the design choices of the application manufacturer. For the Android demo,  
 453 the NCCoE reference architecture uses the *Motorola Solutions PSX App Suite* [18] Version 5.4. This set of

454 mobile applications provides several capabilities for the public safety community. Our setup consisted of  
455 three applications: *PSX Messenger* for text, photo, and video communication; *PSX Mapping* for shared  
456 location awareness; and *PSX Cockpit* to centralize authentication and identity information across the  
457 other applications. These applications cannot be obtained from a public venue (e.g., the Google Play  
458 Store); rather, the binaries must be obtained from Motorola Solutions and installed via other means,  
459 such as a Mobile Device Management (MDM) solution or private application store.

460 For the iOS demo, the team built two iOS demonstration applications—a mapping application called  
461 map-demo and a chat application called chat-demo. These applications were built by using Apple’s  
462 XCode integrated development environment and installed on lab devices using developer certificates.

### 463 *2.2.1.1 Configuring the PSX Cockpit Application*

- 464 1. Open the Cockpit application. Your screen should look like Figure 2-5.

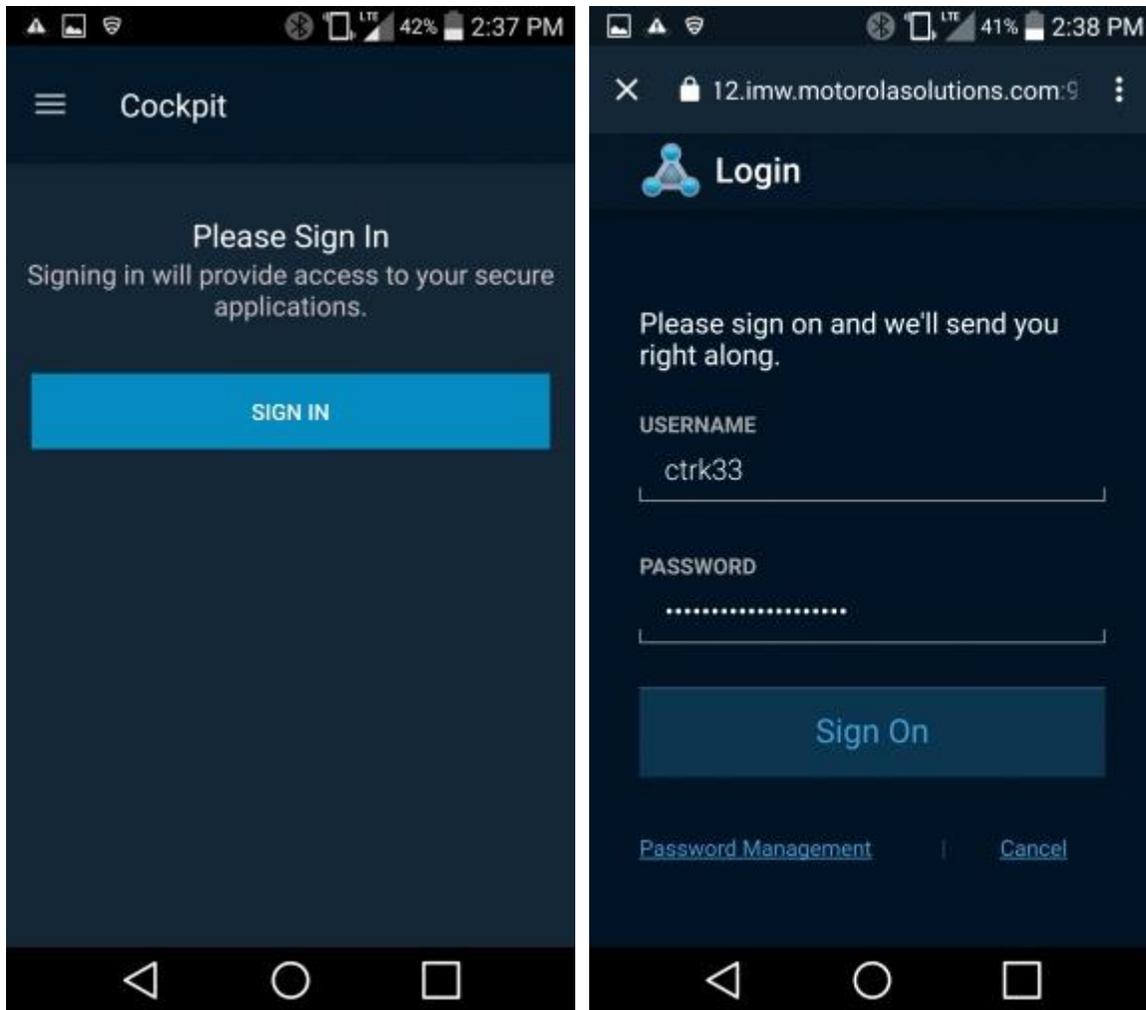
465 Figure 2-5 PSX Cockpit Setup



466

- 467 2. For **DEVICE SERVICE ID**, select a Device Service ID in the range given to you by your  
 468 administrator. Note that these details will be provided by Motorola Solutions if you are using  
 469 their service offering, or by your administrator if you are hosting the PSX application servers in  
 470 your own environment. Each device should be configured with a unique Device Service ID  
 471 corresponding to the username from the username range. For example, the NCCoE lab used a  
 472 Device Service ID of 22400 to correspond to a username of 2400.
- 473 3. For **SERVER ADDRESS**, use the Server Address given to you by your administrator. For example,  
 474 the NCCoE lab used a Server Address of uns5455.imw.motorolasolutions.com.
- 475 4. If a **Use SUPL APN** checkbox appears, leave it unchecked.
- 476 5. Tap **NEXT**. Your screen should look like Figure 2-6.

477 Figure 2-6 PSX Cockpit Setup, Continued



478

479

6. Tap **SIGN IN**.

480

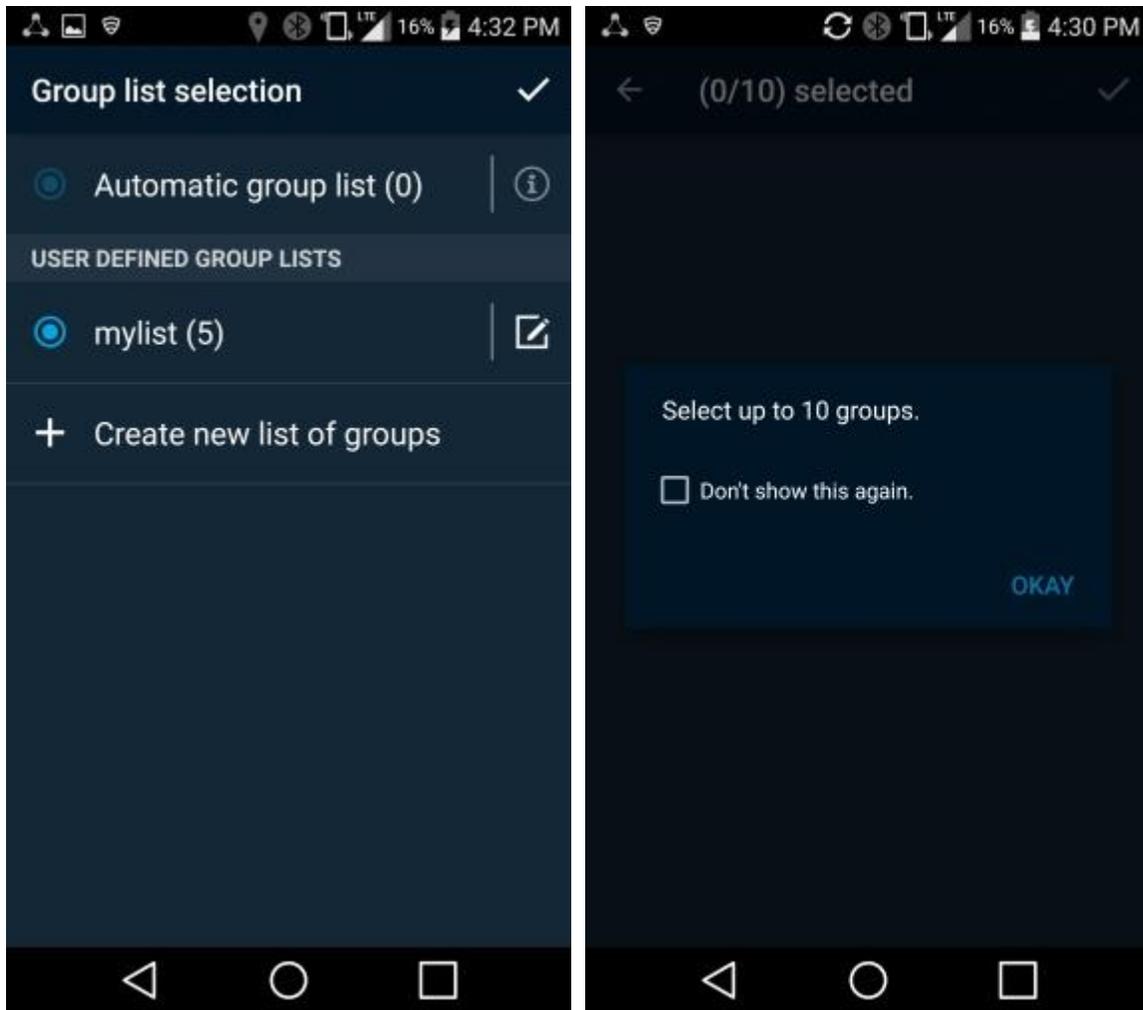
481

482

483

7. Log in with the authentication procedure determined by the AS and IdP policies. Note that if UAF is used, a FIDO UAF authenticator must be enrolled before this step can be completed. See [Section 2.2.3](#) for details on FIDO UAF enrollment. After you log in, your screen should look like Figure 2-7.

484 Figure 2-7 PSX Cockpit Group List Selection

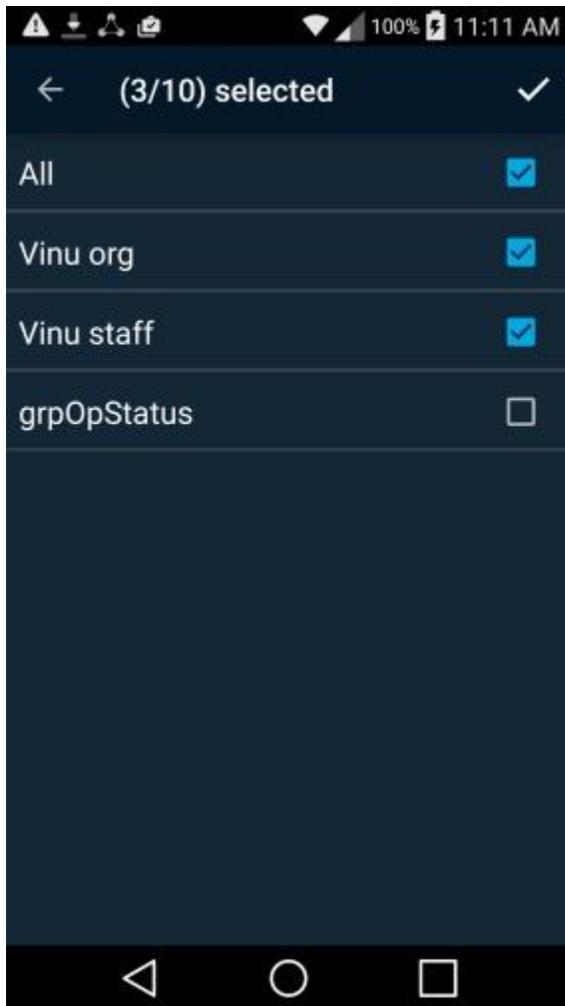


485

486 8. Tap **Create new list of groups**. This is used to select which organizationally defined groups of  
 487 users you can receive data updates for in the other PSX applications.

488 9. Tap **OKAY**. Your screen should look like Figure 2-8.

489 Figure 2-8 PSX Cockpit Groups

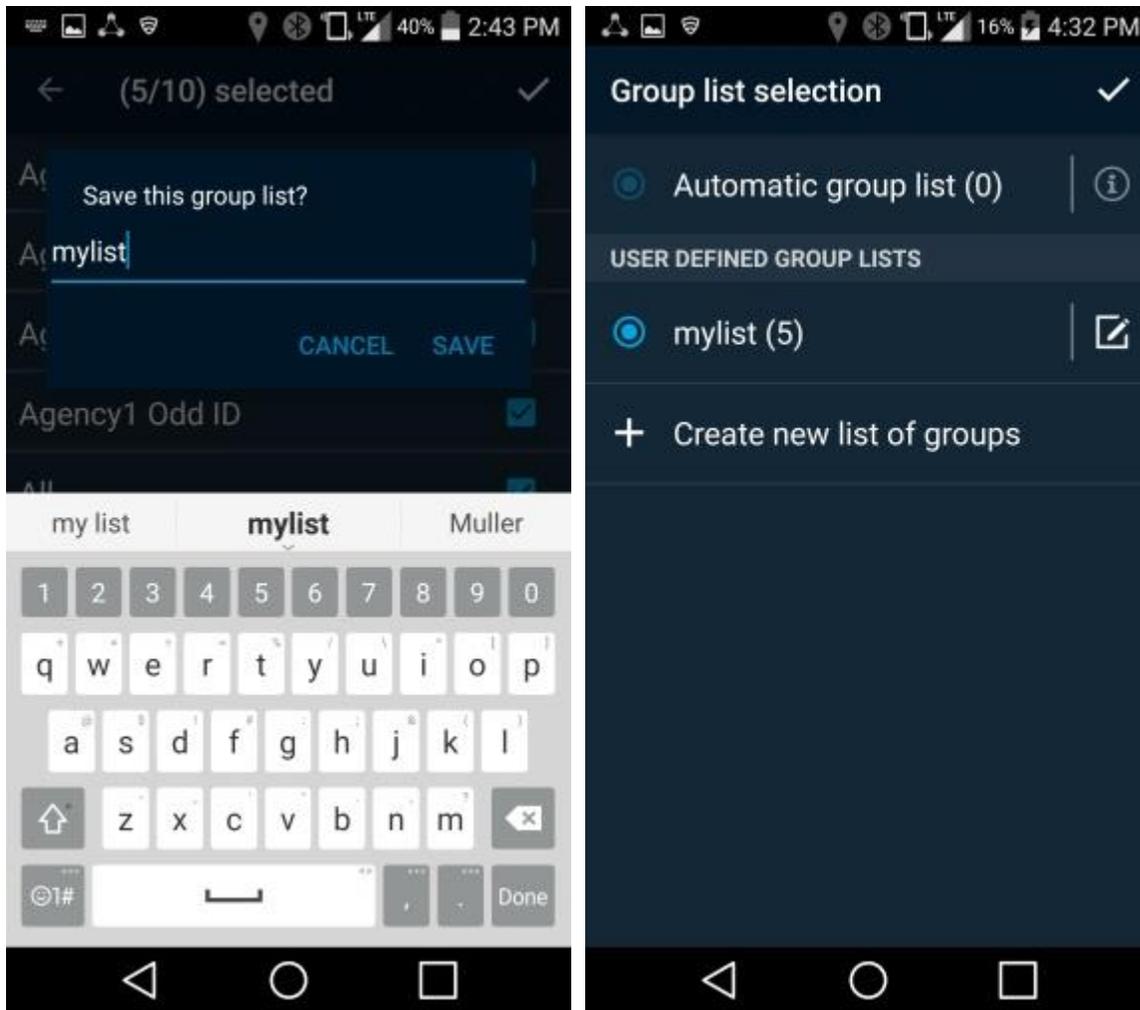


490

491 10. Check the checkboxes for the groups that you wish to use. Note that it may take a short time for  
492 the groups to appear.

493 11. Tap on the upper-right check mark. Your screen should look like Figure 2-9.

494 Figure 2-9 PSX Cockpit Group List Setup Complete



495

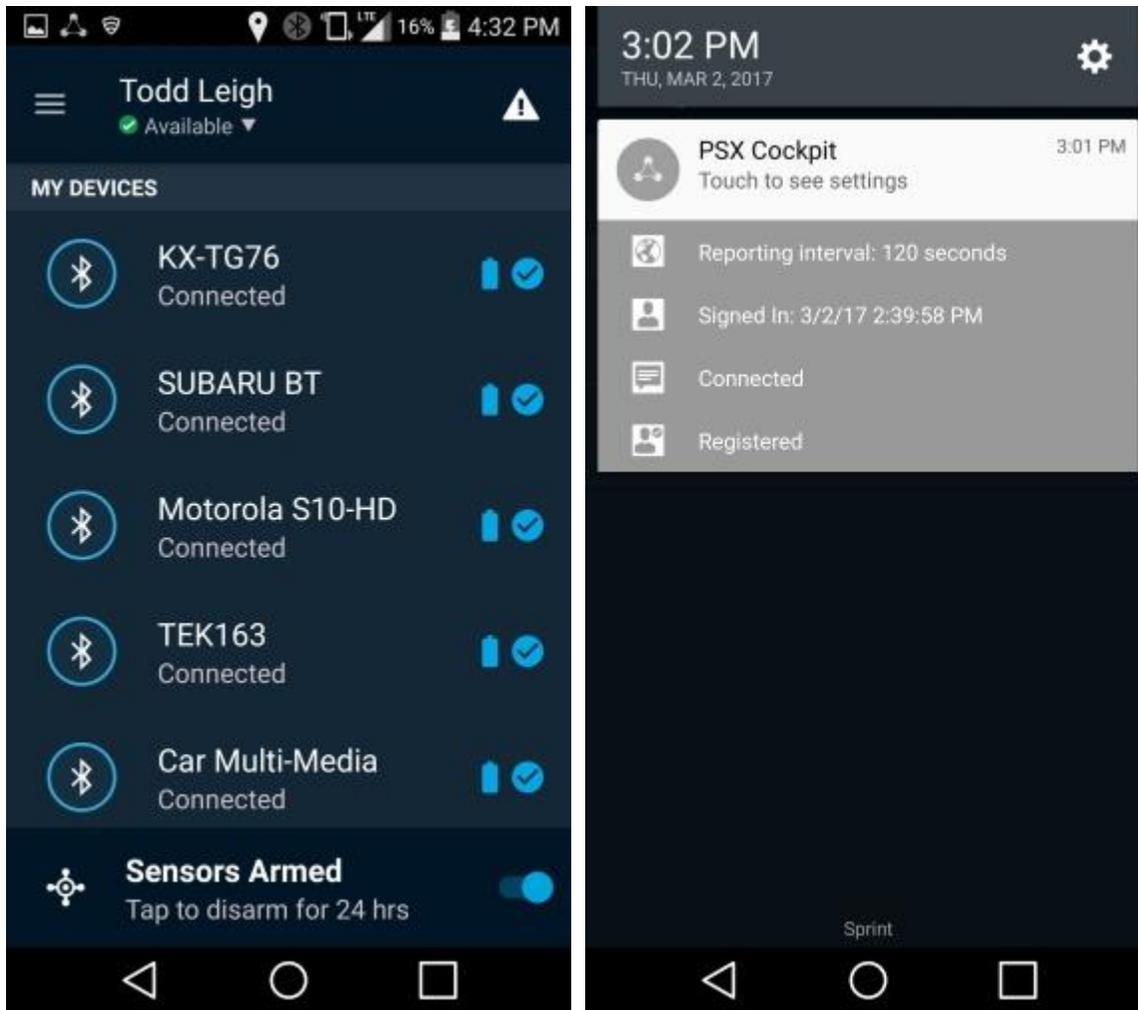
496

497

12. Enter a group list name (e.g., "mylist"), and tap **SAVE**.

13. Tap the upper-right check mark to select the list. Your screen should look like Figure 2-10.

498 Figure 2-10 PSX Cockpit User Interface

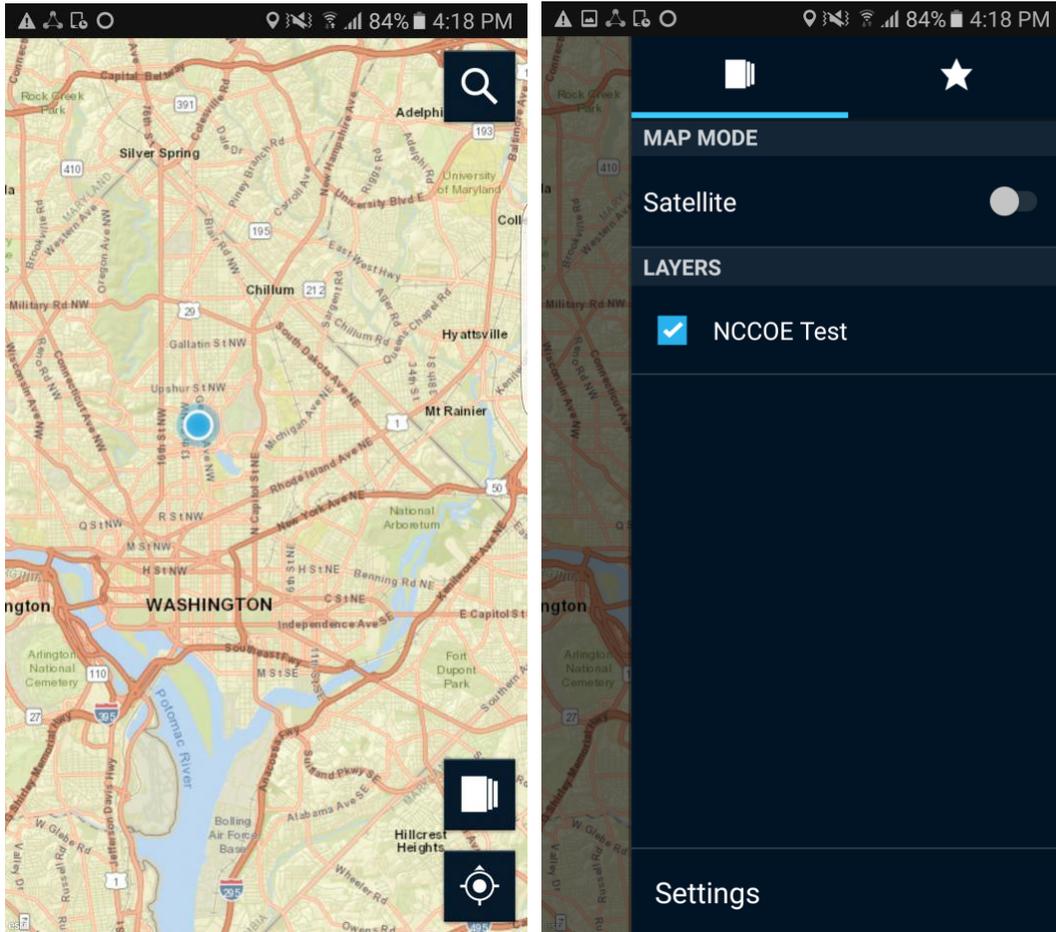


- 499
- 500 14. On the Cockpit screen, you can trigger an emergency (triangle icon in the upper right). Set your
- 501 status (drop-down menu under your name); or reselect roles and groups, see configuration, and
- 502 sign off (hamburger menu to the left of your name, and then tap **username**).
- 503 15. If you pull down your notifications, you should see icons and text indicating Reporting interval:
- 504 120 seconds, Signed In: <date> <time>, Connected, and Registered.

505 **2.2.1.2 Configuring the PSX Mapping Application**

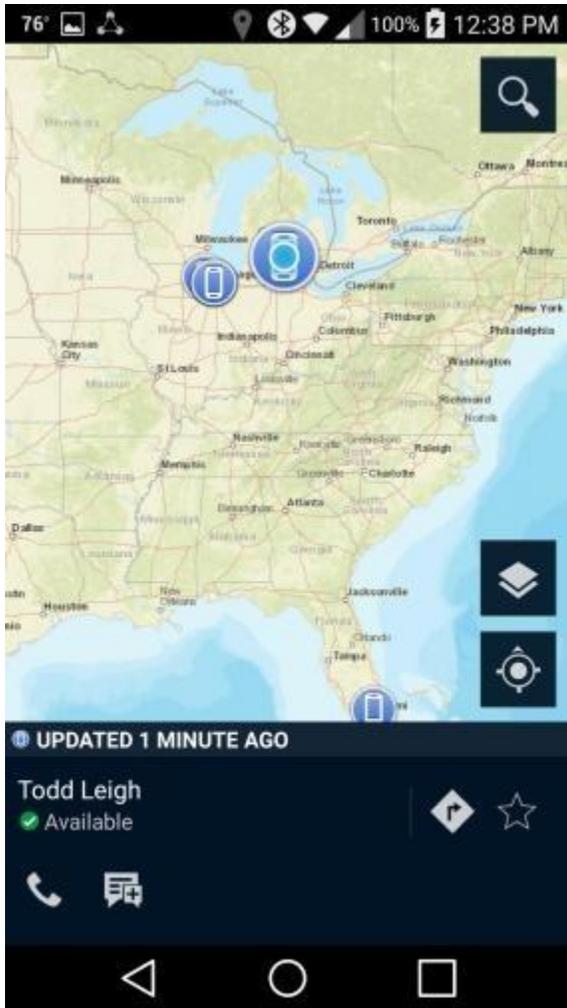
506 1. Open the Mapping application. You should see the screen shown in Figure 2-11.

507 **Figure 2-11 PSX Mapping User Interface**



- 508
- 509 2. Select the Layers icon in the lower-right corner. Group names should appear under **Layers**.
- 510 3. Select a group. Your screen should look like Figure 2-12.

511 Figure 2-12 PSX Mapping Group Member Information



512

513

4. The locations of the devices that are members of that group should appear as dots on the map.

514

5. Select a device. A pop-up will show the user of the device, and icons for phoning and messaging that user.

515

516

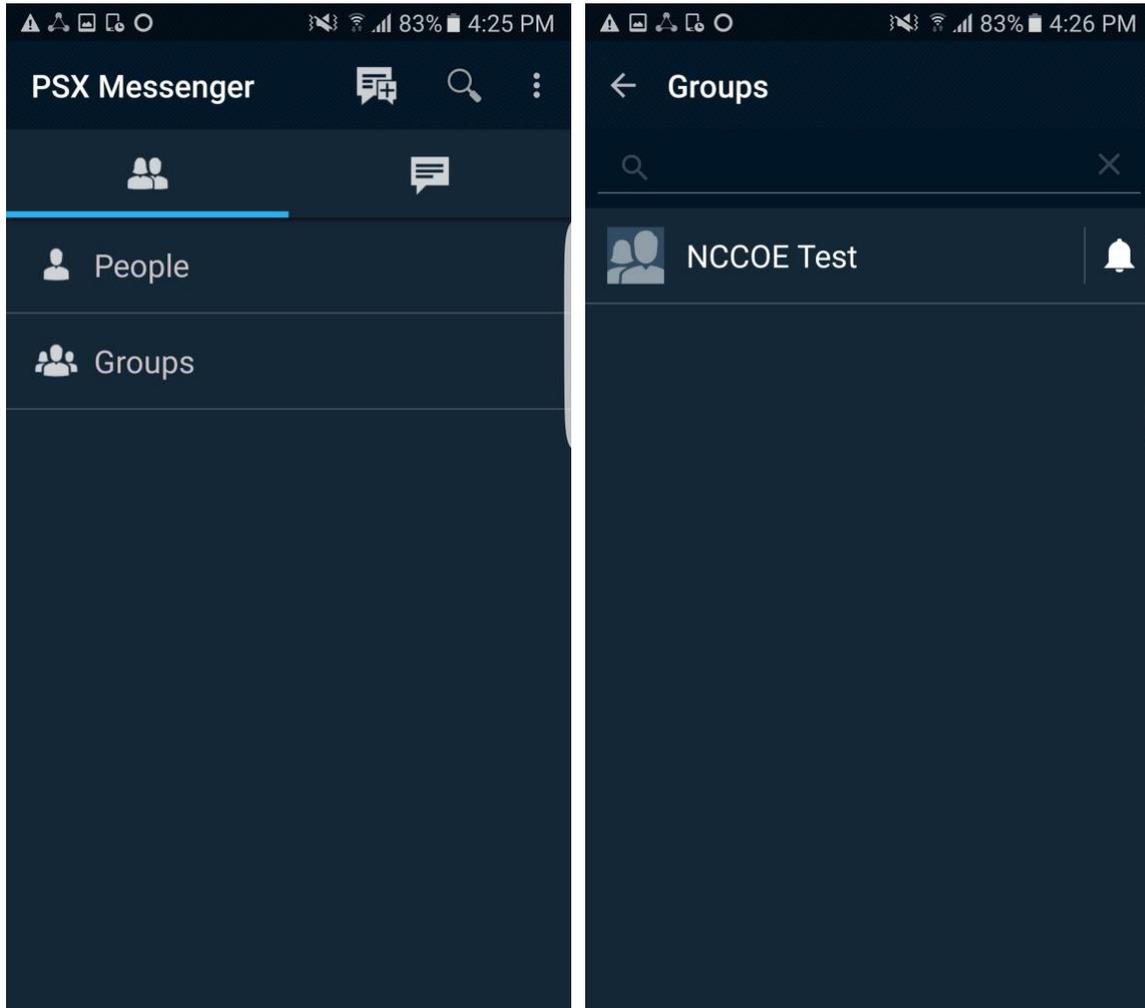
6. Selecting the Messenger icon for the selected user will take you to the Messenger application, where you can send a message to the user.

517

518 **2.2.1.3 Configuring the PSX Messenger Application**

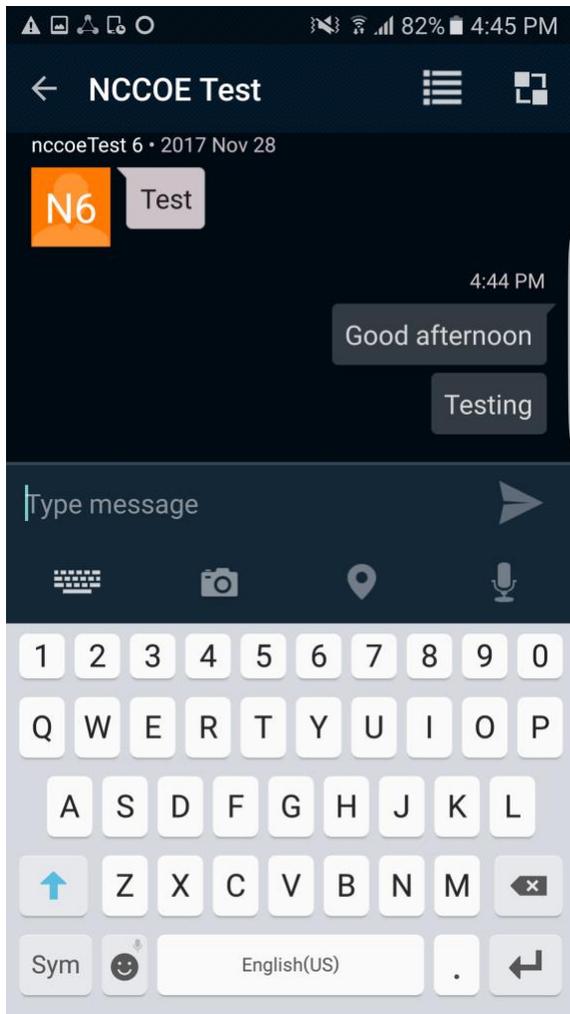
519 1. Open the Messenger application. Your screen should look like Figure 2-13.

520 **Figure 2-13 PSX Messenger User Interface**



- 521
- 522 2. Your screen should show **People** and **Groups**. Select one of them.
- 523 3. A list of people or groups to which you can send a message should appear. Select one of them.
- 524 Your screen should look like Figure 2-14.

525 **Figure 2-14 PSX Messenger Messages**



- 526
- 527 4. You are now viewing the messaging window. You can type text for a message and attach a
- 528 picture, video, voice recording, or map.
- 529 5. Tap the Send icon. The message should appear on your screen.
- 530 6. Tap the Pivot icon in the upper-right corner of the message window. Select Locate, and you will
- 531 be taken to the Mapping application with the location of the people or group you selected.

## 532 2.2.2 How to Install and Configure a FIDO U2F Authenticator

533 This section covers the installation and usage of a FIDO U2F authenticator on an Android mobile device.  
534 As explained in Section 2.1.4, the U2F login flow is not supported on iOS devices. The NCCoE reference  
535 architecture utilizes the Google Authenticator application on the mobile device, and a Yubico YubiKey  
536 NEO as a hardware token. The application provides an interface between the Chrome browser and the  
537 U2F capabilities built into Play Services and is available on Google's Play Store [\[11\]](#).

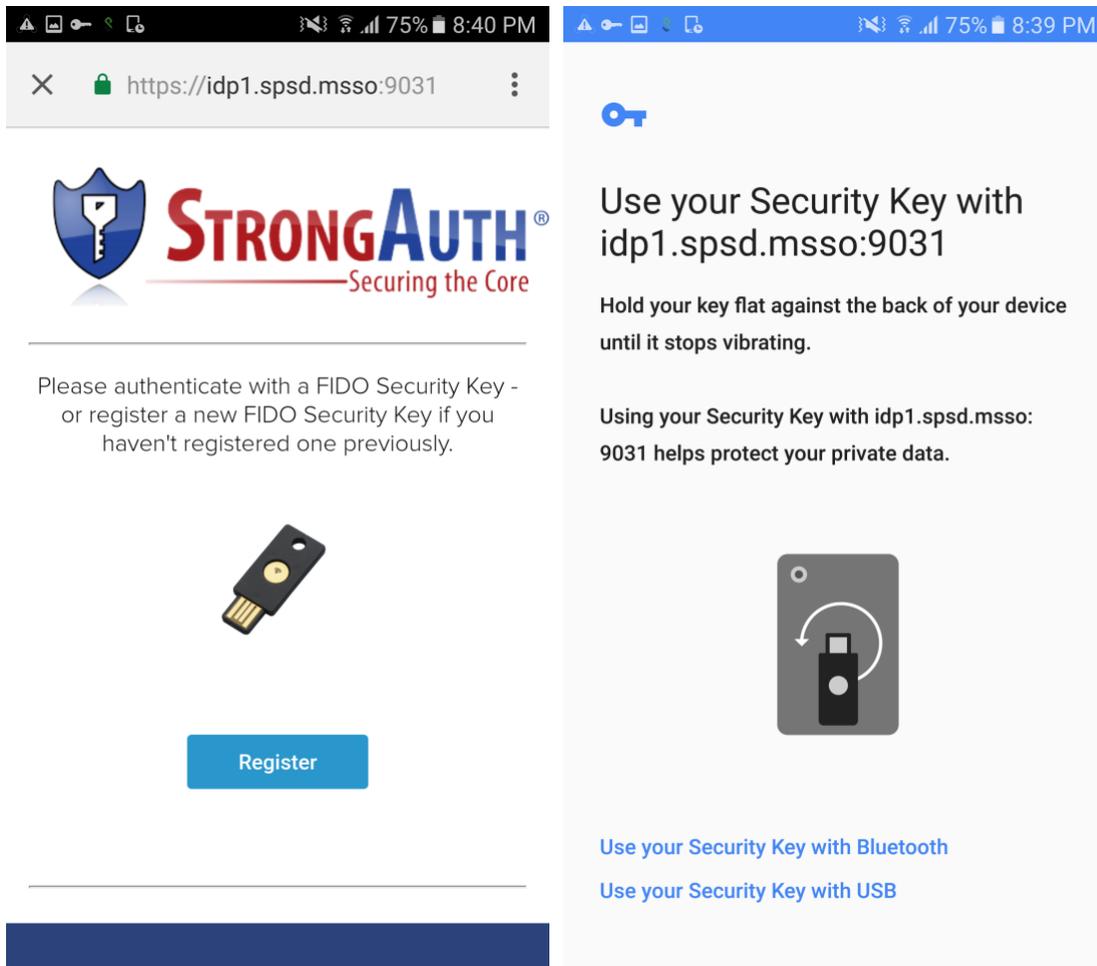
### 538 2.2.2.1 Installing Google Authenticator

- 539 1. On your Android device, open the Play Store application.
- 540 2. Search for Google Authenticator, and install the application. There is no configuration needed  
541 until you are ready to register a FIDO U2F token with a StrongKey server.

### 542 2.2.2.2 Registering the Token

543 In the architecture that is laid out in this practice guide, there is no out-of-band process to register the  
544 user's U2F token. This takes place the first time the user tries to log in with whatever SSO-enabled  
545 application they are using. For instance, when using the PSX Cockpit application, once the user tries to  
546 sign into an IdP that has U2F enabled and has successfully authenticated with a username and  
547 password, they will be presented with the screen shown in Figure 2-15.

548 **Figure 2-15 FIDO U2F Registration**



549  

550 Because the user has never registered a U2F token, that is the only option the user sees.

- 551 1. Click **Register**, and the web page will activate the Google Authenticator application, which asks
- 552 you to use a U2F token to continue (Figure 2-15 above).
- 553 2. Hold the U2F token to your device, and then the token will be registered to your account and
- 554 you will be redirected to the U2F login screen again.

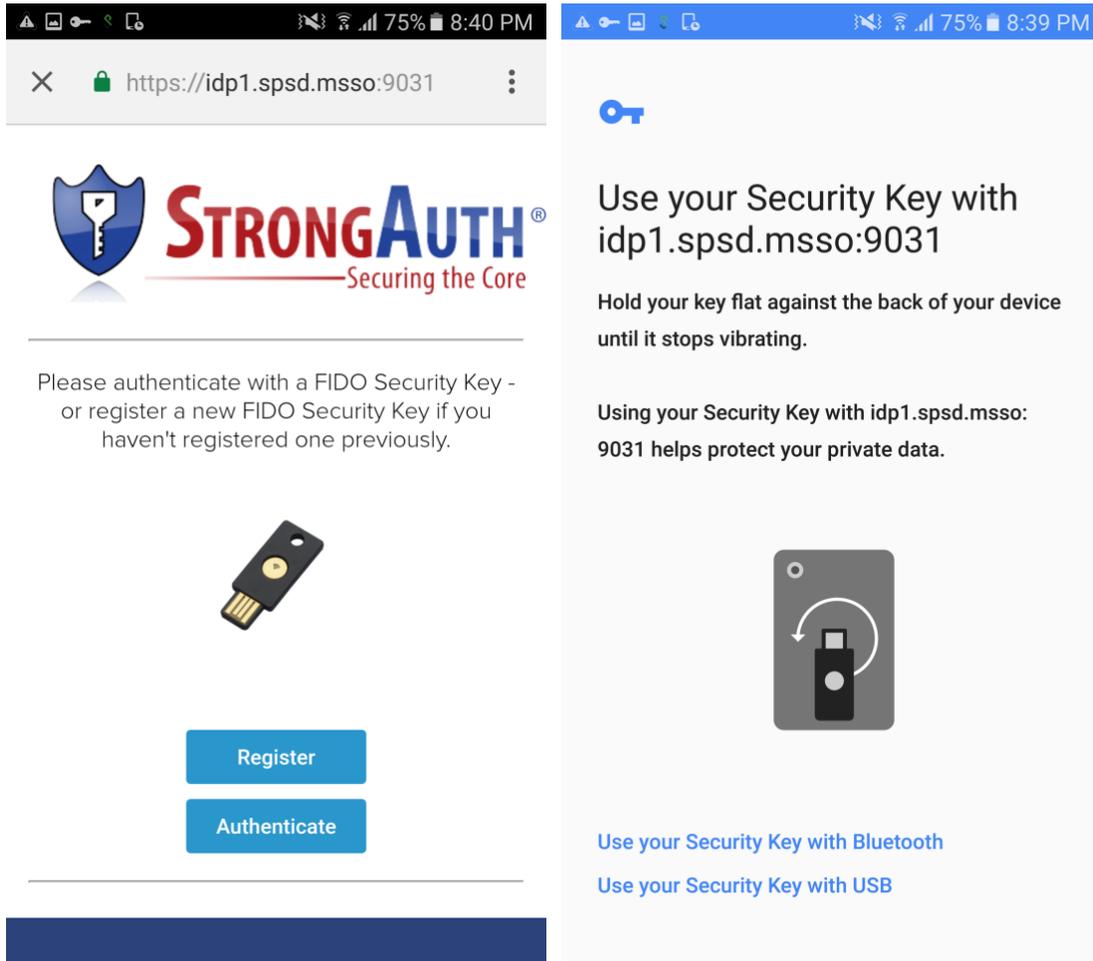
555 **2.2.2.3 Authenticating with the Token**

556 Now, because the system has a U2F token on file for the user, the user has the option to authenticate.

- 557 1. Click **Authenticate** (Figure 2-16), and the Google Authenticator application will be activated
- 558 once more.

- 559 2. Hold the U2F token to your device, and then the authentication will be successful and the SSO  
 560 flow will continue.

561 **Figure 2-16 FIDO U2F Authentication**



562

563 **2.2.3 How to Install and Configure a FIDO UAF Client**

564 This section covers the installation and usage of a FIDO UAF client on the mobile device. Any FIDO UAF  
 565 client can be used, but the NCCoE reference architecture utilizes the Nok Nok Passport application  
 566 (hereafter referred to as "Passport"). The Passport application functions as the client-side UAF  
 567 application and is available on Google's Play Store [16] and Apple's App Store [17]. The following excerpt  
 568 is from the Play Store page:

569 *Passport from Nok Nok Labs is an authentication app that supports the Universal Authentication*  
 570 *Framework (UAF) protocol from the FIDO Alliance ([www.fidoalliance.org](http://www.fidoalliance.org)).*

571 *Passport allows you to use out-of-band authentication to authenticate to selected websites on a*  
572 *laptop or desktop computer. You can use the fingerprint sensor on FIDO UAF-enabled devices*  
573 *(such as the Samsung Galaxy S® 6, Fujitsu Arrows NX, or Sharp Aquos Zeta) or enter a simple PIN*  
574 *on non-FIDO enabled devices. You can enroll your Android device by using Passport to scan a QR*  
575 *code displayed by the website, then touch the fingerprint sensor or enter a PIN. Once enrolled,*  
576 *you can authenticate using a similar method. Alternatively, the website can send a push*  
577 *notification to your Android device and trigger the authentication.*

578 *This solution lets you use your Android device to better protect your online account, without*  
579 *requiring passwords or additional hardware tokens.*

580 In our reference architecture, we use a Quick Response (QR) code to enroll the device onto Nok Nok  
581 Labs' test server.

### 582 *2.2.3.1 Installing Passport on Android*

- 583 1. On your Android device, open the Play Store application.
- 584 2. Search for Nok Nok Passport, and install the application. There is no configuration needed until  
585 you are ready to enroll the device with a Nok Nok Labs server.

586 Normally, the user will never need to open the Passport application during authentication; it will  
587 automatically be invoked by the SSO-enabled application (e.g., PSX Cockpit). Instead of entering a  
588 username and password into a Chrome Custom Tab, the user will be presented with the Passport screen  
589 to use the user's UAF credential.

### 590 *2.2.3.2 Installing Passport on iOS*

- 591 1. On your iOS device, open the App Store application.
- 592 2. Search for Nok Nok Passport, and install the application. There is no configuration needed until  
593 you are ready to enroll the device with a Nok Nok Labs server.

594 As with the Android application, the Passport application for iOS is invoked automatically during login  
595 with a UAF-enabled server.

### 596 *2.2.3.3 Enrolling the Device*

597 This section details the steps to enroll a device to an NNAS. First, you need a device that has Passport  
598 installed. Second, you need to use another computer (preferably a desktop or laptop) to interact with  
599 your NNAS web interface.

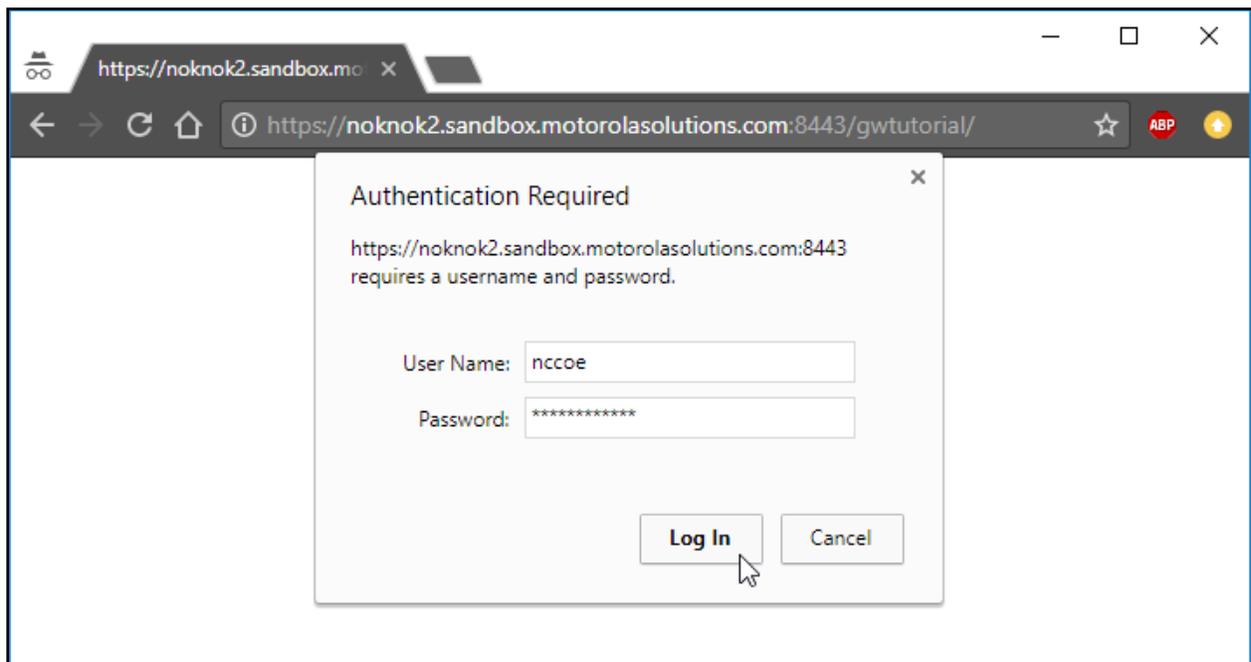
600 *Note: Users are not authenticated during registration. We are using the "tutorial" application provided*  
601 *with the NNAS. This sample implementation does not meet the FIDO requirement of authentication prior*

602 to registration. The production version of the NNAS may require additional steps and may have a  
603 different interface.

604 Screenshots that demonstrate the enrollment process are shown in Figure 2-17 through Figure 2-24.

- 605 1. First, use your computer to navigate to the NNAS web interface. You will be prompted for a  
606 username and password; enter your administrator credentials and click **Log In** (Figure 2-17).

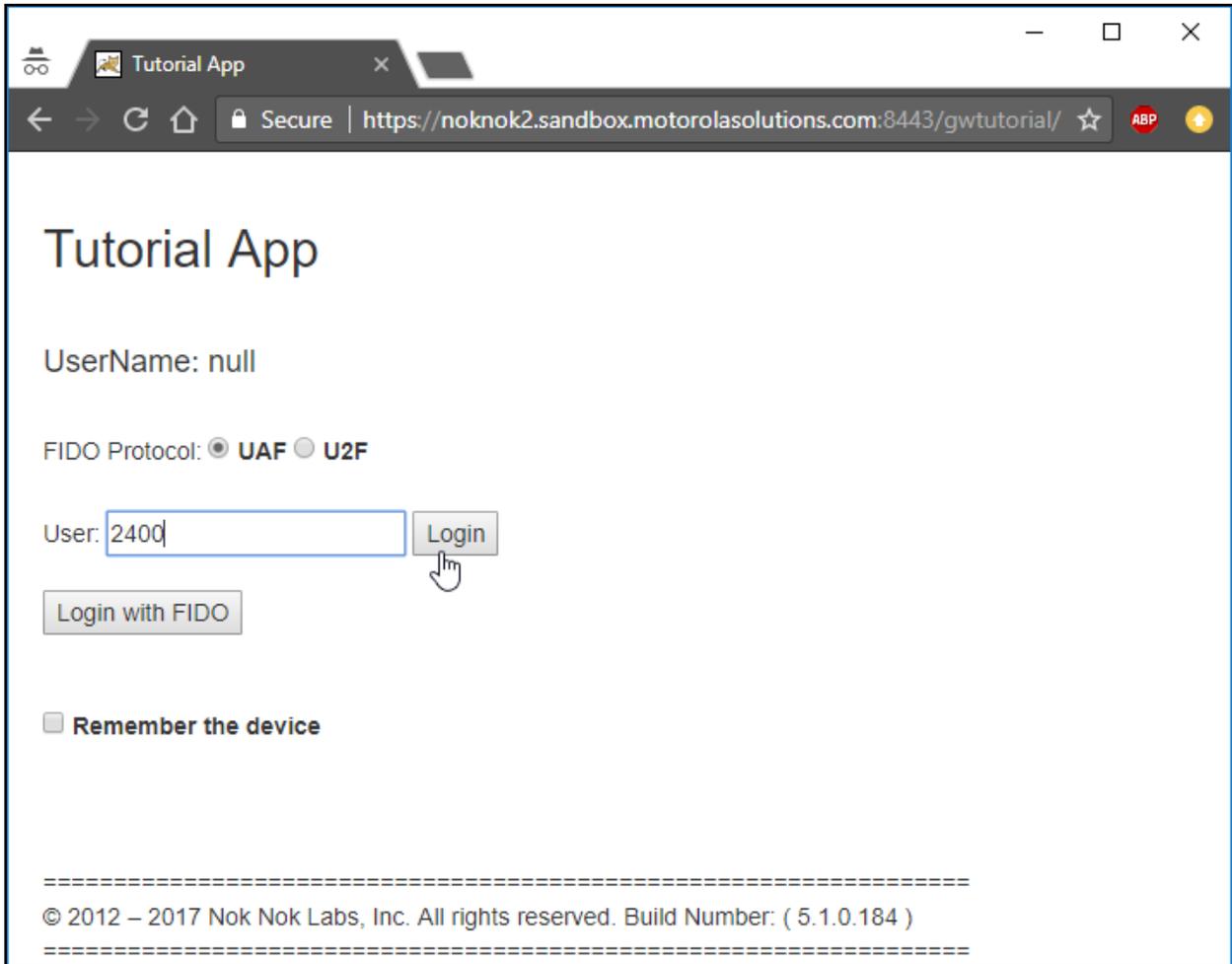
607 **Figure 2-17 Nok Nok Labs Tutorial Application Authentication**



- 608  
609 2. Once you have logged in to the NNAS as an administrator, you need to identify which user you  
610 want to manage. Enter the username and click **Login** (Figure 2-18).

611 *Note: As stated above, this is the tutorial application, so it prompts for only a username, not a*  
612 *password. A production environment would require user authentication.*

613 Figure 2-18 Nok Nok Labs Tutorial Application Login



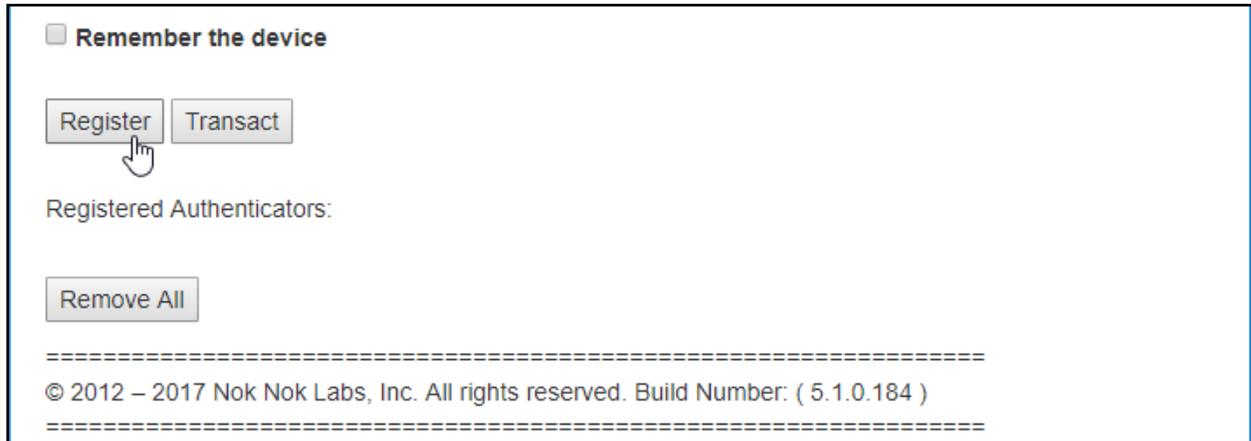
614

615

616

3. Once you have selected the user, you will need to start the FIDO UAF registration process. To begin, click **Register** (Figure 2-19).

617 **Figure 2-19 FIDO UAF Registration Interface**



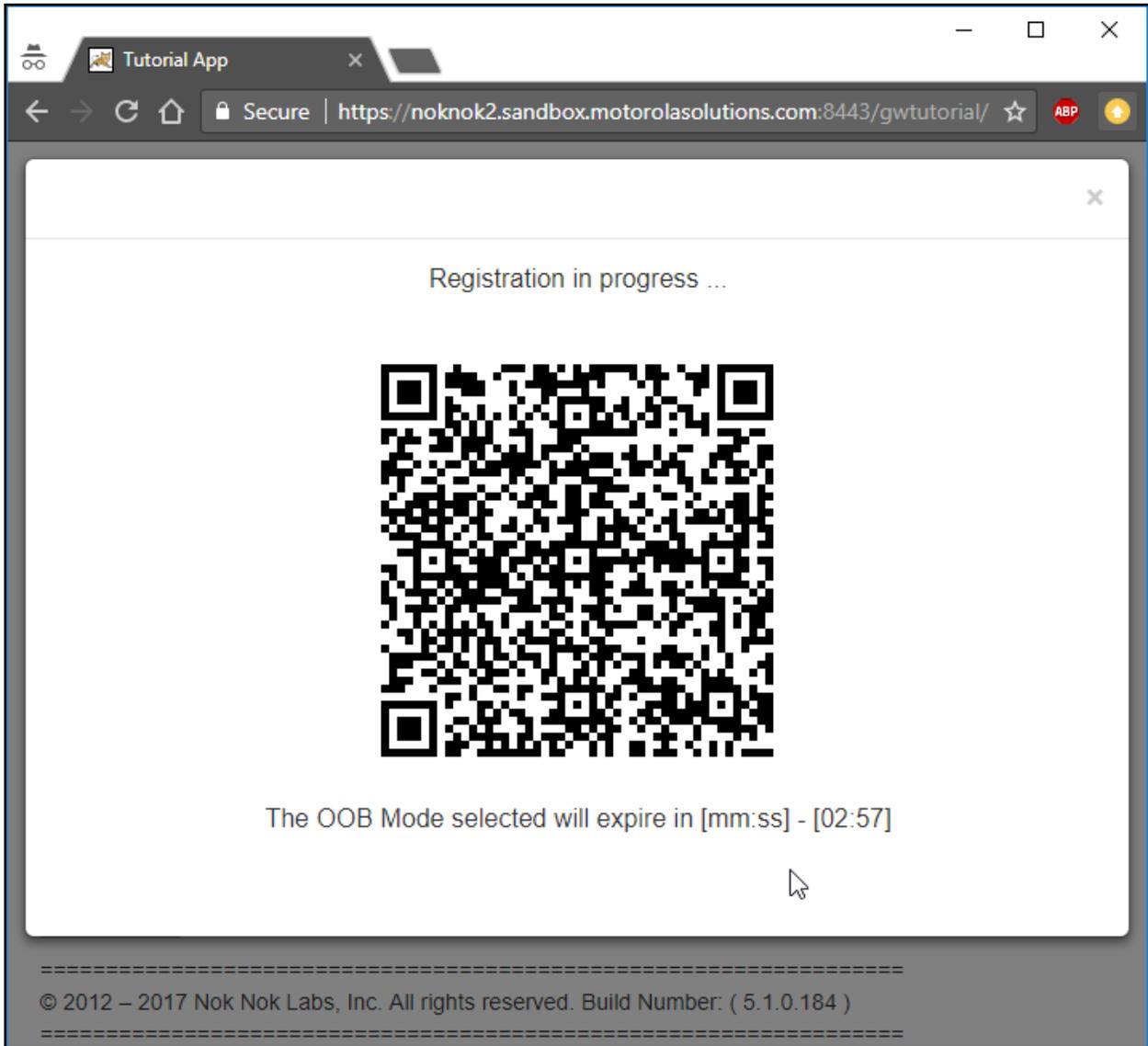
618

619 4. You will see a window with a QR code and a countdown (Figure 2-20). You have three minutes  
620 to finish the registration process with your device.

621 a. Once the QR image appears, launch the Passport application on the phone. The Passport  
622 application activates the device camera to enable capturing the QR code by centering  
623 the code in the square frame in the middle of the screen (Figure 2-21Figure 2-21).

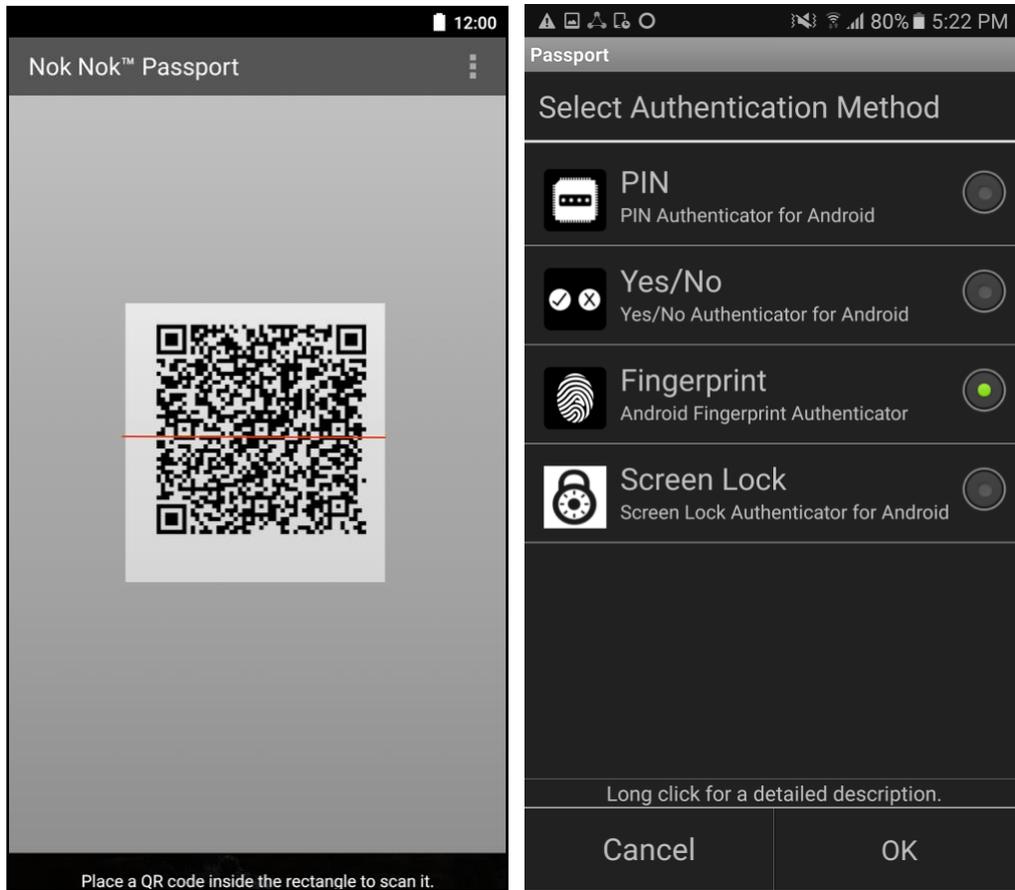
624 b. Once the QR code is scanned, the application prompts the user to select the type of  
625 verification (fingerprint, PIN, etc.) to use (Figure 2-21). The selections may vary based on  
626 the authenticator modules installed on the device. Figure 2-21 shows the Passport  
627 application on an Android device. Figure 2-22 shows the same flow on an iOS device. On  
628 iOS devices that support Face ID, such as the iPhone X, Face ID is available as a user  
629 verification option.

630 Figure 2-20 FIDO UAF Registration QR Code



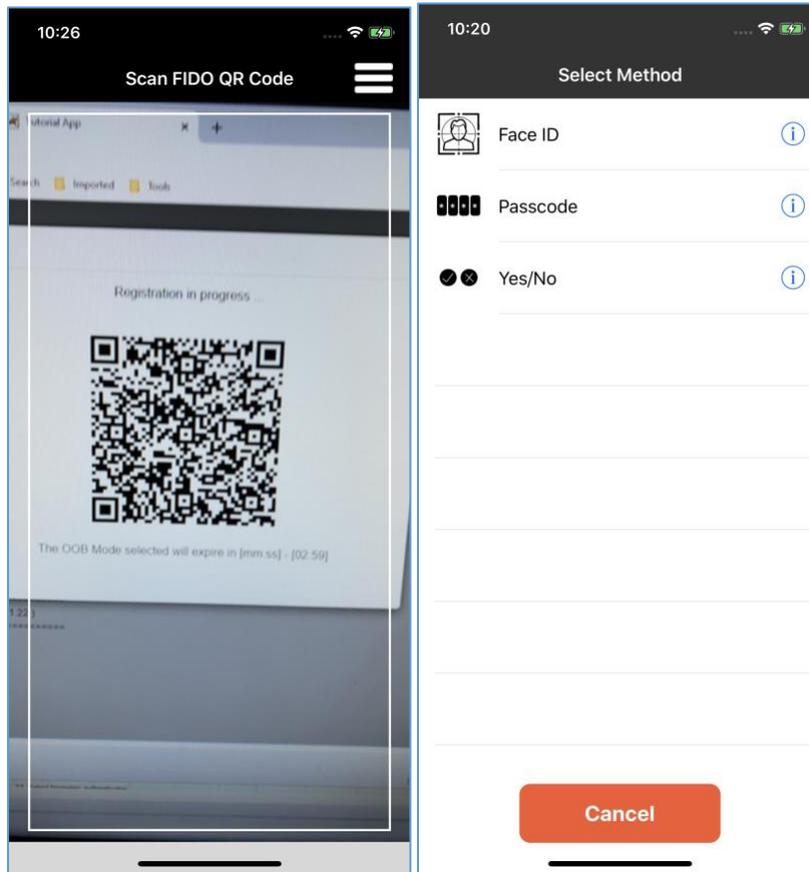
631

632 Figure 2-21 FIDO UAF Registration Device Flow, Android Device



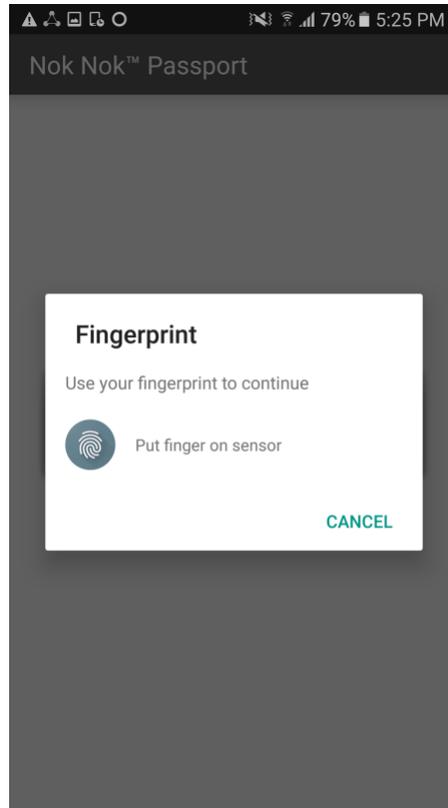
633

634 **Figure 2-22 FIDO UAF Registration Device Flow, iPhone X**



- 635
- 636 5. The user is then prompted to perform user verification with the selected method. In the
- 637 example shown in Figure 2-23, a fingerprint authenticator is registered. The user is prompted for
- 638 a fingerprint scan to complete registration. The fingerprint authenticator uses a fingerprint
- 639 previously registered in the Android screen-lock settings. If a PIN authenticator were registered,
- 640 the user would be prompted to set a PIN instead.

641 **Figure 2-23 FIDO UAF Fingerprint Authenticator, Android Device**



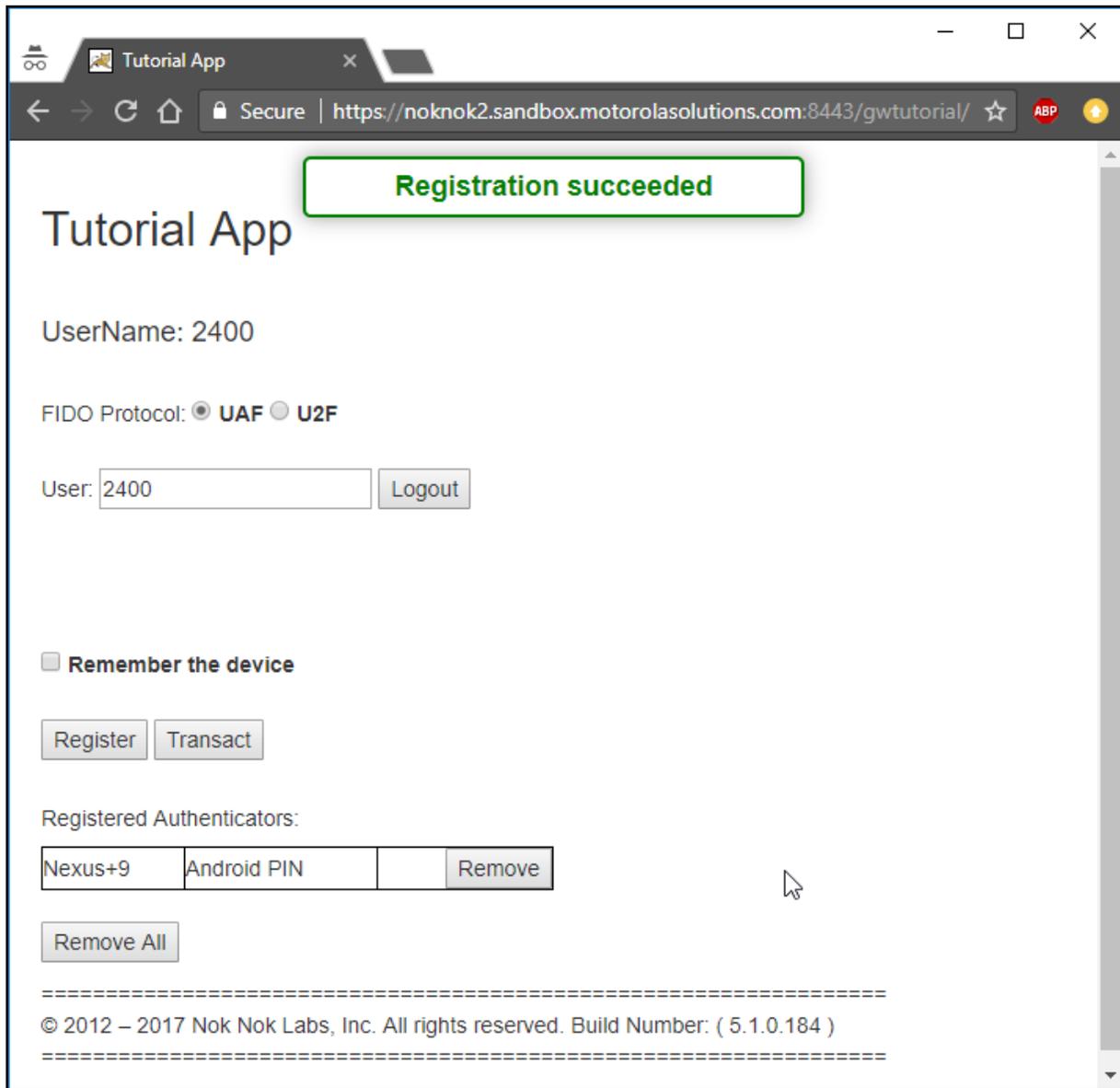
642

643

644

6. If user verification is successful, then a new UAF key pair is generated, the public key is sent to the server, and registration is completed (Figure 2-24).

645 Figure 2-24 FIDO UAF Registration Success



646

### 647 2.3 How Application Developers Must Integrate AppAuth for SSO

648 Application developers can easily integrate AppAuth to add SSO capabilities to their applications. The  
649 first step to doing this is reading through the documentation on GitHub for AppAuth for Android [19] or  
650 iOS [8]. After doing so, an application developer can begin the integration of AppAuth. The degree of  
651 this integration can vary—for instance, you may choose to utilize user attributes to personalize the

652 user's application experience. The following sections describe AppAuth integration for Android and iOS  
653 applications.

654 For either platform, the mobile application must be registered with the OAuth AS and given a client ID as  
655 described in Section 3.3. The client ID will be needed when building the mobile application.

## 656 2.3.1 AppAuth Integration for Android

657 In this example, we use Android Studio 3.0, Android Software Development Kit 25, and Gradle 2.14.1.

### 658 2.3.1.1 Adding the Library Dependency

- 659 1. Edit your application's *build.gradle* file, and add this line to its dependencies (note that the  
660 AppAuth library will most likely be updated in the future, so you should use the most recent  
661 version for your dependency, not necessarily the one in this document):

```
662 =====
663 dependencies {
664     ...
665     compile 'net.openid:appauth:0.7.0'
666 }
667 =====
```

### 668 2.3.1.2 Adding Activities to the Manifest

- 669 1. First, you need to identify your AS's host name, OAuth redirect path, and what scheme was set  
670 when you registered your application. The scheme here is contrived, but it is common practice  
671 to use reverse DNS style names; you should choose whatever aligns with your organization's  
672 common practices. Another alternative to custom schemes is to use App Links.
- 673 2. Edit your *AndroidManifest.xml* file, and add these lines:

```
674 =====
675 <manifest xmlns:android="http://schemas.android.com/apk/res/android"
676     xmlns:tools="http://schemas.android.com/tools"
677     package="com.example.app">
678     ...
679     <activity
680         android:name="net.openid.appauth.RedirectUriReceiverActivity"
681         tools:node="replace">
682         <intent-filter>
```

```

683         <action android:name="android.intent.action.VIEW" />
684         <category android:name="android.intent.category.DEFAULT" />
685         <category android:name="android.intent.category.BROWSABLE" />
686         <data
687             android:host="as.example.com"
688             android:path="/oauth2redirect"
689             android:scheme="myappscheme" />
690     </intent-filter>
691 </activity>
692 <activity android:name=".activity.AuthResultHandlerActivity" />
693 <activity android:name=".activity.AuthCanceledHandlerActivity" />
694 </application>
695 </manifest>
696 =====

```

### 697 *2.3.1.3 Creating Activities to Handle Authorization Responses*

- 698 1. Create a utility class for reusable code (**Utility**), and create activities to handle successful  
699 authorizations (**AuthResultHandlerActivity**) and canceled authorizations  
700 (**AuthCanceledHandlerActivity**):

```

701 =====
702 public class Utility {
703     public static AuthorizationService getAuthorizationService(Context context)
704     {
705         AppAuthConfiguration appAuthConfig = new AppAuthConfiguration.Builder()
706             .setBrowserMatcher(new BrowserWhitelist(
707                 VersionedBrowserMatcher.CHROME_CUSTOM_TAB,
708                 VersionedBrowserMatcher.SAMSUNG_CUSTOM_TAB))
709             // the browser matcher above allows you to choose which in-app
710 browser
711             // tab providers will be supported by your app in its OAuth2 flow
712             .setConnectionBuilder(new ConnectionBuilder() {
713                 @NonNull

```

```
714         public HttpURLConnection openConnection(@NonNull Uri uri)
715             throws IOException {
716             URL url = new URL(uri.toString());
717             HttpURLConnection connection =
718                 (HttpURLConnection) url.openConnection();
719             if (connection instanceof HttpsURLConnection) {
720                 // optional: use your own trust manager to set a custom
721                 // SSLSocketFactory on the HttpsURLConnection
722             }
723             return connection;
724         }
725     }).build();
726
727     return new AuthorizationService(context, appAuthConfig);
728 }
729
730 public static AuthState restoreAuthState(Context context) {
731     // we use SharedPreferences to store a String version of the JSON
732     // Auth State, and here we retrieve it to convert it back to a POJO
733     SharedPreferences sharedPreferences =
734         PreferenceManager.getDefaultSharedPreferences(context);
735     String jsonString = sharedPreferences.getString("AUTHSTATE", null);
736     if (!TextUtils.isEmpty(jsonString)) {
737         try {
738             return AuthState.jsonDeserialize(jsonString);
739         } catch (JSONException jsonException) {
740             // handle this appropriately
741         }
742     }
743     return null;

```

```
744     }
745 }
746 =====
747 public class AuthResultHandlerActivity extends Activity {
748
749     private static final String TAG = AuthResultHandlerActivity.class.getName();
750
751     private AuthState mAuthState;
752     private AuthorizationService mAuthService;
753
754     @Override
755     protected void onCreate(Bundle savedInstanceState) {
756         super.onCreate(savedInstanceState);
757
758         AuthorizationResponse res =
759 AuthorizationResponse.fromIntent(getIntent());
760
761         AuthorizationException ex =
762 AuthorizationException.fromIntent(getIntent());
763
764         mAuthState = new AuthState(res, ex);
765         mAuthService = Utility.getAuthorizationService(this);
766
767         if (res != null) {
768             Log.d(TAG, "Received AuthorizationResponse");
769             performTokenRequest(res.createTokenExchangeRequest());
770         } else {
771             Log.d(TAG, "Authorization failed: " + ex);
772         }
773     }
774
775     @Override
776     protected void onDestroy() {
```

```
775         super.onDestroy();
776         mAuthService.dispose();
777     }
778
779     private void performTokenRequest(TokenRequest request) {
780         TokenResponseCallback callback = new TokenResponseCallback() {
781             @Override
782             public void onTokenRequestCompleted(
783                 TokenResponse tokenResponse,
784                 AuthorizationException authException) {
785                 receivedTokenResponse(tokenResponse, authException);
786             }
787         };
788         mAuthService.performTokenRequest(request, callback);
789     }
790
791     private void receivedTokenResponse(TokenResponse tokenResponse,
792                                       AuthorizationException authException) {
793         Log.d(TAG, "Token request complete");
794         if (tokenResponse != null) {
795             mAuthState.update(tokenResponse, authException);
796
797             // persist auth state to SharedPreferences
798             PreferenceManager.getDefaultSharedPreferences(this)
799                 .edit()
800                 .putString("AUTHSTATE", mAuthState.jsonSerializeString())
801                 .commit();
802
803             String accessToken = mAuthState.getAccessToken();
804             if (accessToken != null) {
```

```

805         // optional: pull claims out of JWT (name, etc.)
806     }
807 } else {
808     Log.d(TAG, " ", authException);
809 }
810 }
811 }
812 =====
813 public class AuthCanceledHandlerActivity extends Activity {
814
815     private static final String TAG =
816     AuthCanceledHandlerActivity.class.getName();
817
818     @Override
819     protected void onCreate(Bundle savedInstanceState) {
820         super.onCreate(savedInstanceState);
821
822         Log.d(TAG, "OpenID Connect authorization flow canceled");
823
824         // go back to MainActivity
825         finish();
826     }
827 }
828 =====

```

#### 829 *2.3.1.4 Executing the OAuth 2 Authorization Flow*

```

830     1. In whatever activity you are using to initiate authentication, add the necessary code to use the
831     AppAuth SDK to execute the OAuth 2 authorization flow:
832     =====
833     ...
834
835     // some method, usually a "login" button, activates the OAuth2 flow
836

```

```

837     String OAUTH_AUTH_ENDPOINT =
838     "https://as.example.com:9031/as/authorization.oauth2";
839     String OAUTH_TOKEN_ENDPOINT = "https://as.example.com:9031/as/token.oauth2";
840     String OAUTH_REDIRECT_URI = "myappscheme://app.example.com/oauth2redirect";
841     String OAUTH_CLIENT_ID = "myapp";
842     String OAUTH_PKCE_CHALLENGE_METHOD = "S256"; // options are "S256" and "plain"
843
844     // CREATE THE SERVICE CONFIGURATION
845     AuthorizationServiceConfiguration config = new
846     AuthorizationServiceConfiguration(
847         Uri.parse(OAUTH_AUTH_ENDPOINT), // auth endpoint
848         Uri.parse(OAUTH_TOKEN_ENDPOINT), // token endpoint
849         null // registration endpoint
850     );
851
852     // OPTIONAL: Add any additional parameters to the authorization request
853     HashMap<String, String> additionalParams = new HashMap<>();
854     additionalParams.put("acr_values", "urn:acr:form");
855
856     // BUILD THE AUTHORIZATION REQUEST
857     AuthorizationRequest.Builder builder = new AuthorizationRequest.Builder(
858         config,
859         OAUTH_CLIENT_ID,
860         ResponseTypeValues.CODE,
861         Uri.parse(OAUTH_REDIRECT_URI))
862         .setScopes("profile") // scope is optional, set whatever is needed by
863         your app
864         .setAdditionalParameters(additionalParams);
865
866     // SET UP PKCE CODE VERIFIER
867     String codeVerifier = CodeVerifierUtil.generateRandomCodeVerifier();
868     String codeVerifierChallenge =
869     CodeVerifierUtil.deriveCodeVerifierChallenge(codeVerifier);
870     builder.setCodeVerifier(codeVerifier, codeVerifierChallenge,
871
872         OAUTH_PKCE_CHALLENGE_METHOD);
873
874     AuthorizationRequest request = builder.build();
875
876     // PERFORM THE AUTHORIZATION REQUEST
877     // this pauses and leaves the current activity
878     Intent postAuthIntent = new Intent(this, AuthResultHandlerActivity.class);
879     Intent authCanceledIntent = new Intent(this,
880     AuthCanceledHandlerActivity.class);
881     mAuthService.performAuthorizationRequest(
882         request,
883         PendingIntent.getActivity(this, request.hashCode(), postAuthIntent, 0),
884         PendingIntent.getActivity(this, request.hashCode(), authCanceledIntent,
885         0));
886     ...
887

```

```

888     // when the activity resumes, check if the OAuth2 flow was successful
889
890     @Override
891     protected void onResume() {
892         super.onResume();
893
894         AuthState authState = Utility.restoreAuthState(this);
895         if (authState != null) {
896             // we are authorized!
897             // proceed to the next activity that requires an access token
898         }
899     }
900
901     ...
902     =====

```

### 903 *2.3.1.5 Fetching and Using the Access Token*

- 904 1. After you have proceeded from the prior activity, you can fetch your access token. If some time  
905 has passed since you obtained the access token, you may need to use your refresh token to get  
906 a new access token. AppAuth handles both cases the same way. Implement the following code  
907 wherever you need to use the access token:

```

908     =====
909     ...
910
911     // assuming we have an instance of a Context as mContext...
912
913     // ensure we have a fresh access token to perform any future actions
914     final AuthorizationService authService =
915     Utility.getAuthorizationService(mContext);
916     AuthState authState = Utility.restoreAuthState(mContext);
917     authState.performActionWithFreshTokens(authService, new
918     AuthState.AuthStateAction() {
919         @Override
920         public void execute(String accessToken, String idToken,
921
922             AuthorizationException ex) {
923             JWT jwt = null;
924             if (ex != null) {
925                 // negotiation for fresh tokens failed, check ex for more details
926             } else {
927                 // we can now use accessToken to access remote services
928
929                 // this is typically done by including the token in an HTTP header,
930
931                 // or in a handshake transaction if another transport protocol is
932             used

```

```

929         }
930         authService.dispose();
931     }
932 });

```

933

934 ...

935 =====

## 936 2.3.2 AppAuth Integration for iOS

937 The iOS demo applications were built with XCode 10.1 for iOS deployment target 11.0. using the Swift  
 938 programming language.

### 939 2.3.2.1 Adding the Library Dependency

940 The AppAuth library can be added to an XCode project by using either the CocoaPods or Carthage  
 941 dependency manager. The CocoaPods method automatically uses the official released version of the  
 942 library. To use a particular code branch or to get recent updates not available in the release version,  
 943 Carthage must be used. The official release should be suitable for the majority of applications.

944 To add the AppAuth library by using CocoaPods:

- 945 1. Create a Podfile in the root directory of the project. The following is a sample Podfile from the  
 946 maps-demo application that adds AppAuth and two other libraries.

```

947 =====
948 source 'https://github.com/CocoaPods/Specs.git'
949 target 'map-demo-app-ios' do
950     pod 'GoogleMaps'
951     pod 'GooglePlaces'
952     pod 'AppAuth'
953 end
954 =====

```

- 955 2. Open a terminal and navigate to the root directory of the project and run the command:

```
956 pod install
```

- 957 3. In XCode, close any open projects. Click File–Open, navigate to the root of the project, and open  
 958 the file <project-name>.xcworkspace.

959 To add the AppAuth library by using Carthage:

- 960 1. Create a Cartfile with the following contents in the root directory of the project:

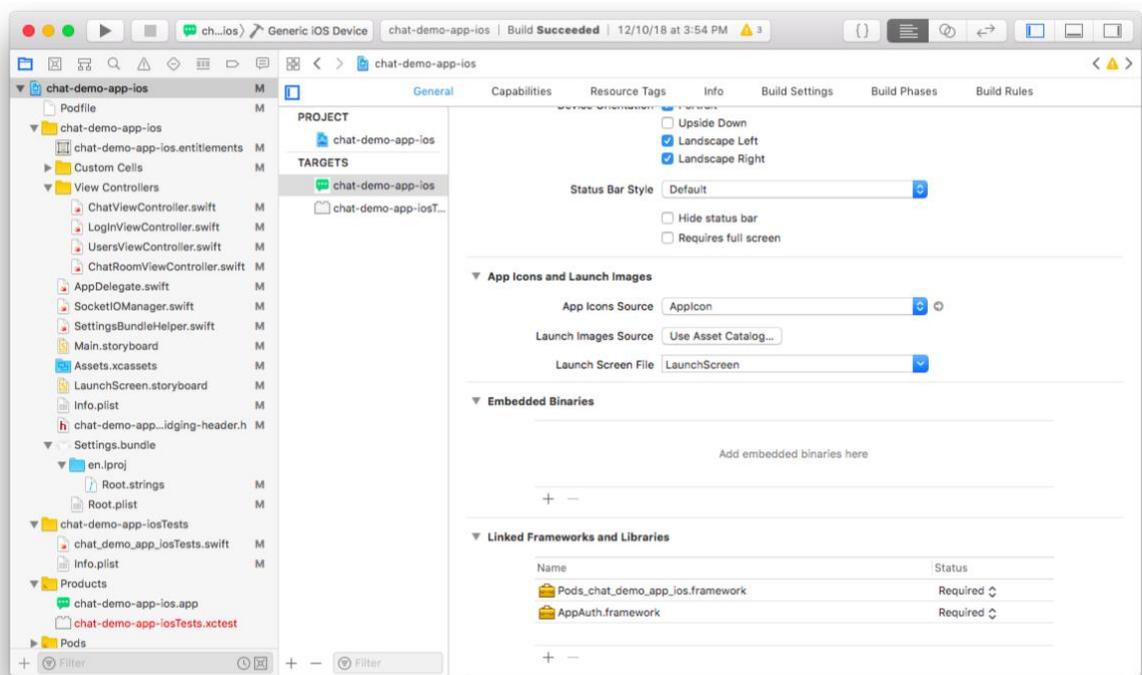
```

961 =====
962 github "openid/AppAuth-iOS" "master"
963 =====

```

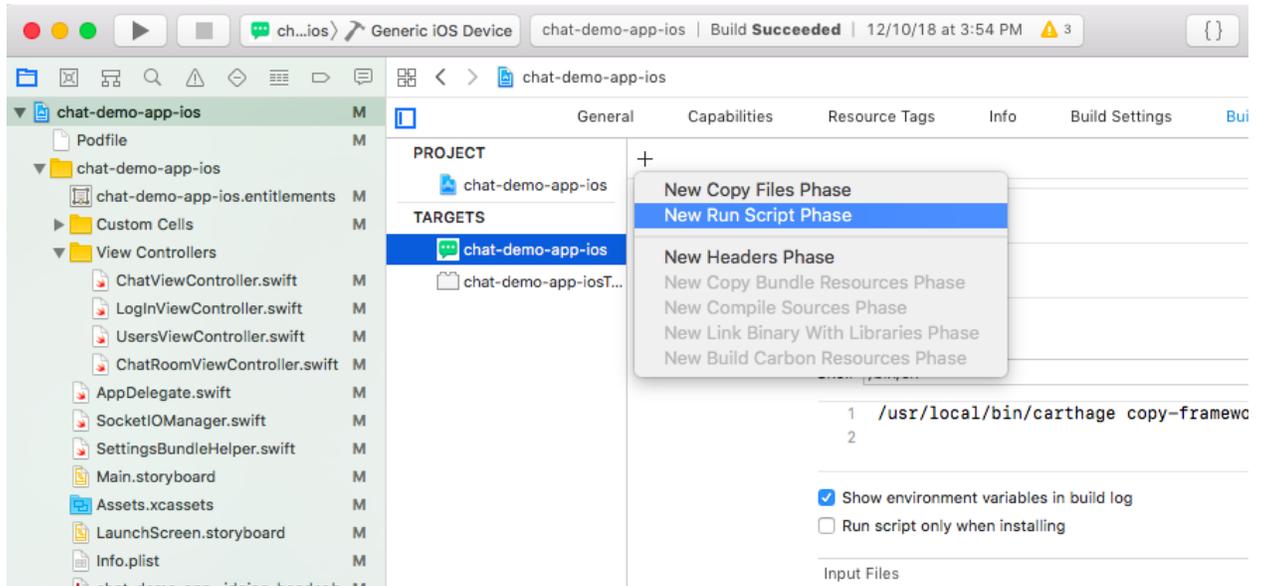
- 964 2. Open a terminal and navigate to the root directory of the project and run the command:
- 965 `carthage bootstrap`
- 966 3. In XCode, click on the project in the project navigator and select the General tab. Under Linked
- 967 Frameworks and Libraries, click the plus icon to add a framework.
- 968 4. Click Add Other.... A file selection dialogue should open and display the root folder of the
- 969 project. Navigate to the Carthage/Build/iOS subfolder, select AppAuth.framework, and click
- 970 Open. The Frameworks and Libraries interface is shown in Figure 2-25.

971 **Figure 2-25 Linked Frameworks and Libraries**



- 972
- 973 5. On the Build Phases tab, click the plus icon in the top left corner of the editor and select New
- 974 Run Script Phase as shown in Figure 2-26.

975 **Figure 2-26 Creating a New Run Script Phase**



976

977 6. Add the following command to the Run Script:

978

```
/usr/local/bin/carthage copy-frameworks
```

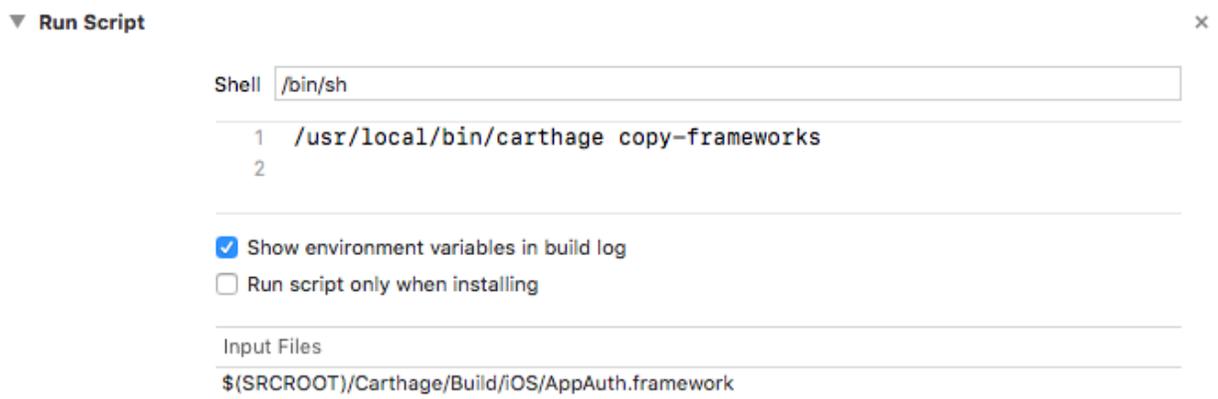
979 7. Click the plus icon under Input Files and add the following entry:

980

```
$(SRCROOT)/Carthage/Build/iOS/AppAuth.framework
```

981 Figure 2-27 shows a completed Run Script.

982 **Figure 2-27 Carthage Run Script**



983

984 Once either of the above procedures is completed, you should be able to import AppAuth into your  
985 project without compiler errors.

### 986 *2.3.2.2 Registering a Custom URL Scheme*

987 To enable the AS to send a redirect through the browser back to your mobile application, you must  
988 either register a custom URL scheme or use Universal Links. This example shows the use of a custom URL  
989 scheme. This scheme must be included in the `redirect_uri` registered with the AS; see Section 3.3 for  
990 details on OAuth client registration. To configure the custom URL scheme:

- 991 1. In the XCode Project Navigator, select the Info.plist file.
- 992 2. Select "URL Types" and click the Plus icon to add a type.
- 993 3. Under the created item, click on the selector icon and choose "URL Schemes."
- 994 4. Edit the item value to match the URL scheme. Figure 2-28 shows a custom URL scheme of  
995 "org.mitre.chatdemo."

996 Figure 2-28 Custom URL Scheme

The screenshot shows the Xcode interface with the Info.plist file open for 'chat-demo-app-ios'. The 'URL Schemes' section is expanded, showing a single scheme 'org.mitre.chatdemo' with a bundle version of '1'. Other properties like 'Bundle display name' and 'Bundle identifier' are also visible.

Key	Type	Value
Information Property List	Dictionary	(18 items)
Localization native development re...	String	\$(DEVELOPMENT_LANGUAGE)
Bundle display name	String	chat-demo
Executable file	String	\$(EXECUTABLE_NAME)
Bundle identifier	String	\$(PRODUCT_BUNDLE_IDENTIFIER)
InfoDictionary version	String	6.0
Bundle name	String	\$(PRODUCT_NAME)
Bundle OS Type code	String	APPL
Bundle versions string, short	String	1.0
URL types	Array	(1 item)
Item 0 (Editor)	Dictionary	(2 items)
Document Role	String	Editor
URL Schemes	Array	(1 item)
Item 0	String	org.mitre.chatdemo
Bundle version	String	1
LSApplicationQueriesSchemes	Array	(3 items)
Application requires iPhone enviro...	Boolean	YES
App Transport Security Settings	Dictionary	(1 item)
Launch screen interface file base...	String	LaunchScreen
Main storyboard file base name	String	Main
Required device capabilities	Array	(1 item)
Supported interface orientations	Array	(3 items)
Supported interface orientations (i...	Array	(4 items)

997

998 *2.3.2.3 Handling Authorization Responses*

999 Add the following lines to AppDelegate.swift to handle authorization responses submitted to your  
1000 application's redirect\_uri:

```

1001 =====
1002 var currentAuthorizationFlow:OIDAuthorizationFlowSession?
1003 func application(_ app: UIApplication, open url: URL, options:
1004 [UIApplicationOpenURLOptionsKey : Any] = [:]) -> Bool {
1005     if let authorizationFlow = self.currentAuthorizationFlow,
1006         authorizationFlow.resumeAuthorizationFlow(with: url) {
1007         self.currentAuthorizationFlow = nil
1008         return true
1009     }
1010     return false
1011 }
    
```

1012 =====

### 1013 *2.3.2.4 Executing the OAuth 2 Authorization Flow*

1014 In the View Controller that handles authentication events, add the necessary code to use AppAuth to  
 1015 submit authorization requests to the AS. The configuration parameters for the AS, such as the URLs for  
 1016 the authorization and token endpoints, can be automatically discovered if the AS supports OpenID  
 1017 Connect Discovery; otherwise these parameters must be provided either in settings or in the code. In  
 1018 this example, they are specified in the code. This example also demonstrates how to specify the user-  
 1019 agent for the authorization flow; in this case, Safari will be used.

```

1020 =====
1021 class LogInViewController: UIViewController, OIDAuthStateChangeDelegate,
1022 OIDAuthStateErrorDelegate {
1023     let kAppAuthExampleAuthStateKey = authState";
1024     ...
1025     ...
1026     ...
1027     func authenticateUsingLab() {
1028         var configuration: OIDSERVICEConfiguration =
1029 OIDSERVICEConfiguration(authorizationEndpoint: URL(string:
1030 "https://as1.cpssp.msso:9031/as/authorization.oauth2"), tokenEndpoint: URL(string:
1031 "https://as1.cpssp.msso:9031/as/token.oauth2")!)
1032
1033         guard let redirectURI = URL(string:
1034 "org.mitre.chatdemo:/msso.nccoe.nist/oauth2redirect") else {
1035             print("Error creating URL for :
1036 org.mitre.chatdemo:/msso.nccoe.nist/oauth2redirect")
1037             return
1038         }
1039
1040         guard let appDelegate = UIApplication.shared.delegate as? AppDelegate else {
1041             print("Error accessing AppDelegate")
1042             return
1043         }
1044
1045         // builds authentication request
1046         let request = OIDAAuthorizationRequest(configuration: configuration,
1047                                             clientId: "chatdemo",
1048                                             clientSecret: nil,
1049                                             scopes: ["testScope"],
1050                                             redirectURL: redirectURI,
1051                                             responseType: OIDResponseTypeCode,
1052                                             additionalParameters: nil)
1053
1054         print("Initiating authorization request with scope: \(request.scope ??
1055 "DEFAULT_SCOPE")")
1056
1057         doAuthWithAutoCodeExchange(configuration: configuration, request: request,
1058 appDelegate: appDelegate)

```

```

1059     }
1060
1061     func doAuthWithAutoCodeExchange(configuration: OIDServiceConfiguration, request:
1062     OIDAAuthorizationRequest, appDelegate: AppDelegate) {
1063
1064         let coordinator: OIDAAuthorizationUICoordinatorCustomBrowser =
1065     OIDAAuthorizationUICoordinatorCustomBrowser.customBrowserSafari()
1066
1067         appDelegate.currentAuthorizationFlow = OIDAAuthState.authState(byPresenting:
1068     request, uiCoordinator: coordinator) { authState, error in
1069             if let authState = authState {
1070                 self.assignAuthState(authState: authState)
1071                 self segueToChat()
1072             } else {
1073                 print("Authorization error: \(error?.localizedDescription ??
1074     \"DEFAULT_ERROR\")")
1075                 self.assignAuthState(authState: nil)
1076             }
1077         }
1078     func saveState(){
1079         // for production usage consider using the OS Keychain instead
1080         if authState != nil{
1081             let archivedAuthState = NSKeyedArchiver.archivedData(withRootObject:
1082     authState!)
1083             UserDefaults.standard.set(archivedAuthState, forKey:
1084     kAppAuthExampleAuthStateKey)
1085         }
1086         else{
1087             UserDefaults.standard.set(nil, forKey: kAppAuthExampleAuthStateKey)
1088         }
1089         UserDefaults.standard.synchronize()
1090     }
1091
1092     func loadState(){
1093         // loads OIDAAuthState from NSUserDefaults
1094         guard let archivedAuthState = UserDefaults.standard.object(forKey:
1095     kAppAuthExampleAuthStateKey) as? NSData else{
1096             return
1097         }
1098         guard let authState = NSKeyedUnarchiver.unarchiveObject(with: archivedAuthState
1099     as Data) as? OIDAAuthState else{
1100             return
1101         }
1102         assignAuthState(authState: authState)
1103     }
1104
1105     func assignAuthState(authState:OIDAuthState?){
1106         if (self.authState == authState) {
1107             return;
1108         }
1109         self.authState = authState
1110         self.authState?.stateChangeDelegate = self

```

```

1111         self.saveState()
1112     }
1113
1114     func didChange(_ state: OIDAuthState) {
1115         authState = state
1116         authState?.stateChangeDelegate = self
1117         self.saveState()
1118     }
1119
1120     func authState(_ state: OIDAuthState, didEncounterAuthorizationError error: Error)
1121     {
1122         print("Received authorization error: \(error)")
1123     }
1124 }
1125 =====

```

### 1126 *2.3.2.5 Fetching and Using the Access Token*

1127 The access token can be retrieved from the authState object. If the access token has expired, the  
1128 application may need to use a refresh token to obtain a new access token or initiate a new authorization  
1129 request if it does not have an active refresh token. Access tokens are typically used in accordance with  
1130 RFC 6750 [\[20\]](#), most commonly in the Authorization header of a Hypertext Transfer Protocol (HTTP)  
1131 request to an API server. The following example shows a simple usage of an access token to call an API:

```

1132 =====
1133 public func requestChatRooms() {
1134     let urlString = "\(protocolIdentifier)://\(ipAddress):\(port)/getChatRooms"
1135     print("URLString \(urlString)")
1136     guard let url = URL(string: urlString) else { return }
1137     let token: String? = self.authState?.lastTokenResponse?.accessToken
1138     var request = URLRequest(url: url)
1139     request.httpMethod = "GET"
1140     request.setValue("Bearer \(token)", forHTTPHeaderField: "Authorization")
1141     URLSession.shared.dataTask(with: request) { (data, response, error) in
1142         if error != nil {
1143             print(error!.localizedDescription)
1144         }
1145         else {
1146             guard let data = data else { return }
1147             let json = try? JSONSerialization.jsonObject(with: data, options: [])
1148
1149             if let array = json as? [Any] {
1150                 if let firstObject = array.first {
1151                     if let dictionary = firstObject as? [String: String] {
1152                         self.chatRooms = dictionary
1153                         self.loadRooms()
1154                     }
1155                 }
1156             }
1157         }
1158     }.resume()

```

1159 }  
 1160 =====

1161 OAuth also provides a convenience function, `performActionWithFreshTokens`, which will  
 1162 automatically handle token refresh if the current access token has expired.

## 1163 **3 How to Install and Configure the OAuth 2 AS**

### 1164 **3.1 Platform and System Requirements**

1165 Ping Identity is used as the AS for this build. The AS issues access tokens to the client after successfully  
 1166 authenticating the resource owner and obtaining authorization as specified in RFC 6749, The OAuth  
 1167 Authorization Framework [21].

1168 The requirements for Ping Identity can be categorized into three groups: software, hardware, and  
 1169 network.

#### 1170 **3.1.1 Software Requirements**

1171 The software requirements are as follows:

- 1172     ▪ OS: Microsoft Windows Server, Oracle Enterprise Linux, Oracle Solaris, Red Hat Enterprise, SUSE  
 1173         Linux Enterprise
- 1174     ▪ Virtual systems: VMware, Xen, Windows Hyper-V
- 1175     ▪ Java environment: Oracle Java Standard Edition
- 1176     ▪ Data integration: Ping Directory, Microsoft Active Directory (AD), Oracle Directory Server,  
 1177         Microsoft Structured Query Language (SQL) Server, Oracle Database, Oracle MySQL 5.7,  
 1178         PostgreSQL

#### 1179 **3.1.2 Hardware Requirements**

1180 The minimum hardware requirements are as follows:

- 1181     ▪ Intel Pentium 4, 1.8-gigahertz (GHz) processor
- 1182     ▪ 1 gigabyte (GB) of Random Access Memory (RAM)
- 1183     ▪ 1 GB of available hard drive space

1184 A detailed discussion on this topic and additional information can be found at  
 1185 [https://documentation.pingidentity.com/pingfederate/pf82/index.shtml#gettingStartedGuide/concept/  
 1186 systemRequirements.html](https://documentation.pingidentity.com/pingfederate/pf82/index.shtml#gettingStartedGuide/concept/systemRequirements.html).

### 1187 3.1.3 Network Requirements

1188 Ping Identity identifies several ports to be open for different purposes. These purposes can include  
1189 communication with the administrative console, runtime engine, cluster engine, and Kerberos engine.

1190 A detailed discussion on each port can be found at

1191 [https://documentation.pingidentity.com/pingfederate/pf84/index.shtml#gettingStartedGuide/pf\\_t\\_inst](https://documentation.pingidentity.com/pingfederate/pf84/index.shtml#gettingStartedGuide/pf_t_inst)  
1192 [allPingFederateRedHatEnterpriseLinux.html](https://documentation.pingidentity.com/pingfederate/pf84/index.shtml#gettingStartedGuide/pf_t_inst).

1193 In this implementation, we needed ports to be opened to communicate with the administrative console  
1194 and the runtime engine.

1195 For this experimentation, we have used the configuration identified in the following subsections.

#### 1196 3.1.3.1 Software Configuration

1197 The software configuration is as follows:

- 1198     ▪ OS: CentOS Linux Release 7.3.1611 (Core)
- 1199     ▪ Virtual systems: Vmware ESXI 6.5
- 1200     ▪ Java environment: OpenJDK Version 1.8.0\_131
- 1201     ▪ Data integration: AD

#### 1202 3.1.3.2 Hardware Configuration

1203 The hardware configuration is as follows:

- 1204     ▪ Processor: Intel(R) Xeon(R) central processing unit (CPU) E5-2420 0 at 1.90 GHz
- 1205     ▪ Memory: 2 GB
- 1206     ▪ Hard drive: 25 GB

#### 1207 3.1.3.3 Network Configuration

1208 The network configuration is as follows:

- 1209     ▪ 9031: This port allows access to the runtime engine; this port must be accessible to client  
1210        devices and federation partners.
- 1211     ▪ 9999: This port allows the traffic to the administrative console; only PingFederate administrators  
1212        need access.

## 1213 3.2 How to Install the OAuth 2 AS

1214 Before the installation of Ping Identity AS, the prerequisites identified in the following subsections need  
1215 to be fulfilled.

### 1216 3.2.1 Java Installation

1217 Java 8 can be installed in several ways on CentOS 7 using *yum*. Yum is a package manager on the  
1218 CentOS 7 platform that automates software processes, such as installation, upgrade, and removal, in a  
1219 consistent way.

- 1220 1. Download the Java Development Kit (JDK) in the appropriate format for your environment, from  
1221 Oracle's website; for CentOS, the Red Hat Package Manager (RPM) download can be used:  
1222 <http://www.oracle.com/technetwork/java/javase/downloads/jdk8-downloads-2133151.html>.
- 1223 2. As root, install the RPM by using the following command, substituting the actual version of the  
1224 downloaded file:  
1225 

```
rpm -ivh jdk-8u151-linux-x64.rpm
```
- 1226 3. Alternatively, the JDK can be downloaded in *.tar.gz* format and unzipped in the appropriate  
1227 location (i.e., */usr/share* on CentOS 7).

### 1228 3.2.2 Java Post Installation

1229 The `alternatives` command maintains symbolic links determining default commands. This command  
1230 can be used to select the default Java command. This is helpful even in cases where there are multiple  
1231 installations of Java on the system.

- 1232 1. Use the following command to select the default Java command:

1233 

```
alternatives --config java
```

1234 There are three programs that provide "java."

```
1235      Selection    Command
1236      -----
1237      1            /usr/java/jre1.8.0_111/bin/java
1238      ** 2         java-1.8.0-openjdk.x86_64 (/usr/lib/jvm/java-1.8.0-openjdk-
1239      1.8.0.131-3.b12.e17_3.x86_64/jre/bin/java)
1240      3            /usr/java/jdk1.8.0_131/jre/bin/java
```

1241 Enter to keep the current selection[+], or type selection number:

1242 This presents the user with a configuration menu for choosing a Java instance. Once a selection  
1243 is made, the link becomes the default command system wide.

- 1244 2. To make Java available to all users, the JAVA\_HOME environment variable was set by using the  
1245 following command:

1246 `echo export JAVA_HOME="/usr/java/latest" > /etc/profile.d/javaenv.sh`

- 1247 3. For cryptographic functions, download the *Java Cryptography Extension (JCE) Unlimited Strength*  
1248 *Jurisdiction Policy Files 8* from  
1249 <http://www.oracle.com/technetwork/java/javase/downloads/jce8-download-2133166.html>.

- 1250 4. Decompress and extract the downloaded file. The installation procedure is described in the  
1251 Readme document. In the lab, *local\_policy.jar* was extracted to the default location, `<java-`  
1252 `home>/lib/security.Network Configuration`.

- 1253 5. Check if the firewall is running or not by using the command below. If it is up, it will return a  
1254 status that shows it is running:

1255 `firewall-cmd --state`

- 1256 a. If it is not running, activate the firewall by using the following command:

1257 `sudo systemctl start firewalld.service`

- 1258 6. Check if the required ports, 9031 and 9999, are open by using the following command:

1259 `firewall-cmd --list-ports`

- 1260 a. This command will return the following values:

1261 `6031/tcp 9999/udp 9031/tcp 6031/udp 9998/udp 9031/udp 9999/tcp 9998/tcp`  
1262 `8080/tcp`

1263 From the returned ports, we can determine which ports and protocols are open.

- 1264 b. In case the required ports are not open, issue the command below. It should return  
1265 `success`.

1266 `firewall-cmd --zone=public --permanent --add-port=9031/tcp`

1267 `success`

- 1268 7. Reload the firewall by using the following command to make the rule change take effect:

1269 `firewall-cmd --reload`

1270 `Success`

- 1271 a. Now, when the open ports are listed, the required ports should show up:

1272 `firewall-cmd --zone=public --list-ports`

1273 `6031/tcp 9999/udp 9031/tcp 6031/udp 9998/udp 9031/udp 9999/tcp 9998/tcp`  
1274 `8080/tcp 5000/tcp`

### 1275 3.2.3 PingFederate Installation

1276 Ping installation documentation is available at

1277 [https://docs.pingidentity.com/bundle/pf\\_sm\\_installPingFederate\\_pf82/page/pf\\_t\\_installPingFederateRedHatEnterpriseLinux.html?#](https://docs.pingidentity.com/bundle/pf_sm_installPingFederate_pf82/page/pf_t_installPingFederateRedHatEnterpriseLinux.html?#).

1279 Some important points are listed below:

- 1280     ▪ Obtain a Ping Identity license. It can be acquired from
- 1281         <https://www.pingidentity.com/en/account/sign-on.html>.
- 1282     ▪ For this experiment, installation was done using the zip file. Installation was done at */usr/share*.
- 1283     ▪ The license was updated.
- 1284     ▪ The PingFederate service can be configured as a service that automatically starts at system boot. PingFederate provides instructions for doing this on different OSs. In the lab, the Linux
- 1285         instructions at the link provided below were used. Note that, while the instructions were written
- 1286         for an *init.d*-based system, these instructions will also work on a systemd-based system.
- 1287         [https://docs.pingidentity.com/bundle/pf\\_sm\\_installPingFederate\\_pf82/page/pf\\_t\\_installPingFederateServiceLinuxManually.html?#](https://docs.pingidentity.com/bundle/pf_sm_installPingFederate_pf82/page/pf_t_installPingFederateServiceLinuxManually.html?#)

1290 The following configuration procedures are completed in the PingFederate administrative console,

1291 which is available at <https://<ping-server-hostname>:9999/pingfederate/app>.

### 1292 3.2.4 Certificate Installation

1293 During installation, PingFederate generates a self-signed TLS certificate, which is not trusted by desktop

1294 or mobile device browsers. A certificate should be obtained from a trusted internal or external CA and

1295 should be installed on the PingFederate server. The private key and signed certificate can be uploaded

1296 and activated for use on the run-time server port and the admin port by navigating to **Server Settings** in

1297 the console and clicking on **SSL Server Certificates**.

1298 In addition, most server roles described in this guide will require the creation of a signing certificate. This

1299 is required for a SAML or OIDC IdP, and for an OAuth AS if access tokens will be issued as JWTs. To

1300 create or import a signing certificate, under **Server Configuration–Certificate Management**, click **Signing**

1301 **& Decryption Keys & Certificates**. A self-signed certificate can be created, or a trusted certificate can be

1302 obtained and uploaded there.

## 1303 3.3 How to Configure the OAuth 2 AS

1304 Configuration of a Ping OAuth 2 AS is described at

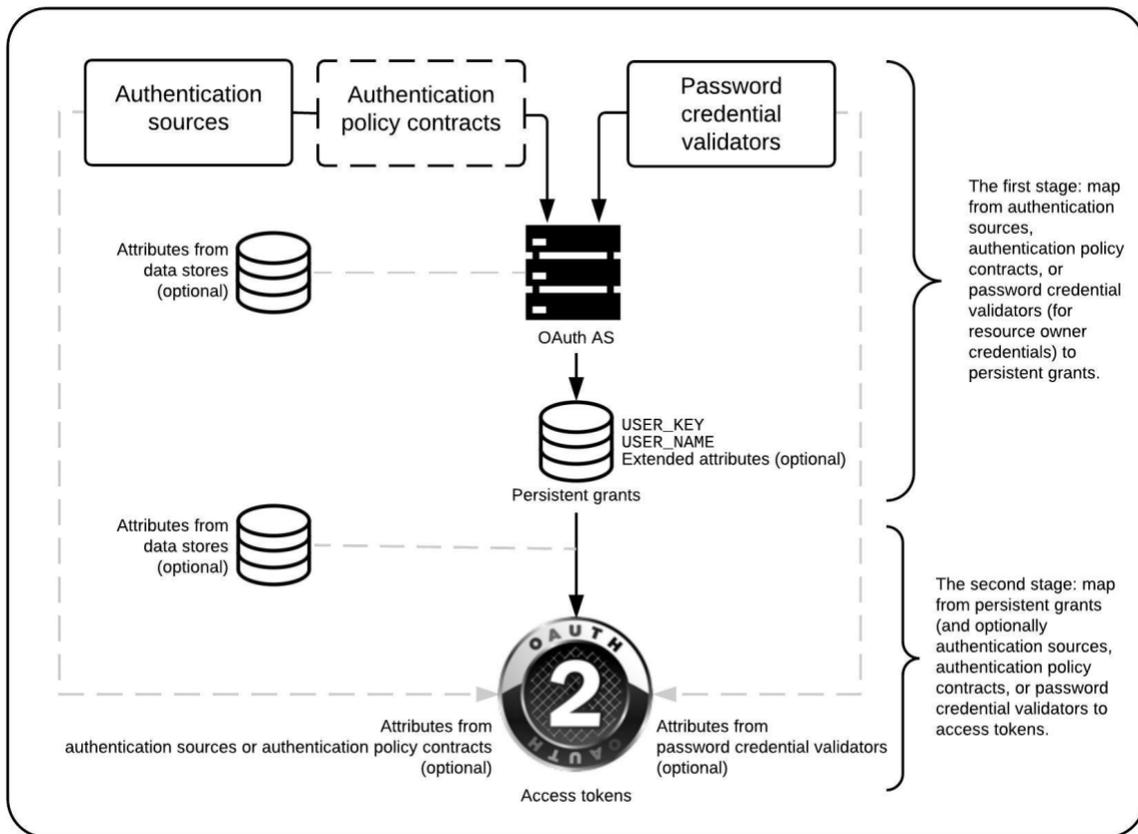
1305 [https://documentation.pingidentity.com/pingfederate/pf82/index.shtml#concept\\_usingOauthMenuSelections.html](https://documentation.pingidentity.com/pingfederate/pf82/index.shtml#concept_usingOauthMenuSelections.html).

1306

1307 This guide documents the configuration for an AS serving the role of the *idm.sandbox* server hosted in  
 1308 the Motorola Solutions cloud instance, as depicted in Figure 1-1. This AS is configured to support the  
 1309 three usage scenarios—local user authentication at the AS, redirection to a SAML IdP, and redirection to  
 1310 an OIDC IdP—and to initiate the correct login flow based on an IdP discovery mechanism.

1311 An understanding of the PingFederate OAuth implementation helps provide context for the  
 1312 configurations documented in this guide. PingFederate supports several different authentication flows  
 1313 and mechanisms, but there is a common framework for how user attributes are mapped into OAuth  
 1314 tokens. This framework is depicted in Figure 3-1, which is taken from PingFederate’s documentation at  
 1315 [https://documentation.pingidentity.com/pingfederate/pf83/index.shtml#concept\\_mappingOauthAttributes.html](https://documentation.pingidentity.com/pingfederate/pf83/index.shtml#concept_mappingOauthAttributes.html).  
 1316

1317 **Figure 3-1 Access Token Attribute Mapping Framework**



1318  
 1319 The overall OAuth processing flow at the AS is as follows:

- 1320
1. The AS receives an OAuth authorization request from an unauthenticated user.

- 1321 2. The AS authenticates the user through the configured authentication adapters, IdP connections,  
1322 and/or authentication policies.
- 1323 3. Information from adapters or policy contracts, optionally combined with user information  
1324 retrieved from data stores such as Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP), are used to  
1325 build a persistent grant context. The two mandatory attributes in the persistent grant context are  
1326 listed below:
- 1327     ▪ **USER\_KEY**—This is a globally unique user identifier. For ASs that interact with multiple  
1328     IdPs, this name should be resistant to naming collisions across user organizations (e.g.,  
1329     email address or distinguished name).
  - 1330     ▪ **USER\_NAME**—If the user is prompted to authorize the request, this name will be  
1331     displayed on the page, so a user-friendly name, such as [givenName lastName], could be  
1332     used here; the name does not need to be unique.
- 1333 4. If authorization prompts are enabled, the user is prompted to approve the authorization  
1334 request; for this lab build, these prompts were disabled on the assumption that fast access to  
1335 applications is a high priority for the PSFR community.
- 1336 5. If the request is authorized, a second mapping process takes place to populate the access token  
1337 with information from the persistent grant and, optionally, from adapters, policy contracts, or  
1338 data stores.

1339 Note that persistent grant attributes are stored and can be retrieved and reused when the client uses a  
1340 refresh token to obtain a new access token, whereas attributes that are looked up in the second stage  
1341 would be looked up again during the token refresh request. Storing attributes in the persistent grant can  
1342 therefore reduce the need for repeated directory queries; however, it may be preferable to always  
1343 query some attributes that are subject to change (like account status) again when a new access token is  
1344 requested. In addition, it is important to note that storing persistent grant attributes requires a  
1345 supported relational database or LDAP data store.

1346 The following steps go through the configuration of the AS.

- 1347 1. Enable the PingFederate installation to work as an AS. This can be done in the following steps:
- 1348     a. Under **Main**, click the **Server Configuration** section tab, and then click **Server Settings**.
  - 1349     b. In **Server Settings**, click the **Roles & Protocols** tab. The Roles & Protocols screen will  
1350     appear as shown in Figure 3-2.
    - 1351         i. Click **ENABLE OAUTH 2.0 AUTHORIZATION SERVER (AS) ROLE**.
    - 1352         ii. Click **ENABLE IDENTITY PROVIDER (IDP) ROLE AND SUPPORT THE FOLLOWING**,  
1353         and then under it, click **SAML 2.0**. Although this server does not act as a SAML  
1354         IdP, it is necessary to enable the IdP role and at least one protocol to configure  
1355         the local user authentication use case.

- 1356  
1357  
1358
- iii. Click **ENABLE SERVICE PROVIDER (SP) ROLE AND SUPPORT THE FOLLOWING**, and then under it, click **SAML 2.0** and **OPENID CONNECT**; this enables integration with both types of IdPs.

1359 Figure 3-2 Server Roles for AS

The screenshot displays the 'Server Settings' page in the PingFederate administration console. The left sidebar shows navigation options: MAIN, IdP Configuration, SP Configuration, OAuth Settings, and Server Configuration (highlighted). The main content area is titled 'Server Settings' and contains a tabbed interface with the following tabs: System Administration, System Info, Runtime Notifications, Runtime Reporting, Account Management, Roles & Protocols, Federation Info, System Options, Metadata Signing, Metadata Lifetime, and Summary (selected). Below the tabs, a heading reads 'Select the role(s) and protocol(s) that you intend to use with your federation partners.' The configuration options are as follows:

- ENABLE OAUTH 2.0 AUTHORIZATION SERVER (AS) ROLE
  - OPENID CONNECT
- ENABLE IDENTITY PROVIDER (IDP) ROLE AND SUPPORT THE FOLLOWING:
  - SAML 2.0
    - AUTO-CONNECT PROFILE
    - SAML 1.1
    - SAML 1.0
    - WS-FEDERATION
    - OUTBOUND PROVISIONING
    - WS-TRUST
- ENABLE SERVICE PROVIDER (SP) ROLE AND SUPPORT THE FOLLOWING:
  - SAML 2.0
    - AUTO-CONNECT PROFILE
    - ATTRIBUTE REQUESTER MAPPING FOR X.509 ATTRIBUTE SHARING PROFILE (XASP)
    - SAML 1.1
    - SAML 1.0
    - WS-FEDERATION
    - WS-TRUST
    - INBOUND PROVISIONING
  - OPENID CONNECT
- ENABLE IDP DISCOVERY ROLE (SAML 2.0 ONLY)

At the bottom right, there are four buttons: Cancel, Previous, Next, and Save.

1360

- 1361 c. Also under **Server Settings**, on the **Federation Info** tab, enter the **BASE URL** and **SAML**  
 1362 **2.0 ENTITY ID** (Figure 3-3). The **BASE URL** should use a public DNS name that is  
 1363 resolvable by any federation partners. The **SAML 2.0 ENTITY ID** is simply an identifier  
 1364 string that must be unique among federation partners; it is recommended to be a  
 1365 Uniform Resource Identifier (URI), per the SAML 2.0 Core specification [22].

1366 **Figure 3-3 Federation Info**

The screenshot shows the PingFederate administration interface. The left sidebar contains a navigation menu with the following items: MAIN, IdP Configuration, SP Configuration, OAuth Settings, and Server Configuration (which is highlighted). The main content area is titled 'Server Settings' and has several tabs: System Info, Runtime Notifications, Runtime Reporting, Account Management, Roles & Protocols, Federation Info (selected), System Options, Metadata Signing, Metadata Lifetime, and Summary. Below the tabs, there is a text block explaining the need for a unique identifier. Two input fields are present: 'BASE URL' with the value 'https://idm.sandbox.motorolasolutions.c' and 'SAML 2.0 ENTITY ID' with the value 'ctoPingFed\_entityID'. At the bottom right, there are three buttons: 'Cancel', 'Previous', and 'Next'.

- 1367
- 1368 2. The next step is to configure the OAuth AS. Click the **OAuth Settings** section tab under **Main**.
- 1369 a. Click **Authorization Server Settings** under the **Authorization Server** header. This displays  
 1370 the **Authorization Server Settings** (Figure 3-4).

1371 Figure 3-4 AS Settings

**Ping Identity PingFederate**

MAIN

- IdP Configuration
- SP Configuration
- OAuth Settings**
- Server Configuration

### Authorization Server Settings

Provide general configuration and policy for the PingFederate Authorization Server.

AUTHORIZATION CODE TIMEOUT (SECONDS)

AUTHORIZATION CODE ENTROPY (BYTES)

#### Refresh Token and Persistent Grant Settings

PERSISTENT GRANT LIFETIME (BLANK FOR INDEFINITE)  Days

REFRESH TOKEN LENGTH (CHARACTERS)

ROLL REFRESH TOKEN VALUES (DEFAULT POLICY)

MINIMUM INTERVAL TO ROLL REFRESH TOKENS (HOURS)

REUSE EXISTING PERSISTENT ACCESS GRANTS FOR GRANT TYPES  IMPLICIT  AUTHORIZATION CODE  RESOURCE OWNER PASSWORD CREDENTIALS

BYPASS AUTHORIZATION FOR PREVIOUSLY APPROVED PERSISTENT GRANTS

ALLOW UNIDENTIFIED CLIENTS TO MAKE RESOURCE OWNER PASSWORD CREDENTIALS GRANTS

ALLOW UNIDENTIFIED CLIENTS TO REQUEST EXTENSION GRANTS

#### Persistent Grant Extended Attributes

Attribute	Action
<input type="text"/>	<input type="button" value="Add"/>

#### OAuth Administrative Web Services Settings

PASSWORD CREDENTIAL VALIDATOR

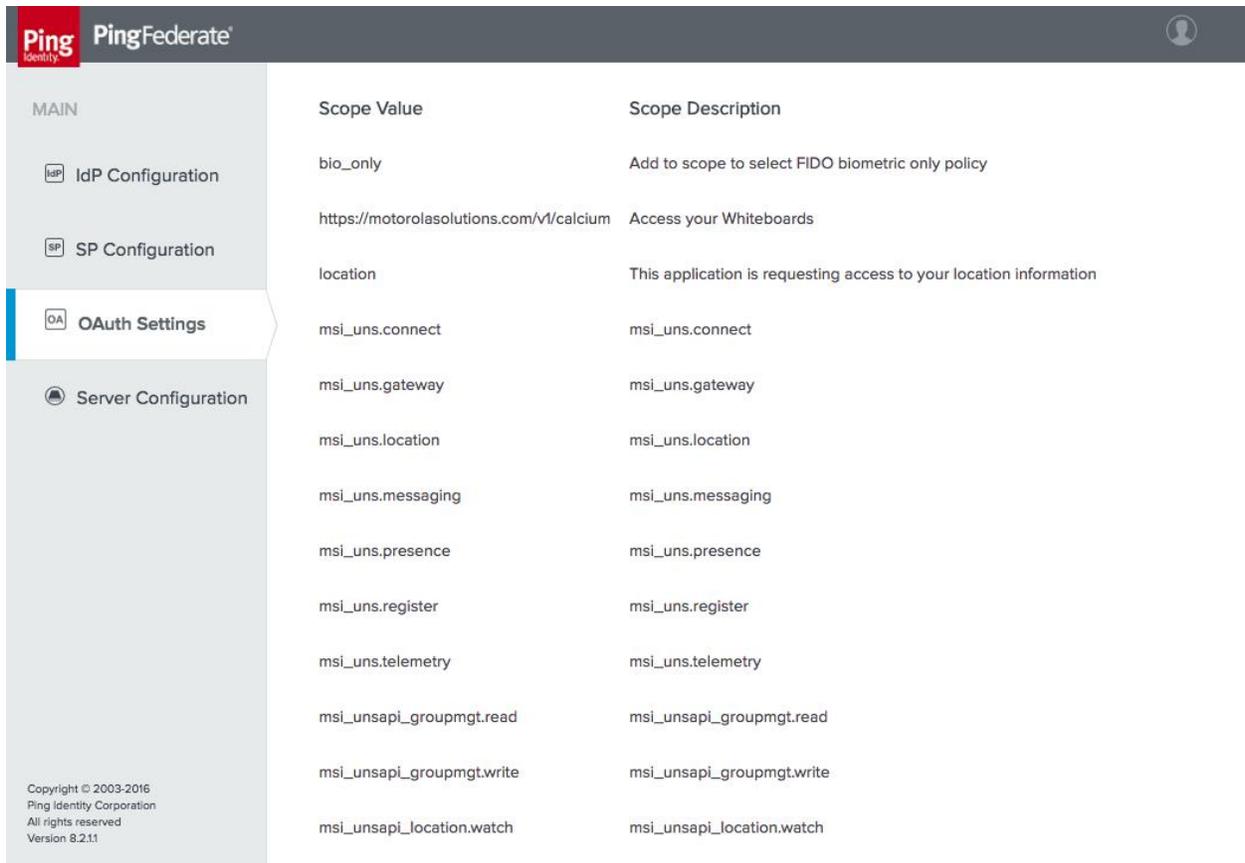
Copyright © 2003-2016 Ping Identity Corporation All rights reserved Version 8.2.2.0

1372

1373 The default settings are suitable for the lab build architecture; organizations may wish  
 1374 to customize these default settings in accordance with organizational security policy or  
 1375 usage requirements. Some notes on individual settings are provided below:

- 1376       ▪ **AUTHORIZATION CODE TIMEOUT (SECONDS):** Once an authorization code has  
 1377       been returned to a client, it must be exchanged for an access token within this  
 1378       interval. This reduces the risk of an unauthorized client obtaining an access  
 1379       token through brute-force guessing or intercepting a valid client's code. *Proof*  
 1380       *Key for Code Exchange (PKCE)* [23], as implemented by the AppAuth library, is  
 1381       another useful mechanism to protect the authorization code.
  - 1382       ▪ **AUTHORIZATION CODE ENTROPY (BYTES):** length of the authorization code  
 1383       returned by the AS to the client, in bytes
  - 1384       ▪ **REFRESH TOKEN LENGTH (CHARACTERS):** length of the refresh token, in  
 1385       characters
  - 1386       ▪ **ROLL REFRESH TOKEN VALUES (DEFAULT POLICY):** When selected, the OAuth  
 1387       AS generates a new refresh token value when a new access token is obtained.
  - 1388       ▪ **MINIMUM INTERVAL TO ROLL REFRESH TOKENS (HOURS):** the minimum  
 1389       number of hours that must pass before a new refresh token value can be issued
  - 1390       ▪ **REUSE EXISTING PERSISTENT ACCESS GRANTS FOR GRANT TYPES:**
    - 1391           • **IMPLICIT:** Consent from the user is requested only for the first OAuth  
 1392           resource request associated with the grant.
    - 1393           • **AUTHORIZATION CODE:** Same as above if the **BYPASS AUTHORIZATION**  
 1394           **FOR PREVIOUSLY APPROVED PERSISTENT GRANTS** is selected; this can  
 1395           be used to prompt the user for authorization only once to avoid  
 1396           repeated prompts for the same client.
  - 1397       ▪ **PASSWORD CREDENTIAL VALIDATOR:** Required for HTTP Basic authentication if  
 1398       the OAuth Representational State Transfer Web Service is used for managing  
 1399       client applications; this functionality was not used for this build.
- 1400 3. Next, configure scopes, as required, for the application. Click the **OAuth Settings** section tab,  
 1401 and then click **Scope Management**. The specific scope values will be determined by the client  
 1402 application developer. Generally speaking, scopes refer to different authorizations that can be  
 1403 requested by the client and granted by the user. Access tokens are associated with the scopes  
 1404 for which they are authorized, which can limit the authorities granted to clients. Figure 3-5  
 1405 shows several scopes that were added to the AS for this lab build that have specific meanings in  
 1406 the PSX applications suite.

1407 Figure 3-5 Scopes



The screenshot shows the PingFederate administration console. The left sidebar contains navigation options: MAIN, IdP Configuration, SP Configuration, OAuth Settings (highlighted), and Server Configuration. The main content area displays a table of scopes with columns for Scope Value and Scope Description. The footer contains copyright information for Ping Identity Corporation, Version 8.2.1.1.

Scope Value	Scope Description
bio_only	Add to scope to select FIDO biometric only policy
https://motorolasolutions.com/v1/calcium	Access your Whiteboards
location	This application is requesting access to your location information
msi_uns.connect	msi_uns.connect
msi_uns.gateway	msi_uns.gateway
msi_uns.location	msi_uns.location
msi_uns.messaging	msi_uns.messaging
msi_uns.presence	msi_uns.presence
msi_uns.register	msi_uns.register
msi_uns.telemetry	msi_uns.telemetry
msi_unsapi_groupmgt.read	msi_unsapi_groupmgt.read
msi_unsapi_groupmgt.write	msi_unsapi_groupmgt.write
msi_unsapi_location.watch	msi_unsapi_location.watch

Copyright © 2003-2016  
Ping Identity Corporation  
All rights reserved  
Version 8.2.1.1

1408

1409 4. Define an Access Token Management Profile. This profile determines whether access tokens are  
 1410 issued as simple reference token strings or as JWTs. For this lab build, JWTs were used. JWTs are  
 1411 signed and optionally encrypted, so resource servers can validate them locally and they can  
 1412 contain user attributes and other information. Reference tokens are also a viable option, but  
 1413 resource servers must contact the AS's introspection endpoint to determine whether they are  
 1414 valid and must obtain the granted scopes and any other information associated with them. The  
 1415 Access Token Management Profile also defines any additional attributes that will be associated  
 1416 with the token.

1417 a. Create an Access Token Manager by following these steps:

1418 i. Click the **OAuth Settings** section tab, click **Access Token Management**, and then  
 1419 click **Create New Instance**.

1420 ii. On the **Type** tab, give the instance a meaningful name and ID, and select the  
 1421 token type (Figure 3-6).

1422 Figure 3-6 Access Token Management Instance

The screenshot shows the PingFederate web interface for creating an Access Token Management Instance. The interface includes a navigation menu on the left with options: MAIN, IdP Configuration, SP Configuration, OAuth Settings (selected), and Server Configuration. The main content area is titled 'Access Token Management | Create Access Token Management Instance' and has a tabbed interface with the 'Type' tab selected. Below the tabs, there is a text instruction: 'Enter an Access Token Management Instance Name and Id, select the plugin Access Token Management Type, and a parent if applicable. The types available are limited to the plugins currently installed on your server.' The form contains the following fields:

- INSTANCE NAME: fidoJwt
- INSTANCE ID: fidoJwt
- TYPE: JSON Web Tokens (with a dropdown arrow and a link to 'Visit PingIdentity.com for additional types')
- PARENT INSTANCE: None (with a dropdown arrow)

At the bottom right of the form, there are 'Cancel' and 'Next' buttons.

1423

- 1424 5. On the next tab, **Instance Configuration**, select a symmetric key or certificate to use for JWT  
 1425 signing (Figure 3-7). In this instance, a signing certificate was created as described in  
 1426 [Section 3.2.4](#). Tokens can also optionally be encrypted using JSON Web Encryption (JWE) [24]; in  
 1427 this case, the client developer would provide a certificate in order to receive encrypted  
 1428 messages. JWE was not used in the lab build.

1429 Figure 3-7 Access Token Manager Instance Configuration

**Access Token Management | Create Access Token Management Instance**

**Type** Instance Configuration Access Token Attribute Contract Resource URIs Access Control Summary

Complete the configuration necessary to issue and validate access tokens. This configuration was designed into, and is specific to, the selected Access Token Management plugin.

A JSON Web Token (JWT) Bearer Access Token Management Plug-in that enables PingFederate to issue (and optionally validate) cryptographically secure self-contained OAuth access tokens.

**SYMMETRIC KEYS**  
(A group of keys for use with symmetric encryption and MAC algorithms.)

KEY ID (An identifier for the given key)	KEY (Encoded symmetric key)	ENCODING (How the binary key is encoded as a string)	Action
<a href="#">Add a new row to 'Symmetric Keys'</a>			

**CERTIFICATES**  
(A group of certificates and their corresponding public/private key pairs for use with signatures)

KEY ID (An identifier for the given key)	CERTIFICATE (Requires an EC key or RSA key length of at least 2048 bits)	Action
jwt signer	CN=es1.cpsid.mso, OU=NCCoE, O=NIST, L=Rockville, ST=Maryland, C=US	<a href="#">Edit</a> <a href="#">Delete</a>
<a href="#">Add a new row to 'Certificates'</a>		

Field Name	Field Value	Description
TOKEN LIFETIME	120	Defines how long, in minutes, an access token is valid.
JWS ALGORITHM	RSA using SHA-256	The HMAC or signing algorithm used to protect the integrity of the token. For HMAC, the active symmetric key must be selected below. For RSA or EC, the active signing certificate must be selected. Integrity protection can also be achieved using symmetric encryption, in which case this field can be left unselected.
ACTIVE SYMMETRIC KEY ID	-- Select One --	The Key ID of the key to use when producing JWTs using an HMAC-based algorithm.
ACTIVE SIGNING CERTIFICATE KEY ID	jwt signer	The Key ID of the key pair and certificate to use when producing JWTs using an RSA-based or EC-based algorithm.
JWE ALGORITHM	-- Select One --	The algorithm used to encrypt or otherwise determine the value of the content encryption key.
JWE CONTENT ENCRYPTION ALGORITHM	-- Select One --	The content encryption algorithm used to perform authenticated encryption on the plaintext payload of the token.
ACTIVE SYMMETRIC ENCRYPTION KEY ID	-- Select One --	The Key ID of the key to use when using a symmetric encryption algorithm.
ASYMMETRIC ENCRYPTION KEY		An asymmetric encryption public key, which can be in either JWK format or a certificate.
ASYMMETRIC ENCRYPTION JWKS URL		The HTTPS URL of a JSON Web Key Set endpoint that has public key(s) for encryption.

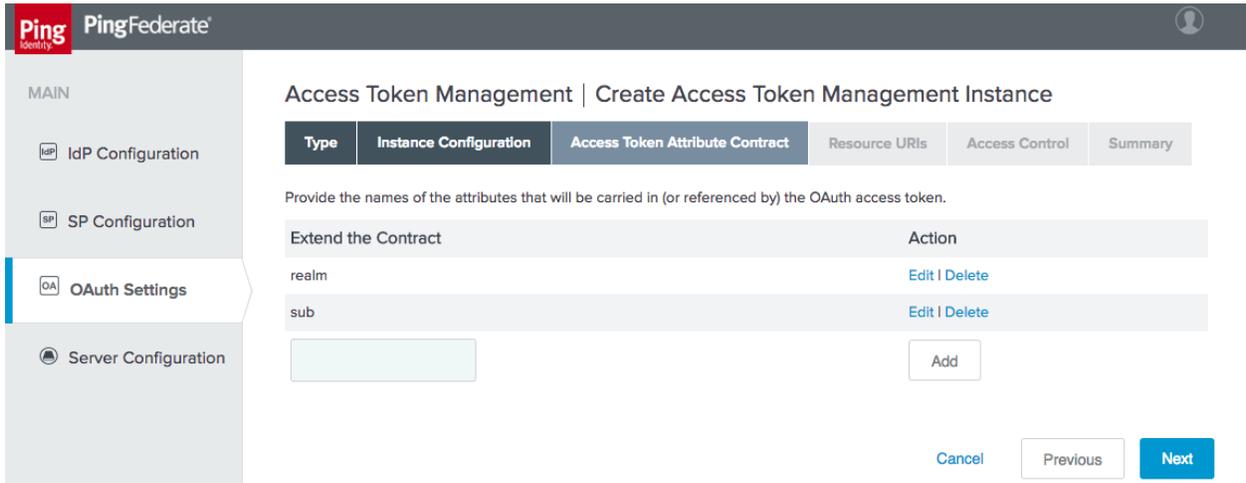
[Manage Signing Certificates](#) [Show Advanced Fields](#)

[Cancel](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

1430

- 1431 6. On the **Access Token Attribute Contract** tab, add the two values **realm** and **sub** to the attribute  
 1432 contract (Figure 3-8).

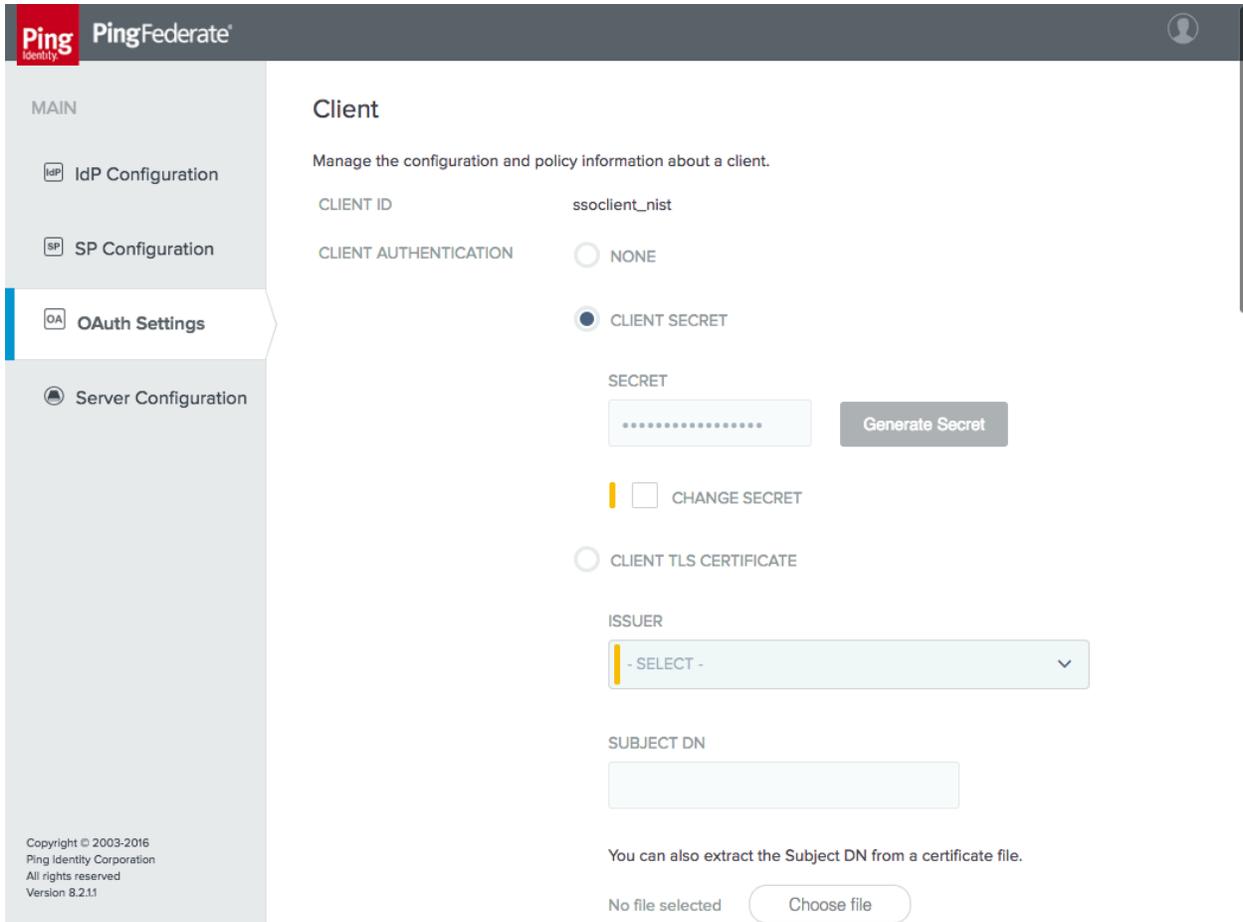
1433 **Figure 3-8 Access Token Manager Attribute Contract**



- 1434
- 1435 7. The **Resource URIs** and **Access Control** tabs were not used for this build. Click **Save** to complete  
 1436 the Access Token Manager.
- 1437 8. Next, one or more OAuth clients need to be registered with the AS. In the Motorola Solutions  
 1438 use case, the PSX Cockpit application is registered as a client. OAuth Client registration is  
 1439 described for PingFederate at:  
 1440 [https://documentation.pingidentity.com/pingfederate/pf82/index.shtml#concept\\_configuringClient.html](https://documentation.pingidentity.com/pingfederate/pf82/index.shtml#concept_configuringClient.html).  
 1441

1442 To create a new client, click the **OAuth Settings** section tab, click **Clients**, and then click **Create**  
 1443 **New**. Clients are displayed on the rightmost side of the screen in the **OAuth Settings** window.  
 1444 Once **Create New** is clicked, the screen shown in Figure 3-9 and Figure 3-10 will appear. Due to  
 1445 the vertical size of the pages of this document, the screenshot is divided into two parts for  
 1446 legibility.

1447 Figure 3-9 OAuth Client Registration, Part 1



1448

1449 Figure 3-10 OAuth Client Registration, Part 2

NAME	<input type="text" value="ssoclient_nist"/>								
DESCRIPTION	<div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; height: 40px;"></div>								
REDIRECT URIS	<table><thead><tr><th>Redirection URIs</th><th>Action</th></tr></thead><tbody><tr><td><a href="http://localhost/">http://localhost/</a></td><td><a href="#">Edit</a>   <a href="#">Delete</a></td></tr><tr><td><a href="napps://localhost/">napps://localhost/</a></td><td><a href="#">Edit</a>   <a href="#">Delete</a></td></tr><tr><td><input type="text"/></td><td><input type="button" value="Add"/></td></tr></tbody></table>	Redirection URIs	Action	<a href="http://localhost/">http://localhost/</a>	<a href="#">Edit</a>   <a href="#">Delete</a>	<a href="napps://localhost/">napps://localhost/</a>	<a href="#">Edit</a>   <a href="#">Delete</a>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="button" value="Add"/>
Redirection URIs	Action								
<a href="http://localhost/">http://localhost/</a>	<a href="#">Edit</a>   <a href="#">Delete</a>								
<a href="napps://localhost/">napps://localhost/</a>	<a href="#">Edit</a>   <a href="#">Delete</a>								
<input type="text"/>	<input type="button" value="Add"/>								
LOGO URL	<input type="text"/>								
BYPASS AUTHORIZATION APPROVAL	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Bypass								
RESTRICT SCOPES	<input type="checkbox"/> Restrict								
ALLOWED GRANT TYPES	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Authorization Code <input type="checkbox"/> Resource Owner Password Credentials <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Refresh Token <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Implicit <input type="checkbox"/> Client Credentials <input type="checkbox"/> Access Token Validation (Client is a Resource Server) <input type="checkbox"/> Extension Grants								
DEFAULT ACCESS TOKEN MANAGER	<input type="text" value="fidoJwt"/>								
PERSISTENT GRANTS EXPIRATION	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Use Global Setting <input type="radio"/> Grants Do Not Expire <input type="radio"/> <input type="text"/> <input type="text" value="Days"/>								
REFRESH TOKEN ROLLING POLICY	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Use Global Setting <input type="radio"/> Don't Roll <input type="radio"/> Roll								
OPENID CONNECT	ID Token Signing Algorithm <input type="text" value="HMAC using SHA-256"/>  Policy <input type="text" value="fidoPolicy"/>  <input type="checkbox"/> Grant Access to Session Revocation API								

1450

1451 The following are notes on the parameters on this screen:

- 1452       ▪ **CLIENT ID:** This is a required parameter. This is the unique identifier accompanied with  
1453       each request that is presented to the AS's token and authorization endpoints. For this  
1454       lab build, Motorola Solutions assigned a client ID of "ssoclient\_nist" for the instances of  
1455       their applications on the test devices.
- 1456       ▪ **CLIENT AUTHENTICATION:** May be set to **NONE**, **CLIENT SECRET** (for HTTP basic  
1457       authentication), or **CLIENT TLS CERTIFICATE**. For native mobile application clients, there  
1458       is no way to protect a client secret or private key and provide it to all instances of the  
1459       application with any guarantee of confidentiality, as a user might be able to  
1460       reverse-engineer the application to obtain any secrets delivered with it, or to debug the  
1461       application to capture any secrets delivered at run-time. Therefore, a value of **NONE** is  
1462       acceptable for native mobile applications, when mitigated with the use of PKCE. For web  
1463       clients, servers are capable of protecting secrets; therefore, some form of client  
1464       authentication should be required.
- 1465       ▪ **REDIRECT URIS:** Redirect URIs are the URIs to which the OAuth AS may redirect the  
1466       resource owner's user-agent after authorization is obtained. A redirect URI is used with  
1467       the **Authorization Code** and **Implicit** grant types. This value is typically provided by the  
1468       application developer to the AS administrator.
- 1469       ▪ **ALLOWED GRANT TYPES:** These are the allowed grant types for the client. For this lab  
1470       build, the **Authorization Code** grant type was used exclusively.
- 1471       ▪ **DEFAULT ACCESS TOKEN MANAGER:** This is the Access Token Manager profile to be  
1472       used for this client.
- 1473       ▪ **PERSISTENT GRANTS EXPIRATION:** This setting offers the option to override the global  
1474       AS persistent grants settings for this client.
- 1475       ▪ **REFRESH TOKEN ROLLING POLICY:** This setting offers the option to override the global  
1476       AS token rolling policy settings for this client.

1477 Once these values are set, click **Save** to store the client.

1478 This completes the required configuration for the AS's interactions with OAuth clients. The following  
1479 section outlines the steps to set up the AS to authenticate users.

### 1480 3.4 How to Configure the OAuth 2 AS for Authentication

1481 In this section, the AS is configured to authenticate users locally or through federation with a SAML or  
1482 OIDC IdP. These settings depend on the selection of roles and protocols, as shown in Figure 3-2,  
1483 therefore, ensure that has been completed before proceeding.

### 1484 3.4.1 How to Configure Direct Authentication

1485 The AS was configured to authenticate users with FIDO UAF authentication. This depends on the NNAS,  
1486 Nok Nok Labs Gateway, and Nok Nok Labs UAF Plugin for PingFederate. See [Section 5](#) for the installation  
1487 and configuration instructions for those components. This section assumes that those components have  
1488 already been installed and configured.

#### 1489 3.4.1.1 Configure Adapter Instance

- 1490 1. First, an instance of the FIDO UAF adapter must be configured. Click the **IdP Configuration**  
1491 section tab, and then click **Adapters** under **Application Integration**.
- 1492 2. Click **Create New Instance** to create an IdP adapter instance. This will bring up the new tabbed  
1493 screen shown in Figure 3-11.
  - 1494 a. On the **Type** tab, the **INSTANCE NAME** and **INSTANCE ID** are internal identifiers and can  
1495 be set to any meaningful values. The **TYPE** selection, "FIDO Adapter," will not appear  
1496 until the Nok Nok Labs UAF plugin has been successfully installed on the PingFederate  
1497 server as described in [Section 5](#).

1498 **Figure 3-11 Create Adapter Instance**

- 1499
- 1500           b. On the **IdP Adapter** tab, specify the URLs for the Nok Nok Labs API and Gateway
- 1501           endpoints (Figure 3-12).
- 1502                     i. The **NNL SERVER POLICY NAME** field can be used to select a custom policy, if
- 1503                     one has been defined on the Nok Nok Labs server; for this build, the default
- 1504                     policy was used.

1505 Figure 3-12 FIDO Adapter Settings

**Manage IdP Adapter Instances | Create Adapter Instance**

Complete the configuration necessary to look up user security contexts in your environment. This configuration was designed into the adapter for use at your site.

Set the details necessary for FIDO adapter configuration

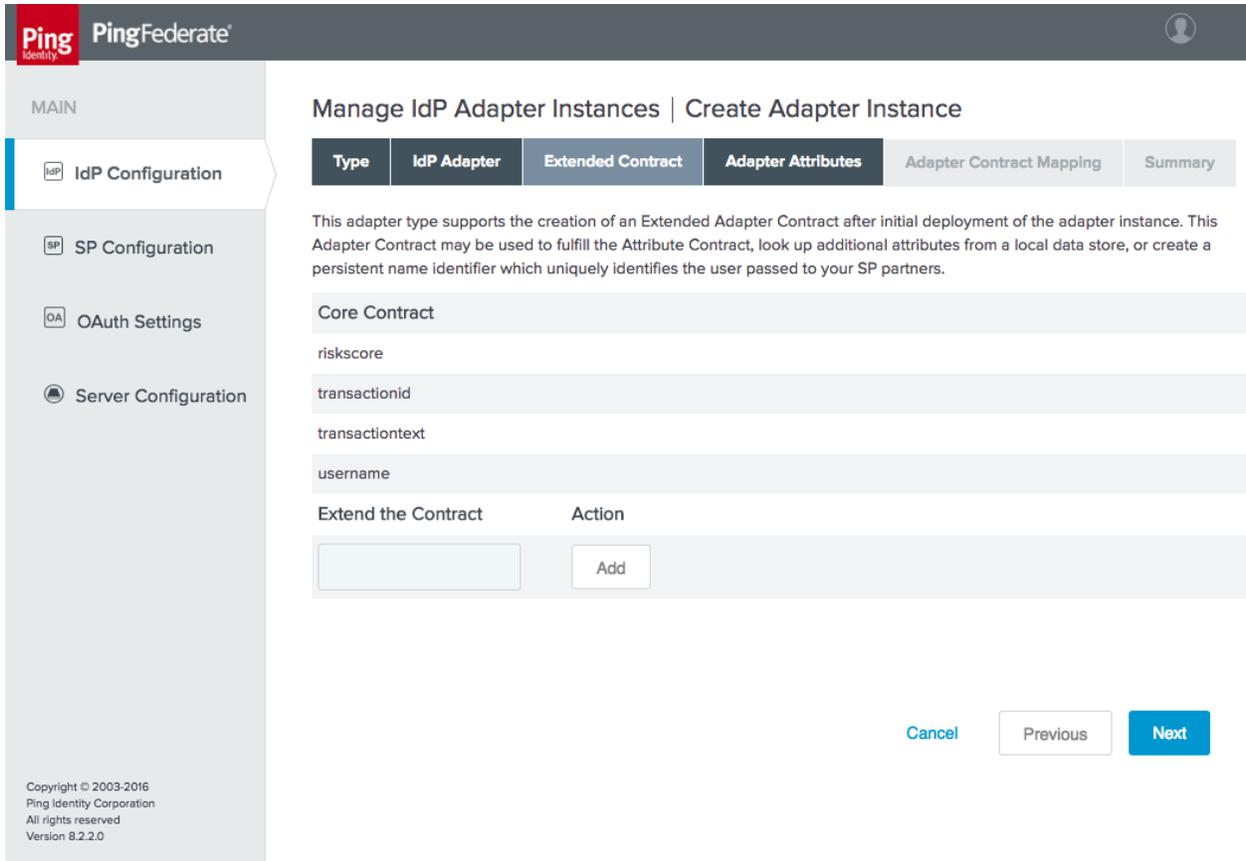
Field Name	Field Value	Description
NNL SERVER AUTHENTICATION API ENDPOINT	https://mfas-nccoe.noknoktest.com:844	Enter NNL Server Authentication Endpoint
NNL GATEWAY API ENDPOINT	https://mfas-nccoe.noknoktest.com:844	Enter NNL Gateway Endpoint
NNL SERVER POLICY NAME	default	Enter Policy Name Configured on NNL Server
TENANT IDENTIFIER	default	Enter Tenant Identifier
LOGIN PAGE RENDERING OPTION	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Embedded Frame <input type="radio"/> Render Login Web Page	Specify your rendering option

Copyright © 2003-2016 Ping Identity Corporation All rights reserved Version 8.2.2.0

Cancel Previous Next

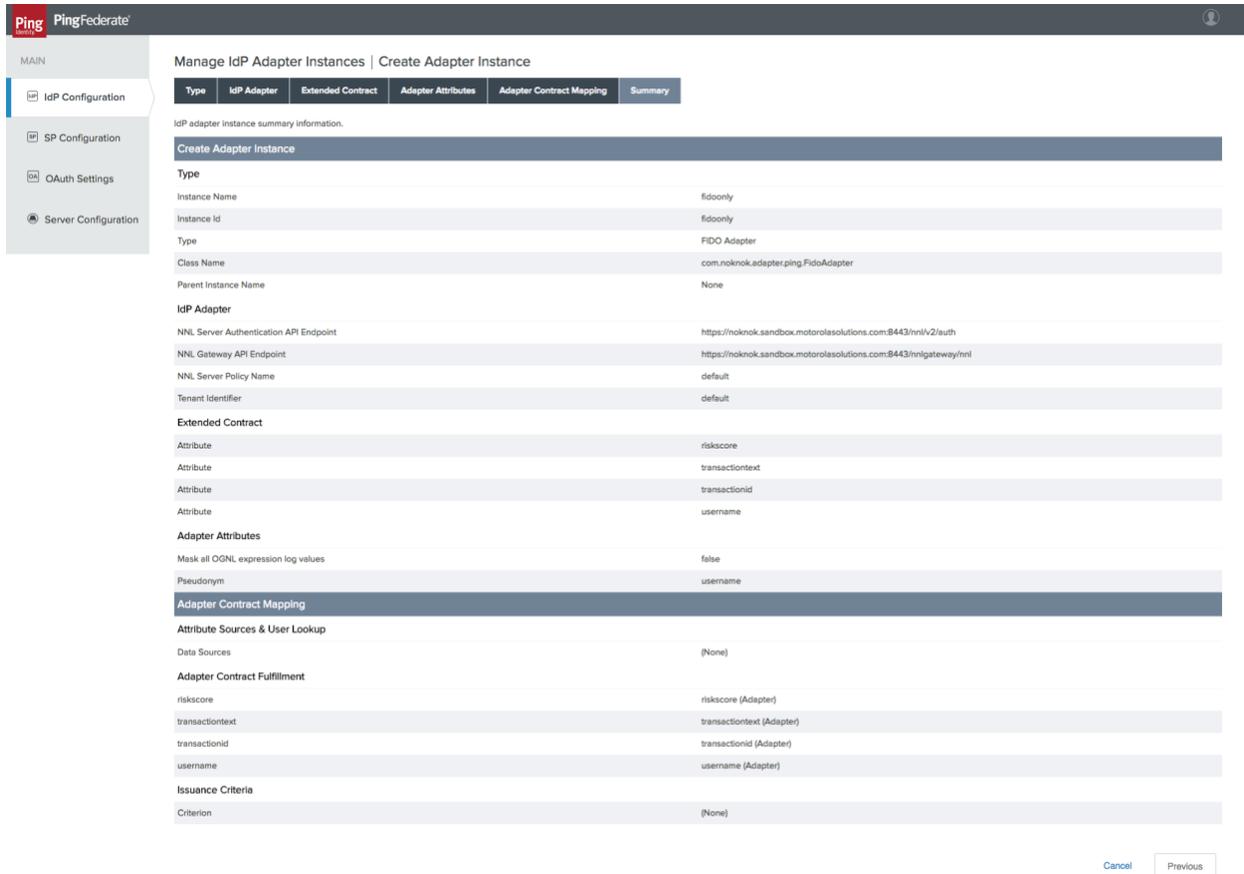
- 1506
- 1507 c. The **Extended Contract** tab was also left as the default for the adapter, which provides
- 1508 the **riskscore**, **transactionid**, **transactiontext**, and **username** values (Figure 3-13). If
- 1509 desired, additional attributes could be added to the contract and looked up in a user
- 1510 directory, based on the username returned from the adapter.

1511 Figure 3-13 FIDO Adapter Contract



- 1512
- 1513
- 1514
- 1515
- 1516
- 1517
- 1518
- d. On the **Adapter Attributes** tab, select the **Pseudonym** checkbox for **username**. Pseudonyms were not used in the lab build, but a selection is required on this tab.
  - e. There is no need to configure an adapter contract, unless attributes have been added on the **Extended Contract** tab. Clicking **Done** and then **Save** completes the configuration of the adapter. Clicking the adapter name in the list of adapters brings up the Adapter Instance **Summary** tab, which lists all of the configured settings (Figure 3-14).

1519 **Figure 3-14 FIDO Adapter Instance Summary**



1520

1521 Some additional configurations are needed to tie this authentication adapter to the issuance of an  
 1522 OAuth token. It is possible to directly map the adapter to the access token context, but because the  
 1523 adapter will be incorporated into an authentication policy in this case, an Authentication Policy Contract  
 1524 Mapping is used instead.

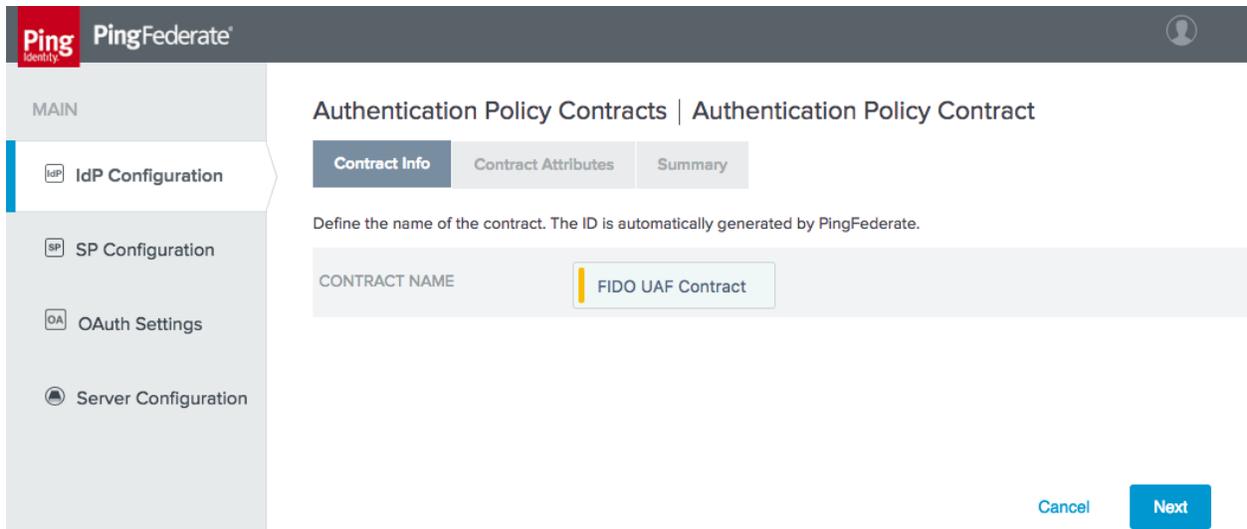
1525 **3.4.1.2 Create Policy Contract**

1526 1. To create a Policy Contract, navigate to the **IdP Configuration** section tab, and select **Policy**  
 1527 **Contracts** under **Authentication Policies**. A policy contract defines the set of attributes that will  
 1528 be provided by an authentication policy.

1529 2. Click **Create New Contract**.

1530 a. On the **Contract Info** tab, give the contract a meaningful name (Figure 3-15).

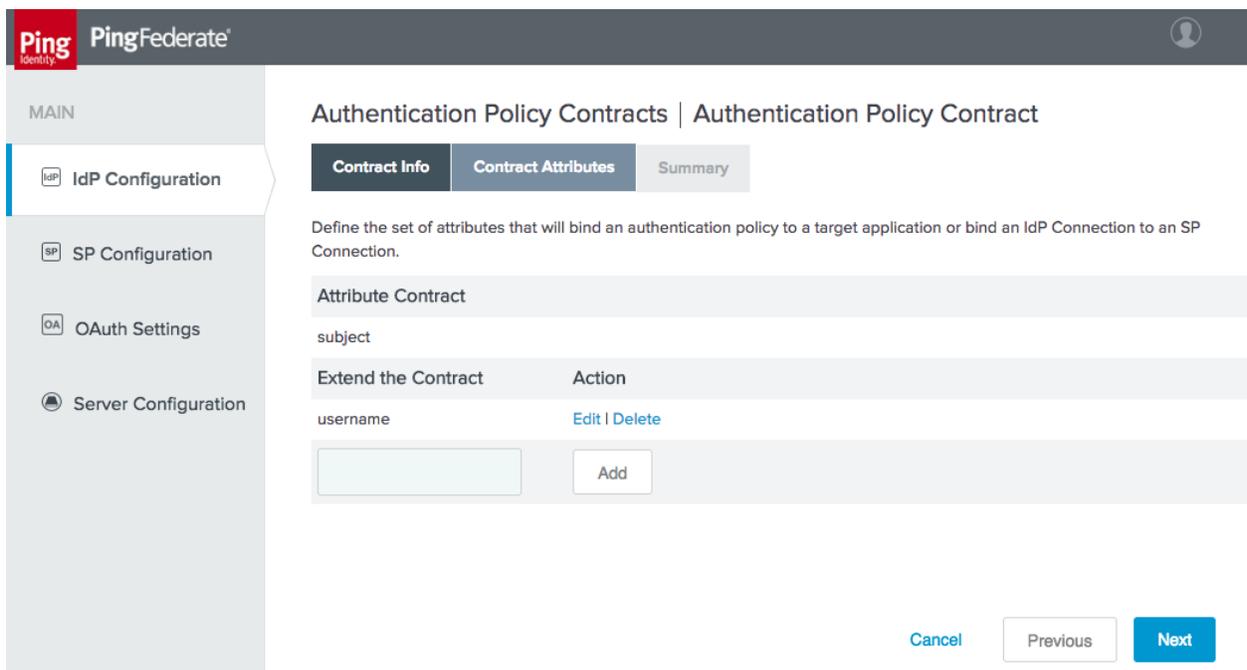
1531 Figure 3-15 Policy Contract Information



1532

1533 b. On the **Contract Attributes** tab, add a value called **username** (Figure 3-16).

1534 Figure 3-16 Policy Contract Attributes



1535

1536 c. Click **Done**, and then click **Save** to save the new contract.

1537 **3.4.1.3 Create Policy Contract Mapping**

- 1538 1. Create a mapping from the policy contract to the OAuth persistent grant. Click the **OAuth**  
 1539 **Settings** section tab, and then click **Authentication Policy Contract Mapping** under **Token &**  
 1540 **Attribute Mapping**.
- 1541 a. Select the newly created policy contract, and then click **Add Mapping** (Figure 3-17).

1542 **Figure 3-17 Create Authentication Policy Contract Mapping**

1543

- 1544 2. An attribute source could be added at this point to look up additional user attributes, but this is  
 1545 not necessary. Click **Save**.
- 1546 3. Skip the **Attribute Sources & User Lookup** tab.
- 1547 4. On the **Contract Fulfillment** tab, map both **USER\_KEY** and **USER\_NAME** to the **subject** value  
 1548 returned from the policy contract (Figure 3-18).

1549 **Figure 3-18 Authentication Policy Contract Fulfillment**

Copyright © 2003-2016  
Ping Identity Corporation  
All rights reserved  
Version 8.2.11

Contract	Source	Value	Actions
USER_KEY	Authentication Policy Contract	subject	None available
USER_NAME	Authentication Policy Contract	subject	None available

1550

1551 5. No issuance criteria were specified. Click **Next**, and then click **Save** to complete the mapping.1552 

### 3.4.1.4 Create Access Token Mapping

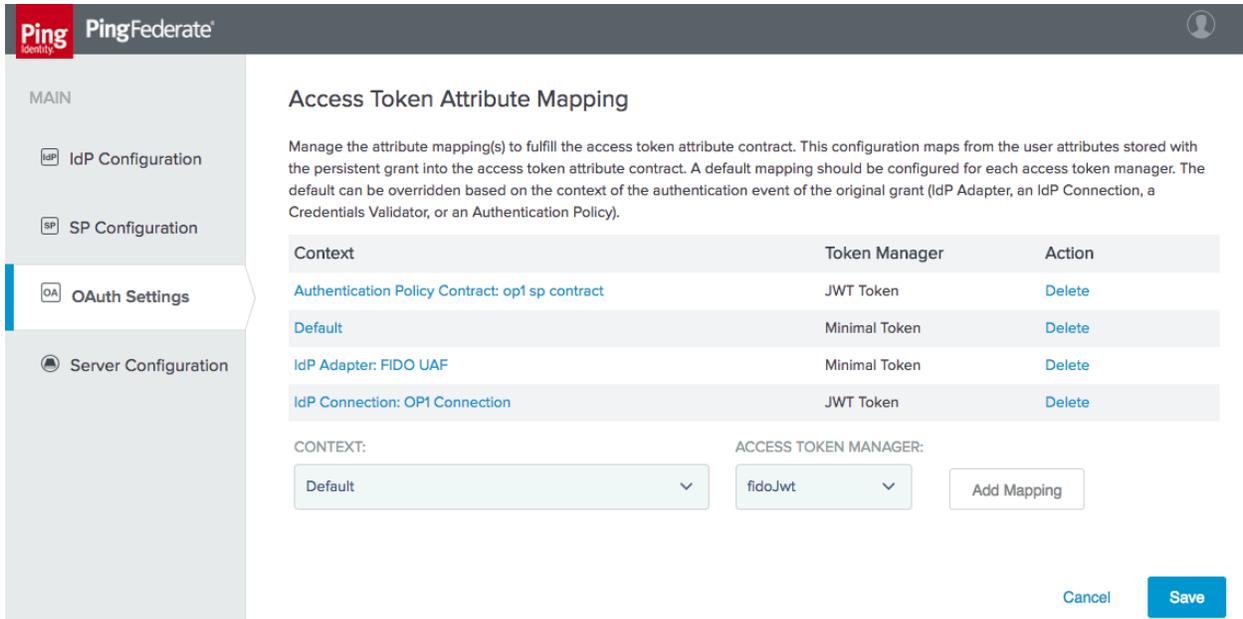
1553 Finally, an access token mapping needs to be created. In this simple case, the adapter only provides a  
 1554 single attribute (username) and it is stored in the persistent grant, so a default attribute mapping can be  
 1555 used.

1556 1. On the **OAuth Settings** section tab, under **Token & Attribute Mapping**, click **Access Token**  
 1557 **Mapping**.

1558 a. Select **Default** for the **CONTEXT** (Figure 3-19).

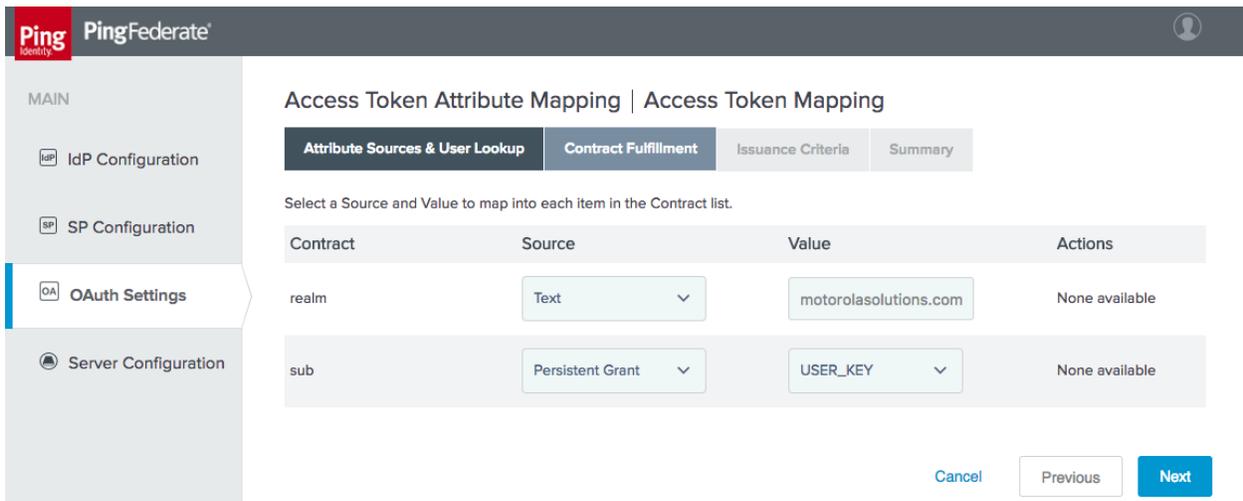
1559 b. Select the **ACCESS TOKEN MANAGER** created previously (Figure 3-19).

1560 **Figure 3-19 Create Access Token Attribute Mapping**



- 1561
- 1562 c. Click **Add Mapping**.
- 1563 d. Click **Next** to skip the **Attribute Sources & User Lookup** tab.
- 1564 e. On the **Contract Fulfillment** tab, configure sources and values for the **realm** and **sub**
- 1565 contracts (Figure 3-20). In this case, **realm** is set to the text string
- 1566 **motorolasolutions.com**. Click **Next**.

1567 **Figure 3-20 Access Token Mapping Contract Fulfillment**



1568

- 1569                    f. Click **Next** through the **Issuance Criteria** tab, and then click **Save**.
- 1570                    2. To complete the setup for direct authentication, the FIDO UAF adapter needs to be included in
- 1571                    an authentication policy as described in [Section 3.4.4.2](#).

## 1572 **3.4.2 How to Configure SAML Authentication**

1573 This section explains how to configure the AS to accept SAML authentication assertions from a SAML 2.0

1574 IdP. This configuration is for RP-initiated SAML web browser SSO, where the authentication flow begins

1575 at the AS and the user is redirected to the IdP. Here, it is assumed that all of the steps outlined in

1576 [Section 3.4](#) have been completed, particularly enabling the SP role and protocols.

### 1577 **3.4.2.1 Create IdP Connection**

1578 Establishing the relationship between the AS and IdP requires coordination between the administrators

1579 of the two servers, which will typically belong to two separate organizations. The administrators of the

1580 SAML IdP and RP will need to exchange their **BASE URL** and **SAML 2.0 ENTITY ID** values (available on the

1581 **Federation Info** tab under **Server Settings**) to complete the configuration. The IdP administrator must

1582 also provide the signing certificate of the IdP. If assertions will be encrypted, the AS administrator will

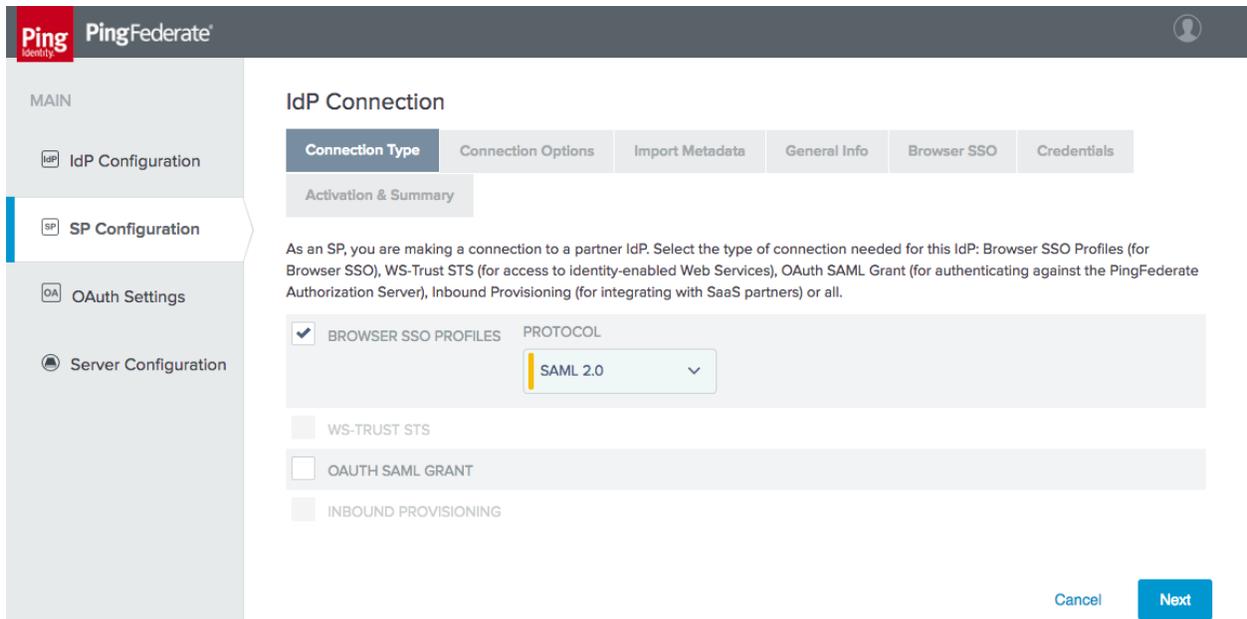
1583 need to provide the IdP administrator with the certificate to be used for the public key. Alternatively,

1584 administrators can export their SAML metadata and provide it to the other party to automate parts of

1585 the setup.

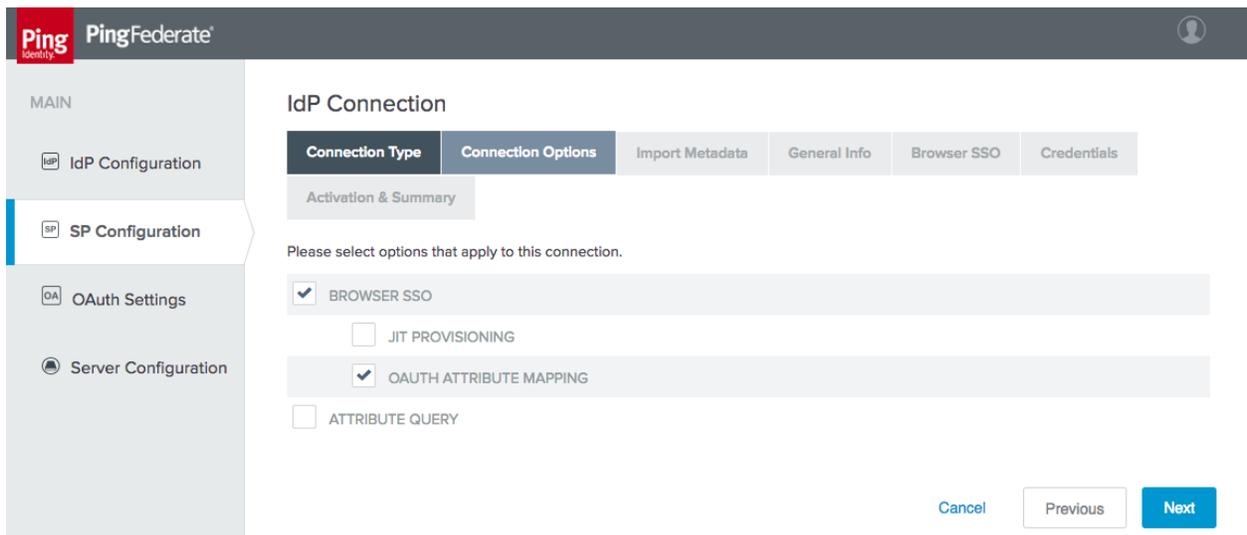
- 1586                    1. On the **SP Configuration** section tab, click **Create New** under **IdP Connections**.
- 1587                    a. On the **Connection Type** tab, select **BROWSER SSO PROFILES**, and choose **SAML 2.0** for
- 1588                    the **PROTOCOL** (Figure 3-21). If these options are not present, ensure that the roles are
- 1589                    selected correctly in **Server Settings**.

1590 **Figure 3-21 Create IdP Connection**



- 1591
- 1592                   b. On the **Connection Options** tab, select **BROWSER SSO**, and then under it, **OAUTH**
- 1593                   **ATTRIBUTE MAPPING** (Figure 3-22).

1594 **Figure 3-22 IdP Connection Options**



- 1595
- 1596                   c. Metadata import was not configured for the lab build; therefore, skip the **Import**
- 1597                   **Metadata** tab.

- 1598 d. On the **General Info** tab, enter the **PARTNER'S ENTITY ID (CONNECTION ID)** and **BASE**  
 1599 **URL** of the IdP, and provide a **CONNECTION NAME** (Figure 3-23).

1600 **Figure 3-23 IdP Connection General Info**

The screenshot shows the 'IdP Connection' configuration page in PingFederate. The 'General Info' tab is selected. The form contains the following fields and options:

- PARTNER'S ENTITY ID (CONNECTION ID):** Text input field containing 'idp1.spsd.msso'.
- CONNECTION NAME:** Text input field containing 'idp1.spsd.msso'.
- VIRTUAL SERVER IDS:** Text input field with an 'Add' button.
- BASE URL:** Text input field containing 'https://idp1.spsd.msso:9031'.
- COMPANY:** Text input field.
- CONTACT NAME:** Text input field.
- CONTACT NUMBER:** Text input field.
- CONTACT EMAIL:** Text input field.
- ERROR MESSAGE:** Text area.
- LOGGING MODE:** Radio buttons for NONE, STANDARD (selected), ENHANCED, and FULL.

Navigation buttons at the bottom right: Cancel, Previous, Next.

- 1601
- 1602 e. On the **Browser SSO** tab, click **Configure Browser SSO**. The Browser SSO setup has  
 1603 multiple sub-pages.
- 1604 i. On the **SAML Profiles** tab, select **SP-Initiated SSO**. The **User-Session Creation**  
 1605 settings are summarized on the **Summary** tab; they extract the user ID and  
 1606 email address from the SAML assertion (Figure 3-24).

1607 Figure 3-24 IdP Connection—User-Session Creation

**IdP Connection | Browser SSO | User-Session Creation**

**Identity Mapping** | Attribute Contract | Target Session Mapping | **Summary**

Summary information for Session Creation configuration. Click a heading link to edit a configuration setting.

**User-Session Creation**

**Identity Mapping**

Enable Account Mapping	true
------------------------	------

**Attribute Contract**

Attribute	SAML_SUBJECT
Attribute	mail
Attribute	uid

**Target Session Mapping**

Adapter instance name	instanceAdapterName
Authentication policy contract name	myContractName

**Adapter Instance**

Selected adapter	instanceAdapterName
------------------	---------------------

**Adapter Data Store**

Attribute location	Use only the attributes available in the SSO Assertion
--------------------	--

**Adapter Contract Fulfillment**

uid	uid (Assertion)
mail	mail (Assertion)
subject	SAML_SUBJECT (Assertion)

**Issuance Criteria**

Criterion	(None)
-----------	--------

**Authentication Policy Contract**

Selected contract	myContractName
-------------------	----------------

**Attribute Retrieval**

Attribute location	Use only the attributes available in the SSO Assertion
--------------------	--

**Contract Fulfillment**

uid	uid (Assertion)
mail	mail (Assertion)
subject	SAML_SUBJECT (Assertion)

**Issuance Criteria**

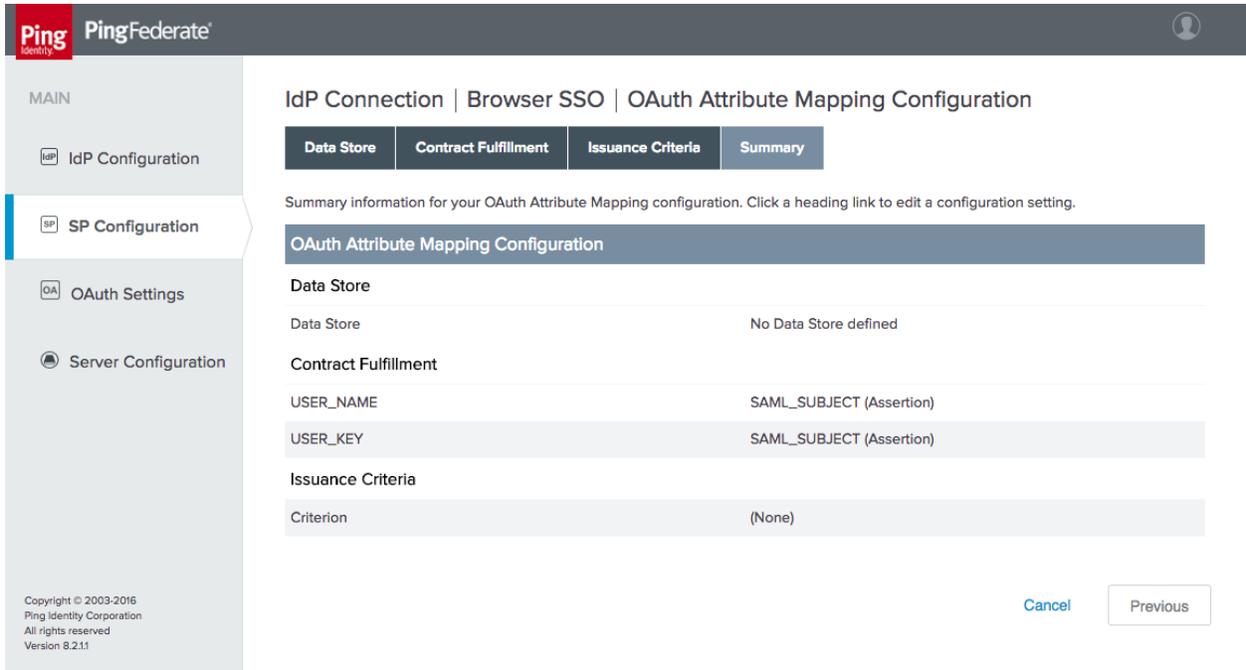
Criterion	(None)
-----------	--------

Cancel Previous

1608

- 1609                                   ii. On the **OAuth Attribute Mapping Configuration** tab, select **MAP DIRECTLY INTO**  
 1610                                   **PERSISTENT GRANT**. Configure the OAuth attribute mapping as shown in Figure  
 1611                                   3-25. This maps both required values in the persistent grant context to the  
 1612                                   SAML subject. Click **Next**, then **Next** again to skip the **Issuance Criteria** tab. Click  
 1613                                   **Save**.

1614 **Figure 3-25 IdP Connection OAuth Attribute Mapping**



- 1615
- 1616                                   iii. Click **Next** to proceed to the **Protocol Settings** tab. The **Protocol Settings**  
 1617                                   configure specifics of the SAML protocol, such as the allowed bindings.  
 1618                                   Configure these as shown in Figure 3-26. When finished, click **Save**, which will  
 1619                                   return you to the **Browser SSO** tab of the **IdP Connection** settings.

1620 **Figure 3-26 IdP Connection–Protocol Settings**

**IdP Connection | Browser SSO | Protocol Settings**

SSO Service URLs | Allowable SAML Bindings | Overrides | Signature Policy | Encryption Policy | Summary

Summary information for your Protocol Settings configuration. Click a heading link to edit a configuration setting.

**Protocol Settings**

**SSO Service URLs**

Endpoint	URL: /ldp/SSO.saml2 (POST)
Endpoint	URL: /ldp/SSO.saml2 (Redirect)

**Allowable SAML Bindings**

Artifact	false
POST	true
Redirect	true
SOAP	false

**Overrides**

**Signature Policy**

Sign AuthN requests over POST and Redirect	false
Require digitally signed SAML Assertion	false

**Encryption Policy**

Status	Inactive
--------	----------

Cancel Previous

1621

1622

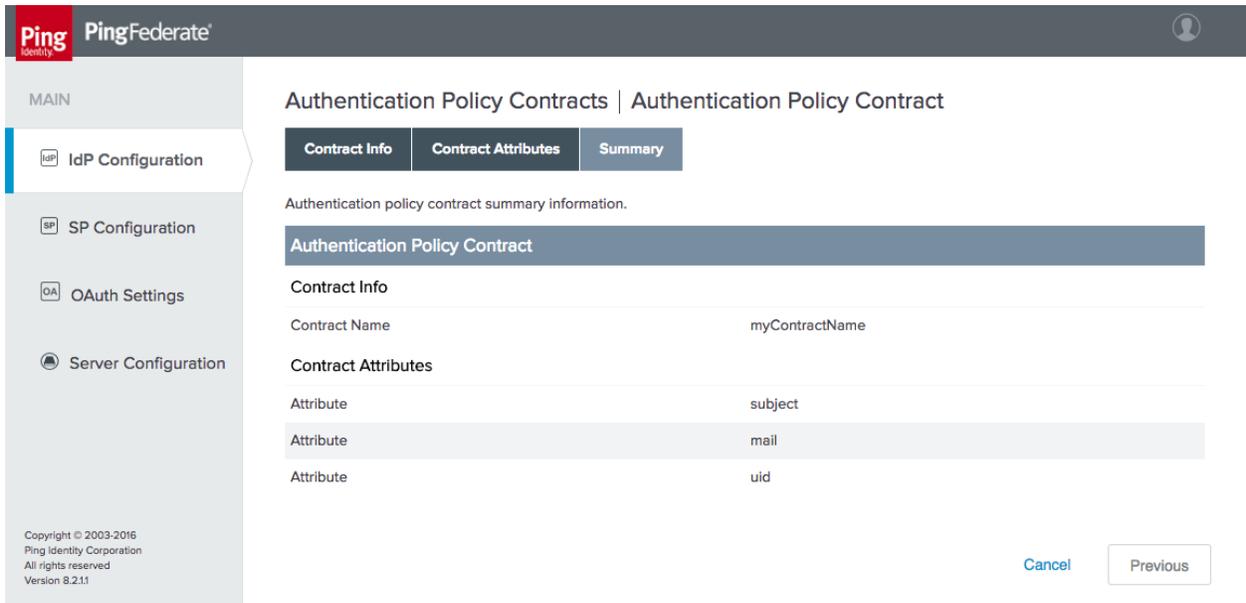
1623

- f. Click **Next**. On the **Credentials** tab, the IdP’s signing certificate can be uploaded. This is not necessary if the certificate is signed by a trusted CA.

1624 **3.4.2.2 Create Policy Contract**

- 1625 1. Create a policy contract as described in [Section 3.4.1.2](#), with the attributes **subject**, **mail**, and **uid**  
 1626 (Figure 3-27).

1627 **Figure 3-27 Policy Contract for SAML RP**



1628

1629 **3.4.2.3 Create Policy Contract Mapping**

- 1630 1. Create an OAuth policy contract mapping for the newly created policy as described in  
 1631 [Section 3.4.1.3](#), mapping **USER\_NAME** and **USER\_KEY** to **subject** (Figure 3-28).

1632 Figure 3-28 Contract Mapping for SAML RP

Copyright © 2003-2016  
Ping Identity Corporation  
All rights reserved  
Version 8.2.11

1633

- 1634 2. To complete the setup for SAML authentication, kspd.msso adapter needs to be included in an  
1635 authentication policy as described in [Section 3.4.4.2](#).

### 1636 3.4.3 How to Configure OIDC Authentication

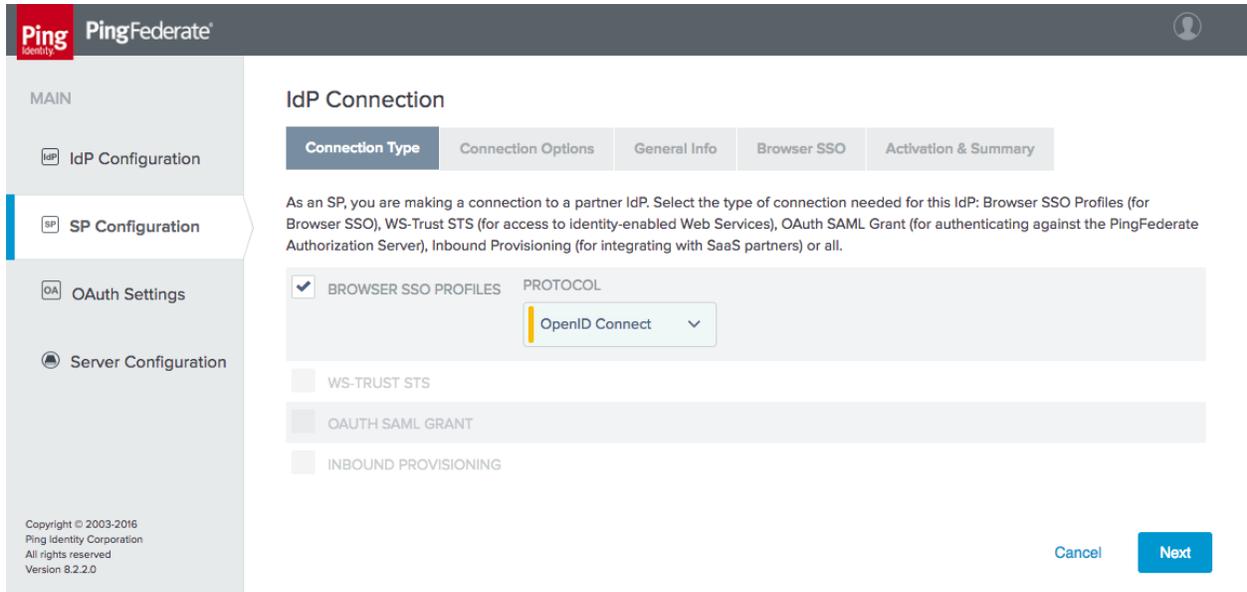
1637 As with the configuration of a SAML IdP connection, integrating the AS with an OIDC IdP requires  
1638 coordination between the administrators of the two systems. The administrator of the IdP must create  
1639 an OIDC client registration before the connection can be configured on the AS side. The AS administrator  
1640 must provide the redirect URI and, if encryption of the ID Token is desired, a public key. Unlike with  
1641 SAML, there is no metadata file to exchange; however, if the IdP supports the OIDC discovery endpoint,  
1642 the client can automatically obtain many of the required configuration settings from the discovery URL.

1643 This section assumes that the AS role and OIDC SP support have been enabled via **Server Settings**, as  
1644 described in [Section 3.4](#). This section also uses the same authentication policy contract as the SAML  
1645 authentication implementation. Create the policy contract as described in [Section 3.4.2.2](#), if it does not  
1646 already exist.

#### 1647 3.4.3.1 Create IdP Connection

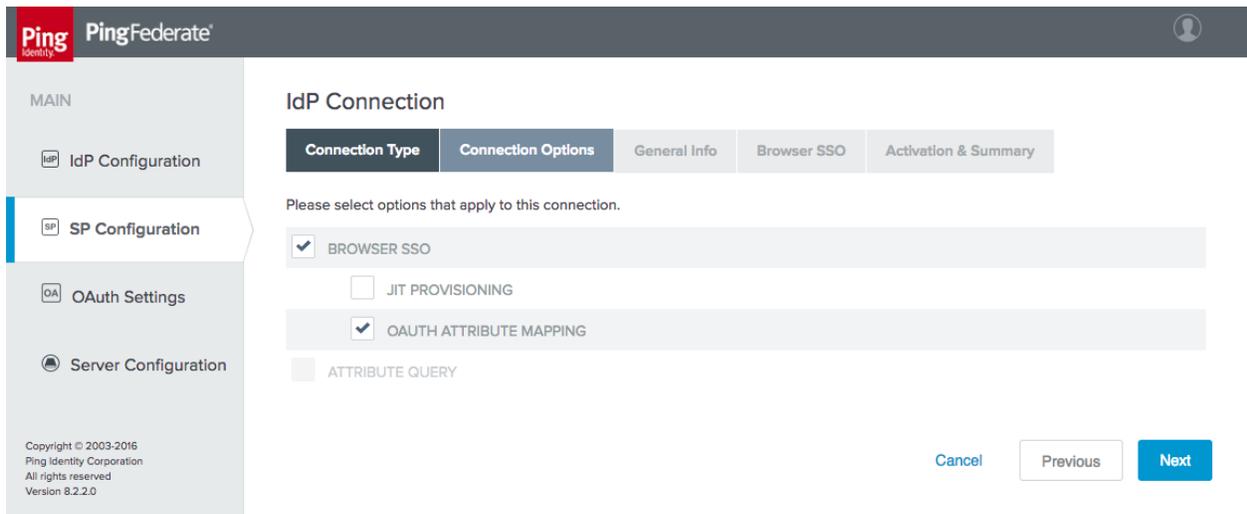
- 1648 1. On the **SP Configuration** section tab, click **Create New** under **IdP Connections**.
- 1649 a. On the **Connection Type** tab, select **BROWSER SSO PROFILES**, and then under it, select  
1650 **OpenID Connect** for the **PROTOCOL** (Figure 3-29).

1651 **Figure 3-29 IdP Connection Type**



- 1652
- 1653                   b. On the **Connection Options** tab, select **BROWSER SSO**, and then under it, select **OAUTH**
- 1654                   **ATTRIBUTE MAPPING** (Figure 3-30).

1655 **Figure 3-30 IdP Connection Options**



- 1656
- 1657                   c. On the **General Info** tab, enter the **ISSUER** value for the IdP (Figure 3-31). This is the
- 1658                   **BASE URL** setting available on the **Federation Info** tab, under the **Server Configuration**
- 1659                   section tab on the IdP. Then click **Load Metadata**, which causes the AS to query the IdP’s
- 1660                   discovery endpoint. The message “Metadata successfully loaded” should appear.

1661 Provide a **CONNECTION NAME**, and enter the **CLIENT ID** and **CLIENT SECRET** provided by  
 1662 the IdP administrator.

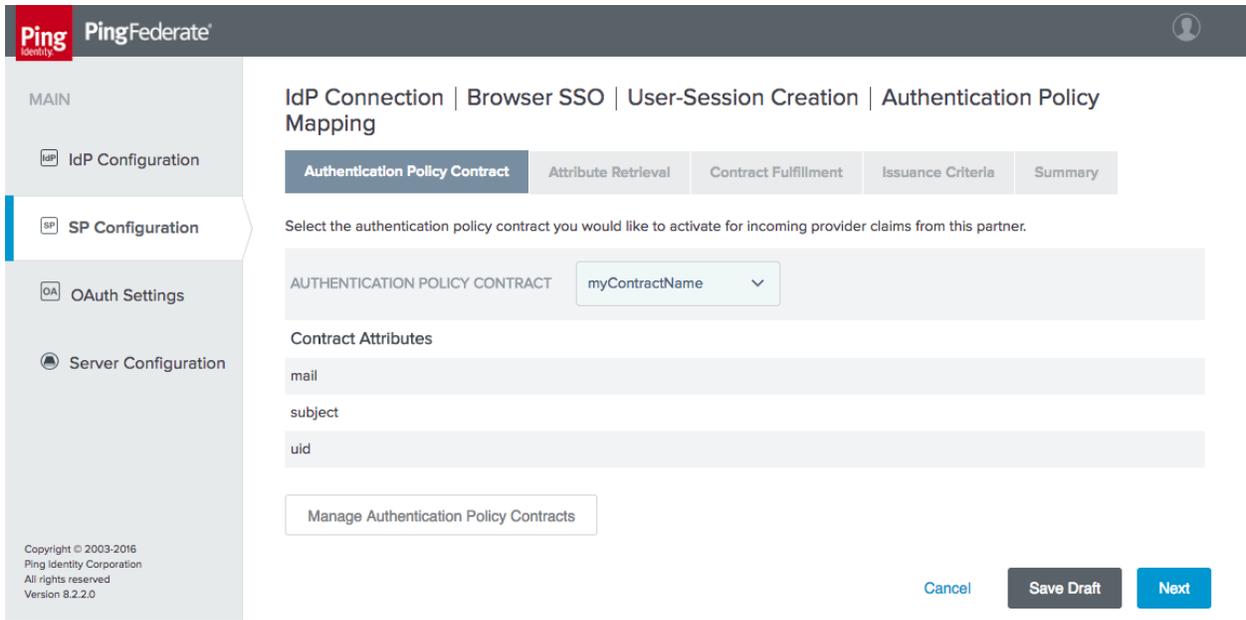
1663 **Figure 3-31 IdP Connection General Info**

The screenshot displays the 'IdP Connection' configuration page in PingFederate. The 'General Info' tab is active, showing various fields for configuring the connection. The Issuer field is populated with 'https://op1.lpsd.mso:9031' and has a 'Load Metadata' button next to it, with a message 'Metadata successfully loaded.' The Connection Name field contains 'op1.lpsd.mso', the Client ID field contains 'MotorolaAS', and the Client Secret field is masked with dots. Other fields like Base URL, Company, Contact Name, Contact Number, and Contact Email are empty. The Error Message field contains 'errorDetail.spSsoFailure'. The Logging Mode is set to 'STANDARD'.

- 1664
- 1665 d. On the **Browser SSO** tab, click **Configure Browser SSO**, then click **Configure User-**  
 1666 **Session Creation**. The **User-Session Creation** page will appear.
- 1667 i. On the **Target Session Mapping** tab, click **Map New Authentication Policy**.

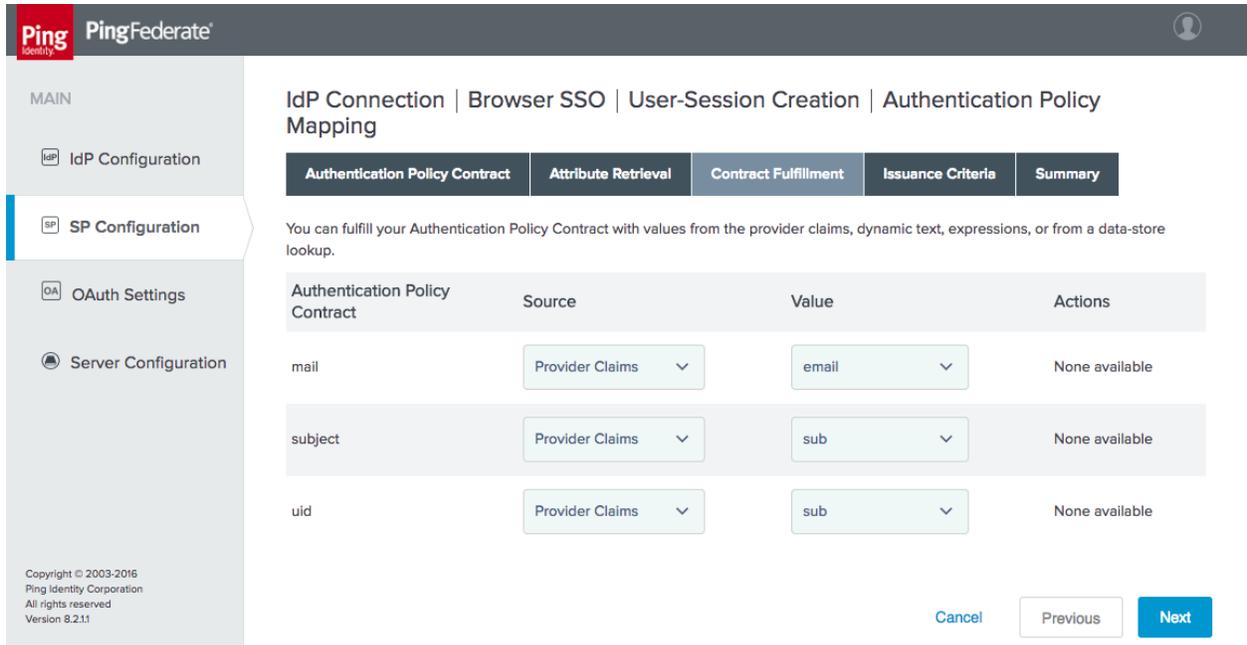
- 1668 ii. On the **Authentication Policy Contract** tab, select the **AUTHENTICATION POLICY**
- 1669 **CONTRACT** created in [Section 3.4.2.2](#) (in the example shown in Figure 3-32, it is
- 1670 called **myContractName**). If the policy contract has not been created, click
- 1671 **Manage Authentication Policy Contracts**, and create it now.

1672 **Figure 3-32 IdP Connection Authentication Policy Contract**



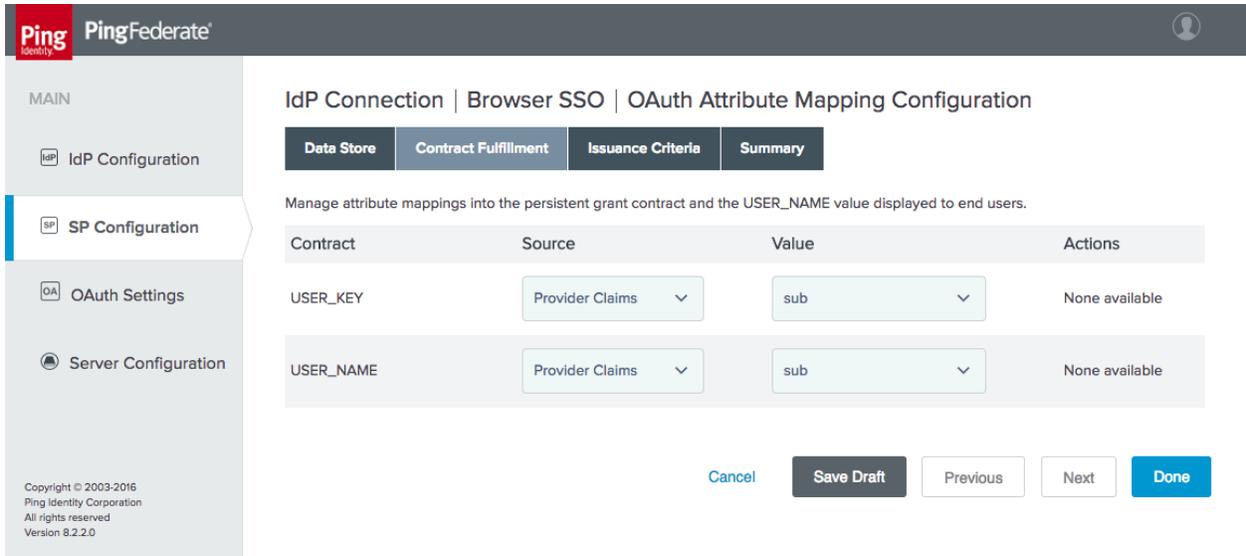
- 1673
- 1674 iii. On the **Attribute Retrieval** tab, leave the default setting (use only the attributes
- 1675 available in the provider claims).
- 1676 iv. On the **Contract Fulfillment** tab, map the **mail**, **subject**, and **uid** attributes to the
- 1677 **email**, **sub**, and **sub** provider claims (Figure 3-33).

1678 **Figure 3-33 IdP Connection Policy Contract Mapping**



- 1679
- 1680 v. No **Issuance Criteria** were configured; therefore, skip the **Issuance Criteria** tab.
- 1681 vi. Click **Next**, then **Done**, and then click **Done** again to exit the **User-Session**
- 1682 **Creation** tab.
- 1683 vii. On the **OAuth Attribute Mapping Configuration** tab, select **Map Directly into**
- 1684 **Persistent Grant**, and then click **Configure OAuth Attribute Mapping**.
- 1685 viii. Click **Next** to skip the Data Store tab. On the **Contract Fulfillment** tab, map both
- 1686 **USER\_NAME** and **USER\_KEY** to the **sub** provider claim (Figure 3-34).

1687 **Figure 3-34 IdP Connection OAuth Attribute Mapping**



1688

1689

1690

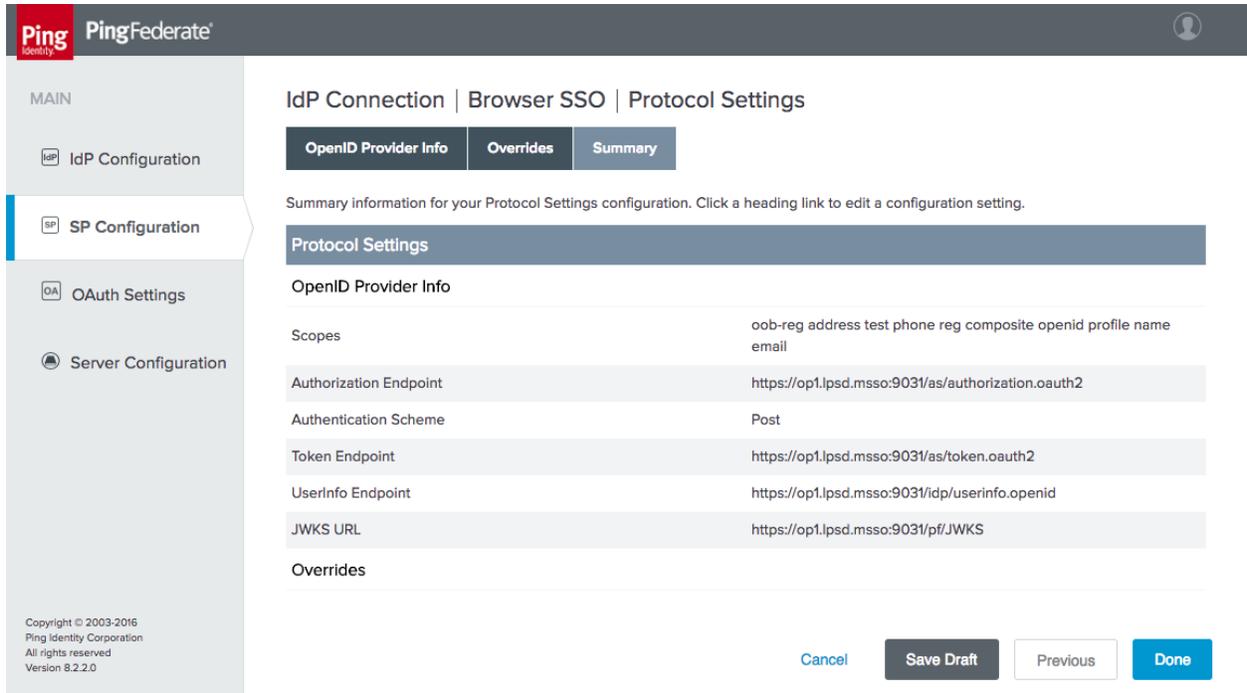
1691

1692

1693

- ix. Click **Done** to exit the **OAuth Attribute Mapping Configuration** setup. The **Protocol Settings** should be automatically populated through the information gathered from the discovery endpoint (Figure 3-35). If necessary, the scopes to be requested can be customized on the **Protocol Settings** tab; in the lab, these settings were left at the default.

1694 **Figure 3-35 IdP Connection Protocol Settings**



1695

1696

x. Click **Done** to exit the **Browser SSO** configuration setup.

1697

e. On the **Activation & Summary** tab, a **Redirect URI** will be generated (Figure 3-36).

1698

Provide this information to the IdP administrator, as it needs to be configured in the OpenID Client settings on the IdP side.

1699

1700

i. The **Connection Status** can also be configured to **ACTIVE** or **INACTIVE** on this tab.

1701

1702 **Figure 3-36 IdP Connection Activation and Summary**

Copyright © 2003-2016  
Ping Identity Corporation  
All rights reserved  
Version 8.2.11

**IdP Connection**

Summary information for your IdP connection. Click a heading in a section to edit a particular configuration setting.

Connection Status:  ACTIVE  INACTIVE

Redirect URI: <https://idm.sandbox.motorolasolutions.com/sp/eyJpc3MIOJodHRwcZpL1wv3AxLmxc2QubXNzbo5MDMxIn0/cb.openid>

**Summary**

IdP Connection	
<b>Connection Type</b>	
Connection Role	IdP
Browser SSO Profiles	true
Protocol	OpenID Connect
WS-Trust STS	false
OAuth SAML Grant	false
Inbound Provisioning	false

1703

1704 f. Click **Save** to complete the **IdP Connection** setup.1705 

### 3.4.3.2 Create the Policy Contract Mapping

1706 The same policy contract mapping created earlier for the SAML integration can also be used for OIDC  
 1707 integration, as the attribute names are identical. If this policy contract mapping has not already been  
 1708 created, refer to [Section 3.4.2.3](#) to create it.

1709 

## 3.4.4 How to Configure the Authentication Policy

1710 

### 3.4.4.1 Install the Domain Selector Plugin

1711 When a single AS is integrated with multiple IdPs, it needs a means of determining which IdP can  
 1712 authenticate each user. In the lab build, a domain selector is used to determine whether the AS should  
 1713 authenticate the user locally, redirect to the SAML IdP, or redirect to the OIDC IdP. The domain selector  
 1714 prompts the user to enter the user's email address or domain. The specified domain is used to select  
 1715 which branch of the authentication policy should be applied. Upon successful authentication, the  
 1716 domain selector sets a cookie in the browser to record the domain selection to avoid prompting the user  
 1717 each time that the user authenticates.

1718 PingFederate includes sample code for a Domain Selector plugin. Before the Domain Selector can be  
 1719 used in an authentication policy, it must be built. The source code for the selector is located under the  
 1720 PingFederate directory, in the directory `sdk/plugin-src/authentication-selector-example`.

1721 1. Complete the following steps to build the selector:

1722 a. Edit the `build.local.properties` file in the PingFederate SDK directory to set the  
 1723 target plugin as follows:

1724 `target-plugin.name=authentication-selector-example`

1725 b. Run the following commands to build and install the plugin:

1726 `$ ant clean-plugin`

1727 `$ ant jar-plugin`

1728 `$ ant deploy-plugin`

1729 `$ sudo service pingfederate restart`

1730 2. Once installed, the Domain Selector can be configured with the required values. On the **IdP**  
 1731 **Configuration** section tab, click **Selectors** under **Authentication Policies**.

1732 3. Click **Create New Instance**.

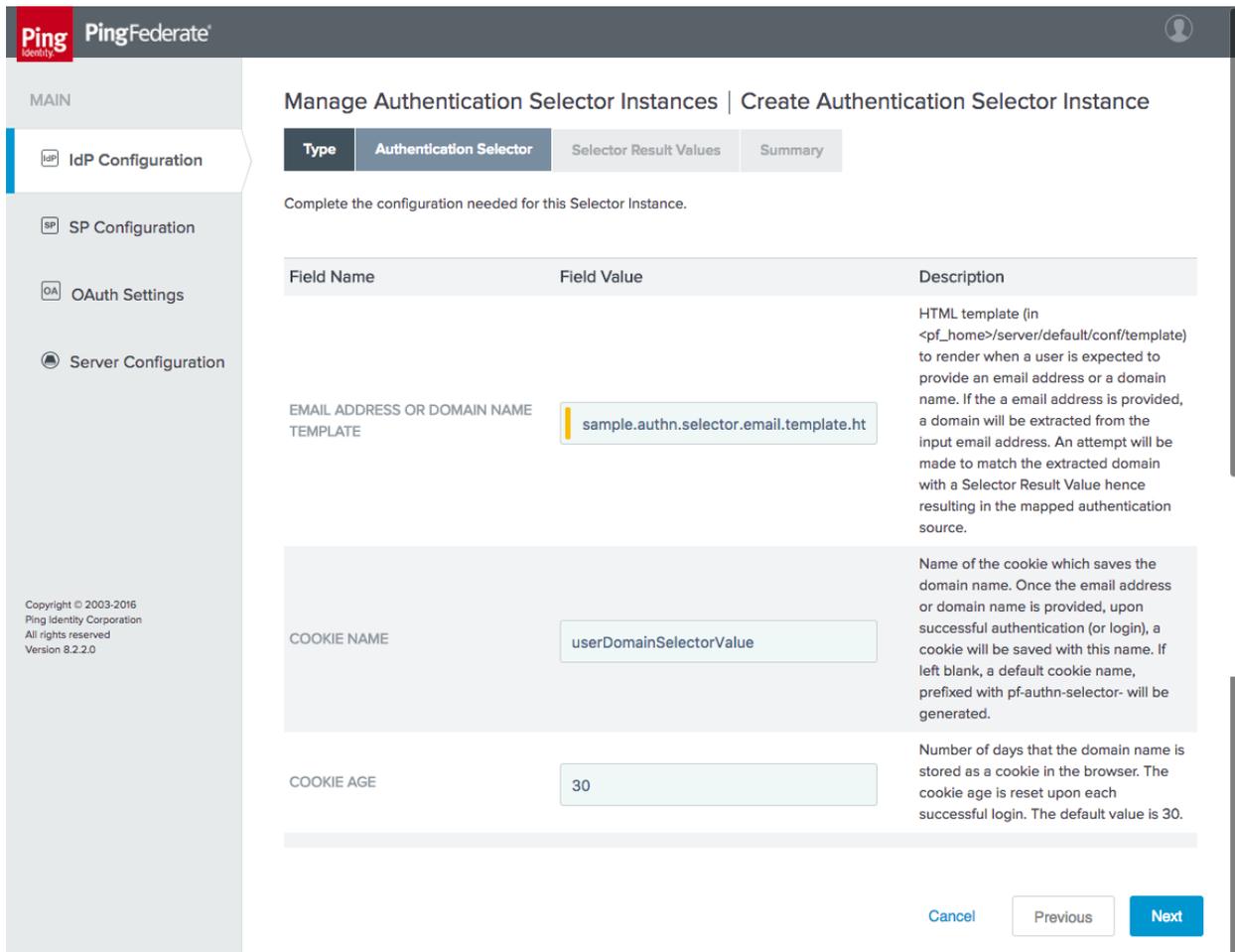
1733 a. On the **Type** tab, provide a meaningful name and ID for the selector instance (Figure  
 1734 3-37). For the **TYPE**, select **Domain Authentication Selector**.

1735 **Figure 3-37 Authentication Selector Instance**

1736

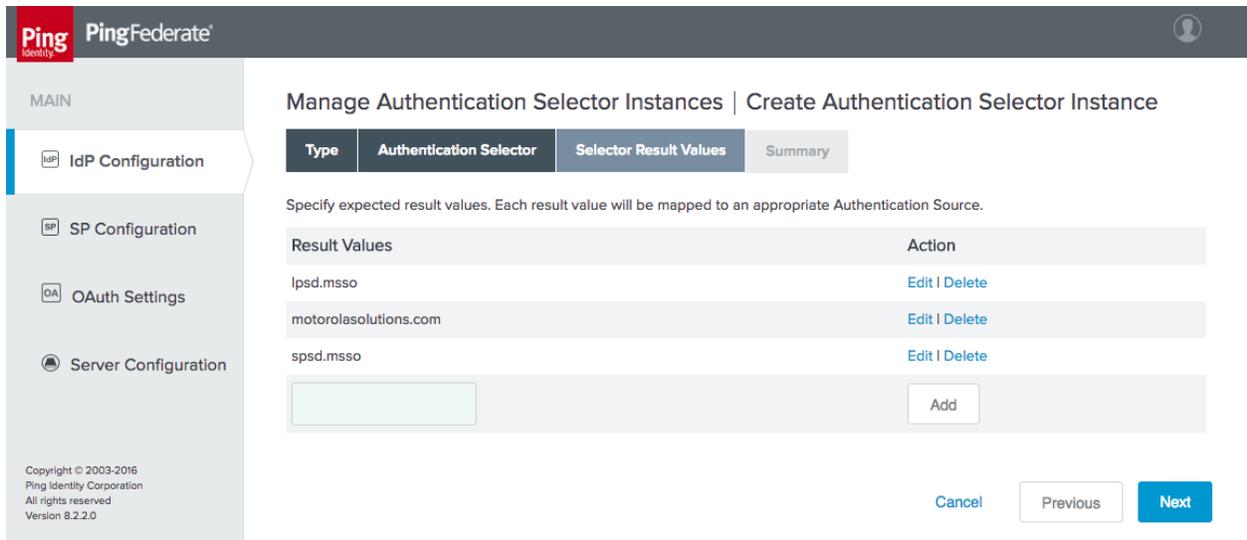
- 1737                    b. The next tab, **Authentication Selector**, prompts for the HyperText Markup Language  
 1738 (HTML) template for the page that will prompt the user to enter the domain or email  
 1739 address (Figure 3-38). The default value will use the template delivered with the  
 1740 adapter; if desired, a custom template can be used instead to modify the appearance of  
 1741 the page. Provide a cookie name, which will be used to persist the domain selection.  
 1742 Finally, the age of the cookie can be modified. By default, users will be prompted again  
 1743 to enter their domain after 30 days.

1744 **Figure 3-38 Authentication Selector Details**



- 1745
- 1746                    c. On the **Selector Result Values** tab, specify the expected domain values (Figure 3-39).  
 1747 When the domain selector is used in an access policy, different policy branches will be  
 1748 created for each of these values. In this case, if the domain is *motorolasolutions.com*,  
 1749 the user will be authenticated locally; if it is *lpsd.msso* or *spsd.msso*, the user will be  
 1750 redirected to the corresponding IdP to authenticate.

1751 **Figure 3-39 Selector Result Values**



1752

1753 d. Click **Done**, and then click **Save** to complete the selector configuration.

1754 **3.4.4.2 Define the Authentication Policy**

1755 1. On the IdP Configuration page, click **Policies** under **Authentication Policies**.

1756 a. Select the three checkboxes at the top of the **Manage Authentication Policies** page,  
1757 which are shown in Figure 3-40.

1758 **Figure 3-40 Policy Settings**



1759

1760 b. Select the **Domain Selector** as the first element in the policy (Figure 3-41). This will  
1761 create policy branches for the three values defined for the policy selector.

1762 i. Select the corresponding authentication mechanism for each domain. The  
1763 example shown in Figure 3-41 uses the IdP connections for the **lpsd.msso** and  
1764 **spsd.msso**, as well as the “fidoonly” adapter for local authentication of users in  
1765 the **motorolasolutions.com** domain.

1766 **Figure 3-41 Authentication Policy**

The screenshot displays an authentication policy configuration interface with three rows of settings:

- Row 1:** DomainSelector - (Selec v, lpsd.msso, op1.lpsd.msso - (IdP v, Fail, -- DONE -- v. Below the connection type dropdown is an "Options" link. Below the failure action is a "Success Rules" link and a "myContractName v" dropdown with a "Contract Mapping" link below it.
- Row 2:** motorolasolutions.com, fidoonly - (Adapter) v, Fail, -- DONE -- v. Below the connection type dropdown is an "Options" link. Below the failure action is a "Success Rules" link and a "fidoAuthContract v" dropdown with a "Contract Mapping" link below it.
- Row 3:** spsd.msso, idp1.spsd.msso - (Id v, Fail, -- DONE -- v. Below the connection type dropdown is an "Options" link. Below the failure action is a "Success Rules" link and a "myContractName v" dropdown with a "Contract Mapping" link below it.

1767

1768

1769

1770

- ii. There is no need to specify **Options** or **Success Rules**. For the two IdP connections, apply the **myContractName** policy contract upon success, with the contract mapping configured as shown in Figure 3-42.

1771 Figure 3-42 Policy Contract Mapping for IdP Connections

Copyright © 2003-2016  
Ping Identity Corporation  
All rights reserved  
Version 8.2.1.1

1772

1773

1774

- c. For the “fidoonly” adapter, apply the **fidoAuthContract** with the contract mapping shown in Figure 3-43.

1775 **Figure 3-43 Policy Contract Mapping for Local Authentication**

Copyright © 2003-2016  
Ping Identity Corporation  
All rights reserved  
Version 8.2.1.1

1776

1777 This completes the configuration of the AS.

1778 

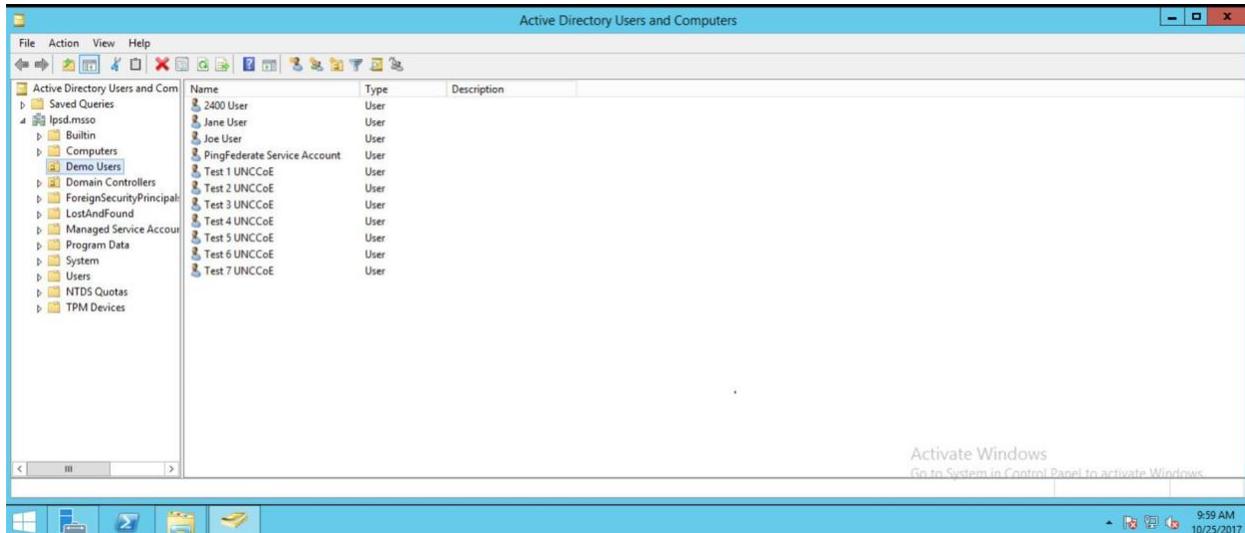
## 4 How to Install and Configure the Identity Providers

1779 PingFederate 8.3.2.0 was used for the SAML and OIDC IdP installs. The system requirements and  
 1780 installation process for PingFederate are identical to the OAuth AS installation documentation in  
 1781 [Section 3.1](#) and [Section 3.2](#). The IdP configuration sections pick up the installation process after the  
 1782 software has been installed, at the selection of roles and protocols.

1783 

### 4.1 How to Configure the User Store

1784 Each IdP uses its own AD forest as a user store. AD was chosen due to its widespread use across many  
 1785 organizations. For the purposes of this project, any LDAP directory could have served the same purpose,  
 1786 but in a typical organization, AD would be used for other functions, such as workstation login and  
 1787 authorization to applications, shared drives, printers, and other services. The **Active Directory Users and  
 1788 Computers** console (Figure 4-1) was used to create user accounts and set attributes.

1789 **Figure 4-1 Active Directory Users and Computers**

1790

1791 In addition to the user accounts that log in to the lab applications, a service account must be created to  
 1792 enable the IdP to access and query the AD. This user's LDAP Distinguished Name (DN) and password (in  
 1793 the example shown in Figure 4-1) are used in the PingFederate directory integration described below.

1794 The procedure for connecting a PingFederate IdP to an LDAP directory is the same for a SAML or OIDC  
 1795 IdP. Documentation is provided at  
 1796 [https://documentation.pingidentity.com/pingfederate/pf82/index.shtml#concept\\_configuringLdapConn](https://documentation.pingidentity.com/pingfederate/pf82/index.shtml#concept_configuringLdapConnection.html)  
 1797 [ection.html](https://documentation.pingidentity.com/pingfederate/pf82/index.shtml#concept_configuringLdapConnection.html).

1798 1. To start the process, click the **Server Configuration** section tab on the left side of the  
 1799 PingFederate administrative console. The screen shown in Figure 4-2 will appear.

1800 **Figure 4-2 Server Configuration**



1801

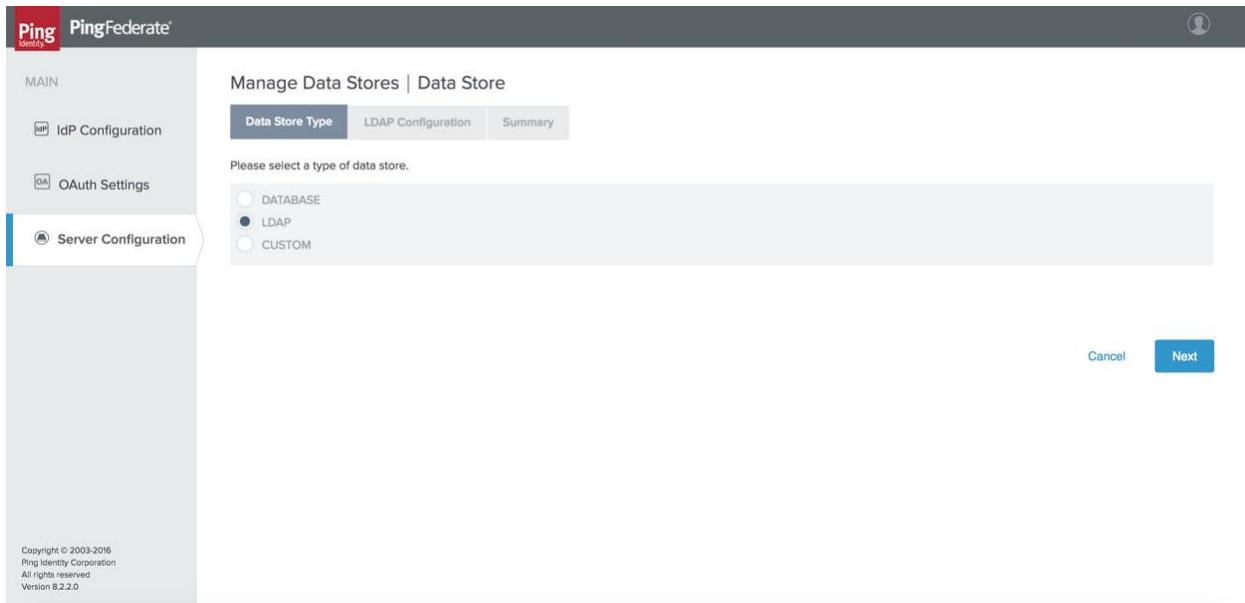
1802 2. Click **Data Stores** under **SYSTEM SETTINGS**.

1803 3. On the next screen, click **Add New Data Store**.

1804 a. The screen shown in Figure 4-3 will appear. On the **Data Store Type** tab, select **LDAP** for  
 1805 the data store type.

1806 i. Click **Next**.

1807 Figure 4-3 Data Store Type



1808

1809

1810

1811

1812

- b. On the **LDAP Configuration** tab, enter the connection parameters for your AD or LDAP environment (Figure 4-4). Some notes on the fields on this tab are provided below. Click **Save** to exit the LDAP configuration screen once the required settings have been entered.

1813

1814

1815

1816

1817

1818

1819

1820

1821

1822

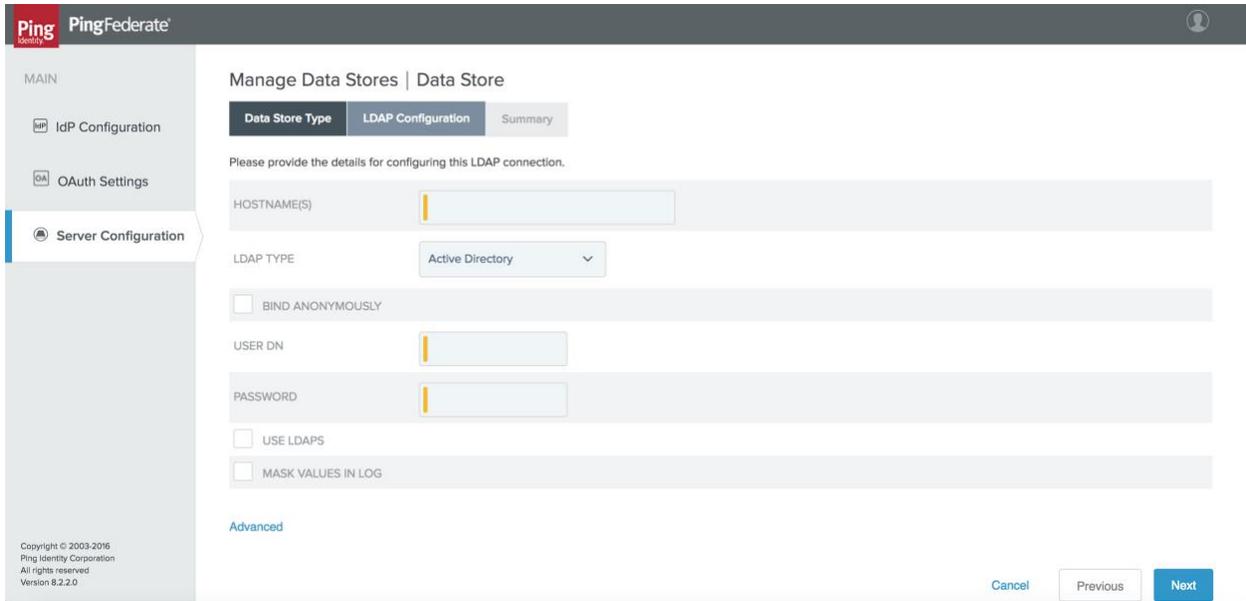
1823

1824

1825

- **HOST NAME(S):** Enter the Fully Qualified Domain Name (FQDN) or the complete Internet Protocol (IP) address of an AD domain controller. A port number can be specified if AD is running on non-standard ports.
- **LDAP TYPE:** This is the LDAP server in use—AD in this case.
- **BIND ANONYMOUSLY:** For AD environments, allowing anonymous BIND (Berkeley Internet Name Domain) is not recommended.
- **USER DN:** This is the Distinguished Name of the PingFederate user account created in AD; in this build architecture, this account is used only for querying AD, so it does not require any special privileges.
- **PASSWORD:** This is the password for the PingFederate AD user.
- **USE LDAPS:** This can be enabled if AD is configured to serve LDAP over TLS.
- **MASK VALUES IN LOG:** This prevents attributes returned from this data source from being exposed in server logs.

1826 **Figure 4-4 LDAP Data Store Configuration**

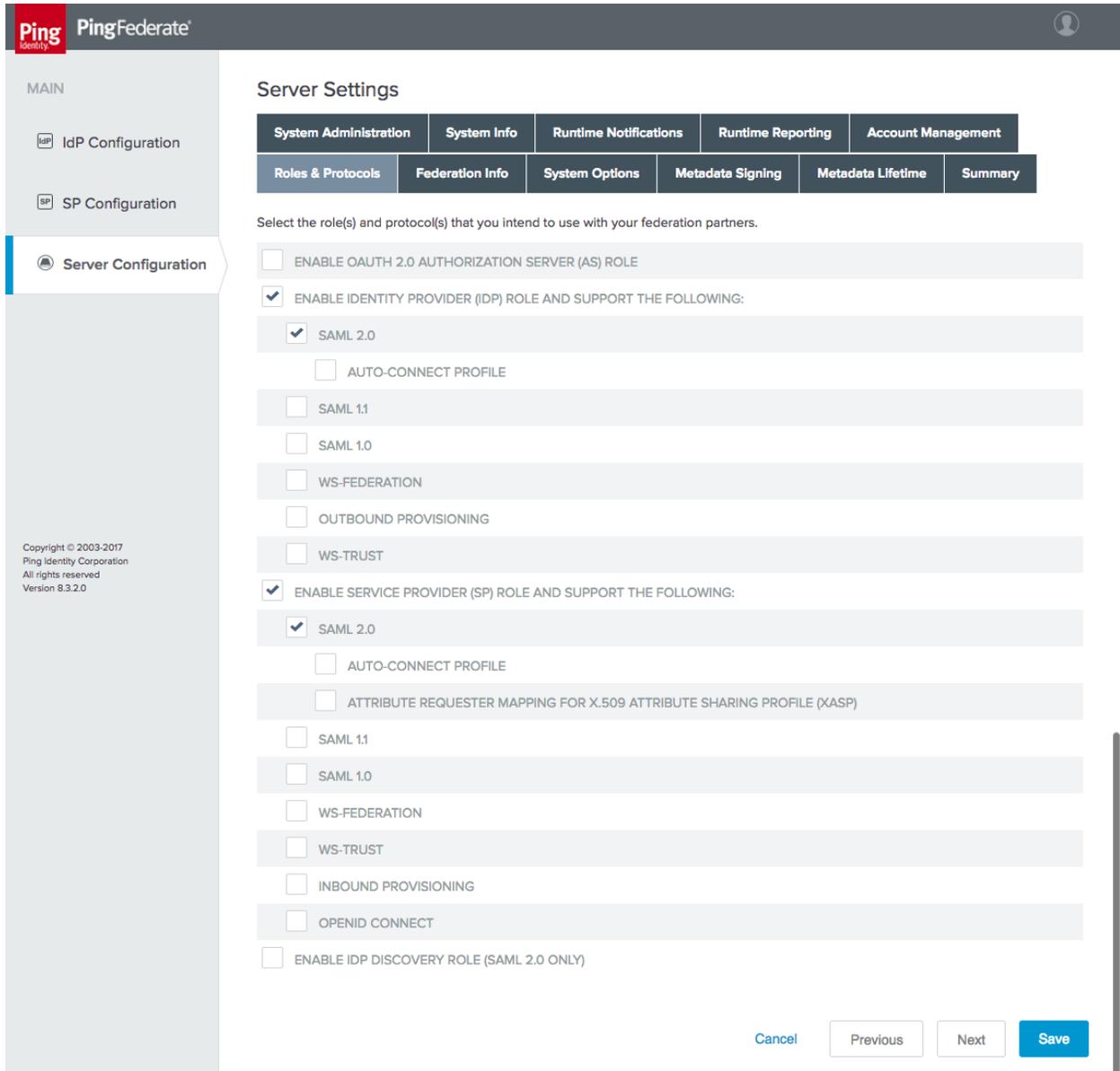


1827

## 1828 4.2 How to Install and Configure the SAML Identity Provider

- 1829 1. On the **Server Configuration** screen, click **Server Settings**.
- 1830 a. On the **Roles & Protocols** tab, enable roles and protocols to configure the server as a
- 1831 SAML IdP (Figure 4-5).

1832 Figure 4-5 Server Roles for SAML IdP



1833

1834

1835

1836

1837

- b. On the **Federation Info** tab, specify the **BASE URL** and **SAML 2.0 ENTITY ID** of the IdP (Figure 4-6). The **BASE URL** should be a URL resolvable by your mobile clients. The **ENTITY ID** should be a meaningful name that is unique among federation partners; in this case, the FQDN of the server is used.

1838 Figure 4-6 SAML IdP Federation Info

**Ping** PingFederate

MAIN

- IdP Configuration
- SP Configuration
- Server Configuration**

Copyright © 2003-2017  
Ping Identity Corporation  
All rights reserved  
Version 8.3.2.0

### Server Settings

System Administration	System Info	Runtime Notifications	Runtime Reporting	Account Management	
Roles & Protocols	<b>Federation Info</b>	System Options	Metadata Signing	Metadata Lifetime	Summary

You must create a unique identifier for your server for use with your federation partners. A unique identifier is required for each protocol enabled. You will need to communicate this with your partners out-of-band or through metadata exchange. The Base URL is used to construct other URLs in the system and may be used as part of your system ID.

BASE URL

SAML 2.0 ENTITY ID

Cancel Previous Next **Save**

1839

## 1840 4.2.1 Configuring Authentication to the IdP

1841 This example configures an authentication policy that requires the user to authenticate with username  
1842 and password and then with a FIDO U2F token.

### 1843 4.2.1.1 Configure the Password Validator

- 1844 1. On the **Server Configuration** section tab, click **Password Credential Validators** under  
1845 **Authentication**.
- 1846 2. Click **Create New Instance**.
  - 1847 a. On the **Type** tab, for the **TYPE**, choose **LDAP Username Password Credential Validator**  
1848 (Figure 4-7). This example will authenticate AD usernames and passwords by using the  
1849 AD data store defined in [Section 4.1](#).

1850 **Figure 4-7 Create Password Credential Validator**

**Ping Identity PingFederate**

MAIN

- IdP Configuration
- SP Configuration
- Server Configuration**

Manage Credential Validator Instances | Create Credential Validator Instance

Type Instance Configuration Extended Contract Summary

Identify this Credential Validator Instance. The Validator types available are limited to the plug-in implementations currently installed on your server.

INSTANCE NAME Password Validator

INSTANCE ID PasswordValidator

TYPE LDAP Username Password Credential Validator

Visit [PingIdentity.com](http://PingIdentity.com) for additional types

PARENT INSTANCE None

Cancel Next

Copyright © 2003-2017  
Ping Identity Corporation  
All rights reserved  
Version 8.3.2.0

1851

1852

1853

1854

1855

- b. On the **Instance Configuration** tab, specify the parameters for searching the LDAP directory for user accounts (Figure 4-8). Select the data store created in [Section 4.1](#), and enter the appropriate search base and filter. This example will search for a *sAMAccountName* matching the username entered on the login form.

1856 **Figure 4-8 Credential Validator Configuration**

**Manage Credential Validator Instances | Create Credential Validator Instance**

**Type** | Instance Configuration | Extended Contract | Summary

Complete the configuration necessary for this Password Credential Validator to check username/password pairs. This configuration was designed into, and is specific to, the selected Credential Validator plug-in.

This password credential validator provides a means of verifying credentials stored in a directory server via the LDAP protocol. Additional user attributes from the directory can also be returned by this PCV by adding the desired attribute names to the Extended Contract.

**AUTHENTICATION ERROR OVERRIDES**  
 (A table of LDAP authentication error codes and customized matching expressions that will match the error code to an LDAP error message. These entries override the default individual mappings of messages to codes. Use the localization features to customize the error messages displayed to end users.)

**MATCH EXPRESSION**  
 (The expression matched against the LDAP error message returned by the server.)

ERROR Action

[Add a new row to 'Authentication Error Overrides'](#)

Field Name	Field Value	Description
LDAP DATASTORE	dc1.spsd.msso	Select the LDAP Datastore.
SEARCH BASE	OU=Demo Users,DC=spsd,DC=msso	The location in the directory from which the LDAP search begins.
SEARCH FILTER	sAMAccountName=\${username}	You may use \${username} as part of the query. Example (for Active Directory): sAMAccountName=\${username}.
SCOPE OF SEARCH	<input type="radio"/> One Level <input checked="" type="radio"/> Subtree	
CASE-SENSITIVE MATCHING	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Allows case-sensitive expression and LDAP error matching.

Manage Data Stores | [Show Advanced Fields](#)

Cancel | Previous | Next | **Done**

1857

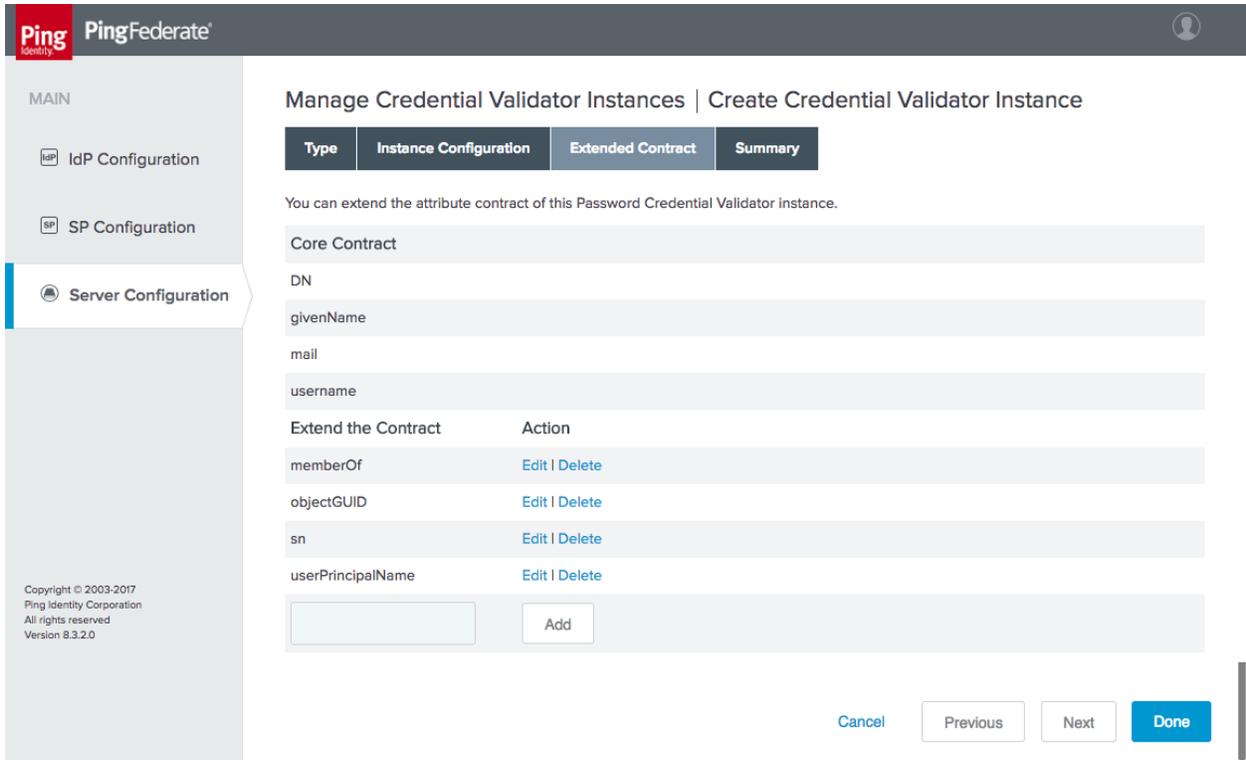
1858

1859

1860

- c. The **Extended Contract** tab enables the retrieval of additional attributes from the LDAP server, which can be used in assertions to RPs (Figure 4-9). The example shown in Figure 4-9 adds several AD attributes to the contract.

1861 Figure 4-9 Password Credential Validator Extended Contract



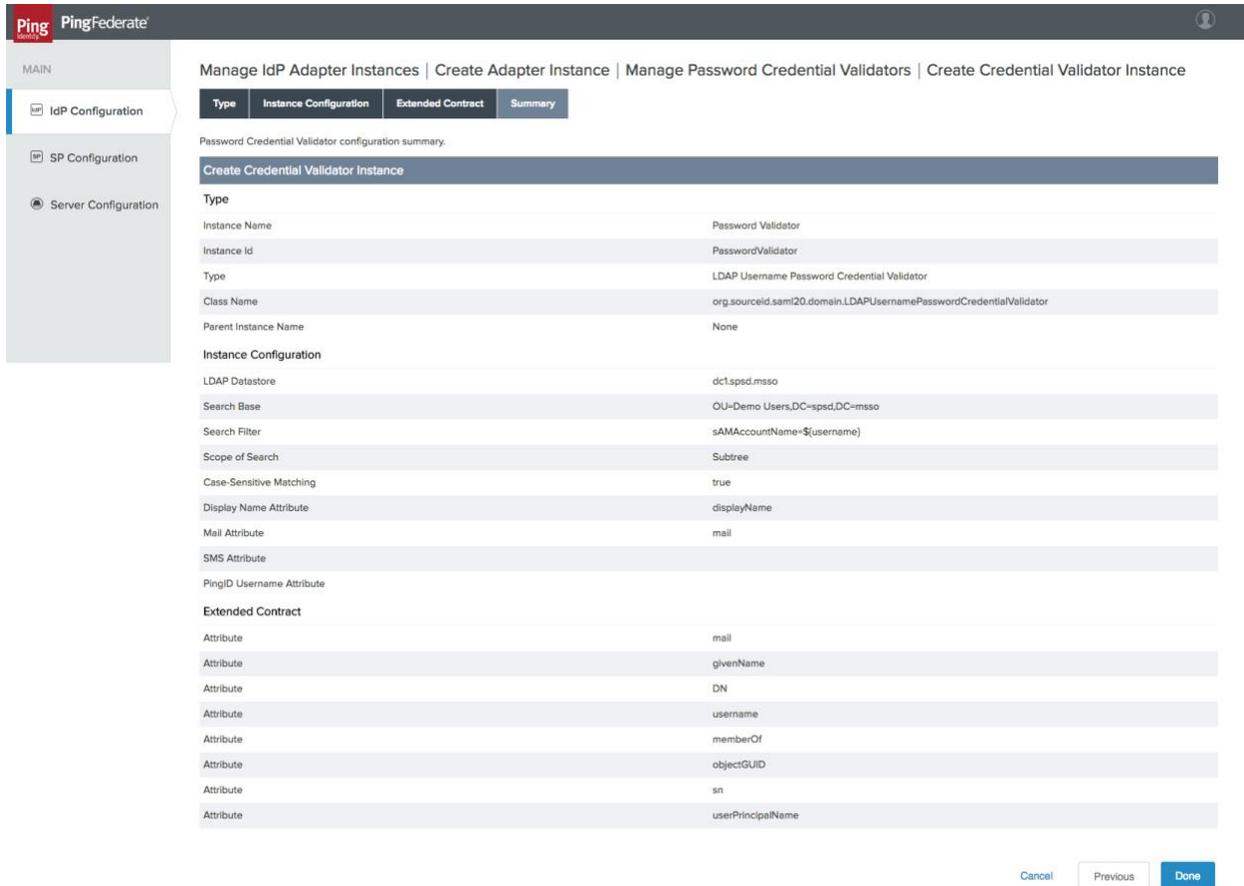
1862

1863

1864

- d. Finally, the **Summary** tab shows all of the values for the configured validator (Figure 4-10).

1865 **Figure 4-10 Password Validator Summary**

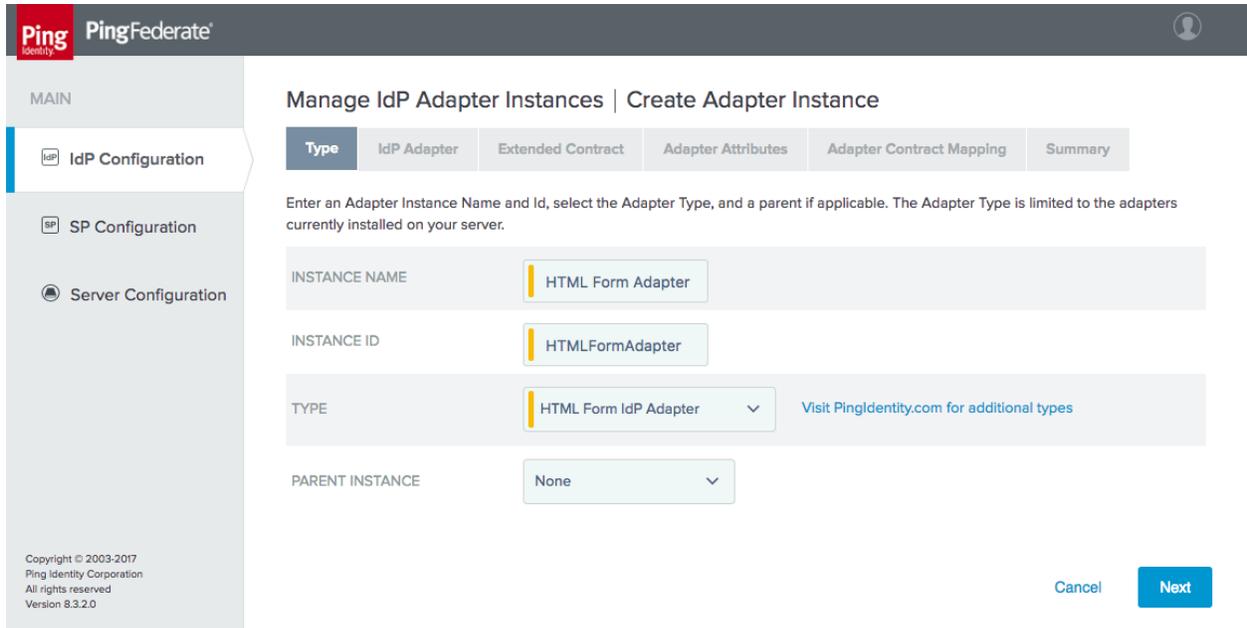


- 1866
- 1867 e. Click **Done**, and then click **Save** to complete the setup of the password validator.

1868 **4.2.1.2 Configure the HTML Form Adapter**

- 1869 1. On the **IdP Configuration** section tab, click **Adapters**.
- 1870 2. Click **Create New Instance**.
- 1871 a. On the **Type** tab, create the name and ID of the adapter, and select the **HTML Form IdP**
- 1872 **Adapter** for the **TYPE** (Figure 4-11).

1873 Figure 4-11 HTML Form Adapter Instance



1874

1875

1876

1877

1878

1879

- b. On the **IdP Adapter** tab, add the **Password Validator** instance created in the previous section (Figure 4-12). This tab provides several options for customizing the login page and supporting password resets and password recovery that would be relevant to a Production deployment. In the lab, password resets were not supported, and these fields were left at their default values.

1880 Figure 4-12 Form Adapter Settings

**Manage IdP Adapter Instances | Create Adapter Instance**

Complete the configuration necessary to look up user security contexts in your environment. This configuration was designed into the adapter for use at your site.

**CREDENTIAL VALIDATORS**  
(A list of Password Credential Validators to be used for authentication.)

PASSWORD CREDENTIAL VALIDATOR INSTANCE	Action
<input type="text" value="Password Validator"/>	<a href="#">Edit</a> <a href="#">Delete</a>

[Add a new row to 'Credential Validators'](#)

Field Name	Field Value	Description
CHALLENGE RETRIES	<input type="text" value="3"/>	Max value of User Challenge Retries.
SESSION STATE	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Globally <input type="radio"/> Per Adapter <input type="radio"/> None	Determines how state is maintained within one adapter or between different adapter instances.
SESSION TIMEOUT	<input type="text" value="60"/>	Session Idle Timeout (in minutes). If left blank the timeout will be the Session Max Timeout. Ignored if 'None' is selected for Session State.
SESSION MAX TIMEOUT	<input type="text" value="480"/>	Session Max Timeout (in minutes). Leave blank for indefinite sessions. Ignored if 'None' is selected for Session State.
ALLOW PASSWORD CHANGES	<input type="checkbox"/>	Allows users to change their password using this adapter.
PASSWORD MANAGEMENT SYSTEM	<input type="text"/>	A fully-qualified URL to your password management system where users can change their password. If left blank, password changes are handled by this adapter.
ENABLE 'REMEMBER MY USERNAME'	<input type="checkbox"/>	Allows users to store their username as a cookie when authenticating with this adapter. Once stored, the username is pre-populated in the login form's username field on subsequent transactions.
CHANGE PASSWORD EMAIL NOTIFICATION	<input type="checkbox"/>	Send users an email notification upon a password change. This feature relies on the underlying PCV returning 'mail' and 'givenName' attributes containing the user's first name and e-mail address. Additionally, mail settings should be configured within Server Settings.
SHOW PASSWORD EXPIRING WARNING	<input type="checkbox"/>	Show a warning message to the user on login about an approaching password expiration.
PASSWORD RESET TYPE	<input type="radio"/> Email One-Time Link <input type="radio"/> Email One-Time Password <input type="radio"/> PingID <input type="radio"/> Text Message <input checked="" type="radio"/> None	Select the method to use for self-service password reset. Depending on the selected method, additional settings are required to complete the configuration.

[Show Advanced Fields](#)

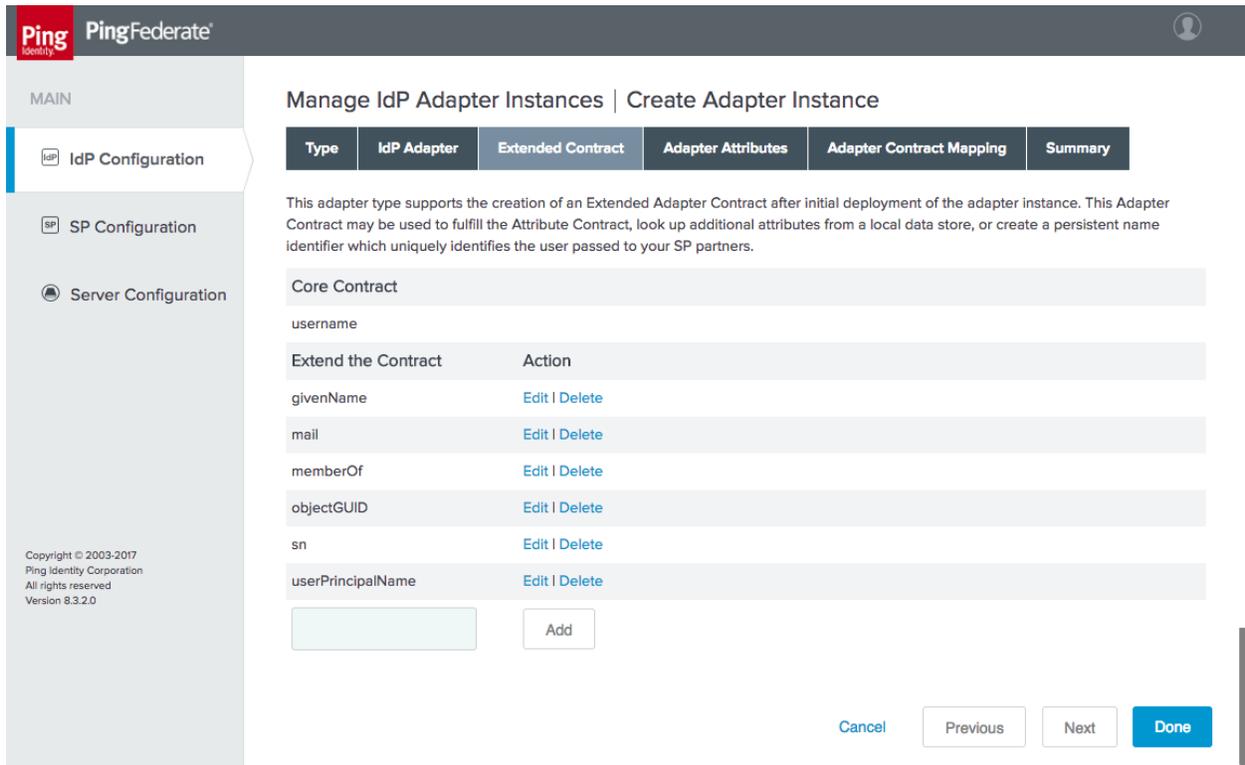
[Cancel](#)

Copyright © 2003-2017 Ping Identity Corporation. All rights reserved. Version 8.3.2.0

1881

- 1882 c. On the **Extended Contract** tab, the same attributes returned from AD by the Password  
 1883 Validator are added to the adapter contract, to make them available for further use by  
 1884 the IdP (Figure 4-13).

1885 **Figure 4-13 Form Adapter Extended Contract**



- 1886
- 1887 d. On the **Adapter Attributes** tab, select the **Pseudonym** checkbox for the **username**  
 1888 attribute.
- 1889 e. There is no need to configure anything on the **Adapter Contract Mapping** tab, as all  
 1890 attributes are provided by the adapter. Click **Done**, and then click **Save** to complete the  
 1891 Form Adapter configuration.

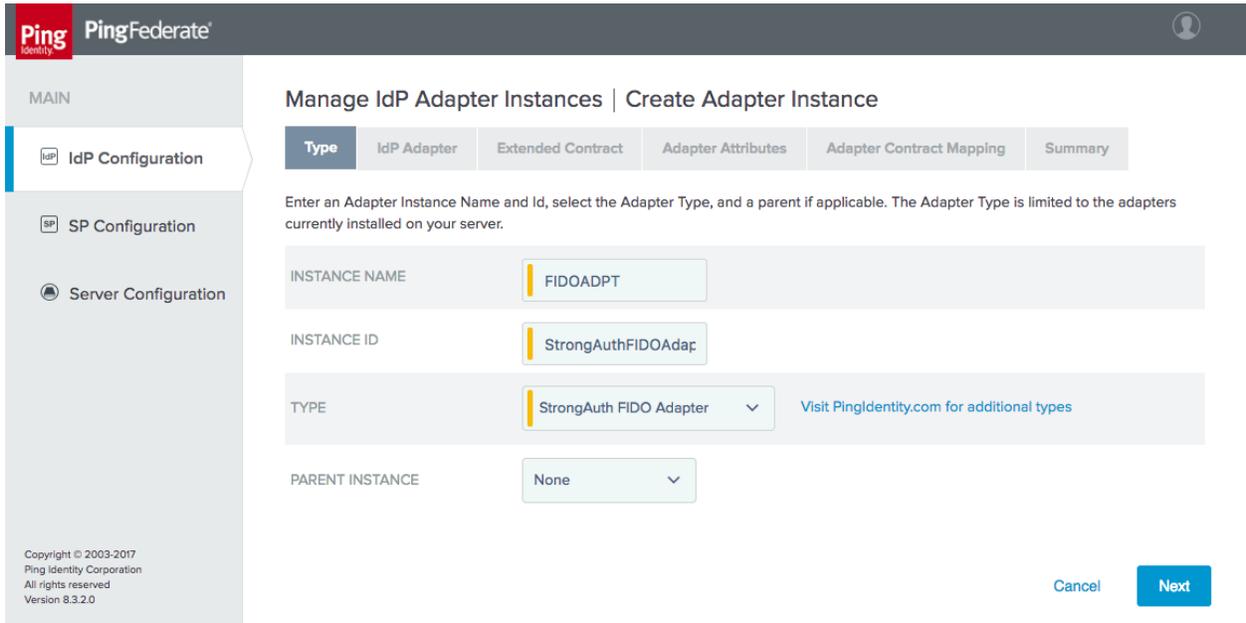
1892 **4.2.1.3 Configure the FIDO U2F Adapter**

1893 Before this step can be completed, the FIDO U2F server, StrongKey CryptoEngine (SKCE), must be  
 1894 installed and configured, and the StrongKey U2F adapter for PingFederate must be installed on the IdP.  
 1895 See [Section 6](#) for details on completing these tasks.

- 1896 1. On the **IdP Configuration** section tab, click **Adapters**.
- 1897 2. Click **Create New Instance**.

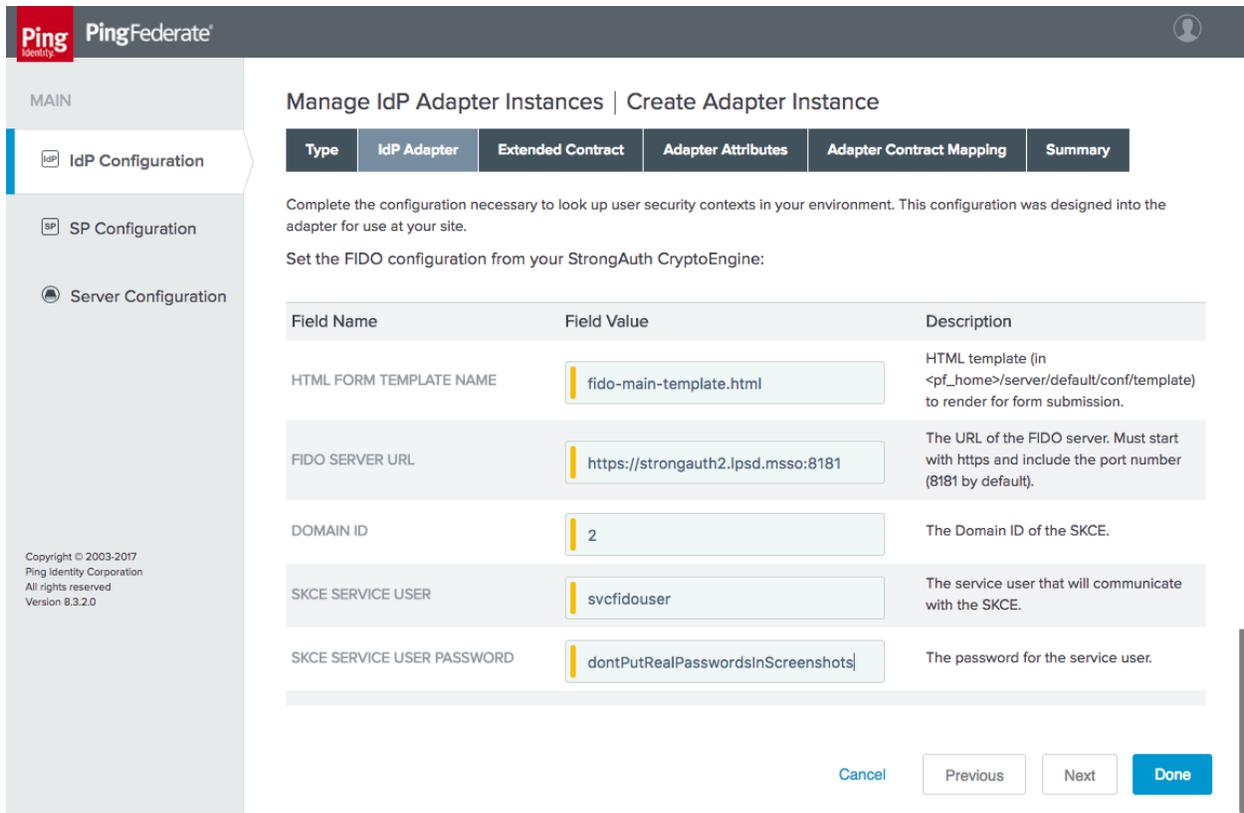
- 1898 a. Enter meaningful values for **INSTANCE NAME** and **INSTANCE ID**. For the **TYPE**, select
- 1899 "StrongAuth FIDO Adapter." Click **Next**.

1900 **Figure 4-14 Create U2F Adapter Instance**



- 1901
- 1902 b. On the **IdP Adapter** tab, keep the default value of the **HTML FORM TEMPLATE NAME** to
- 1903 use the template that is provided with the StrongKey U2F plugin, or specify a custom
- 1904 template if desired to change the design of the user interface (Figure 4-15). The **FIDO**
- 1905 **SERVER URL, DOMAIN ID, SKCE SERVICE USER, and SKCE SERVICE USER PASSWORD** are
- 1906 determined in the setup of the SKCE; refer to [Section 6](#) for details.

1907 **Figure 4-15 U2F Adapter Settings**



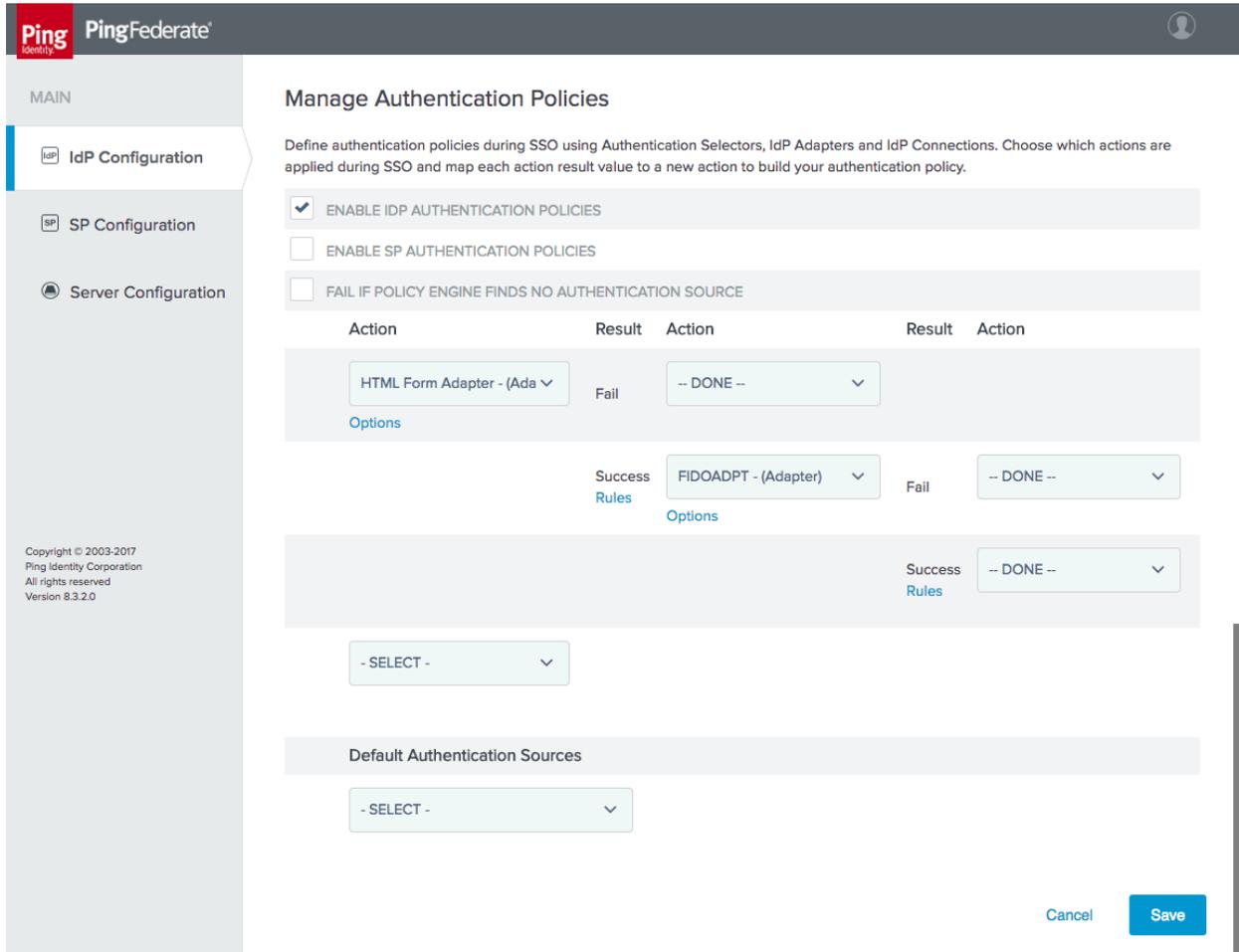
- 1908
- 1909 c. There is no need to extend the contract for the U2F adapter; therefore, skip the
- 1910 **Extended Contract** tab.
- 1911 d. On the **Adapter Attributes** tab, select the **Pseudonym** checkbox for the **username**
- 1912 attribute.
- 1913 e. There is also no need for an **Adapter Contract Mapping**; therefore, skip the **Adapter**
- 1914 **Contract Mapping** tab.
- 1915 f. Click **Done**, and then click **Save**.

1916 **4.2.1.4 Configure the Authentication Policies**

- 1917 1. On the **IdP Configuration** page, click **Policies**.
- 1918 a. Under **Manage Authentication Policies**, click the **ENABLE IDP AUTHENTICATION**
- 1919 **POLICIES** checkbox, and create a policy that starts with the **HTML Form Adapter** action
- 1920 (Figure 4-16).

- 1921 i. On the **Success** branch, add the FIDO U2F adapter (**FIDOADPT**) for the **Action**.
- 1922 ii. Click **Save**.

1923 **Figure 4-16 IdP Authentication Policy**



1924

1925 **4.2.2 Configure the SP Connection**

1926 Each RP that will receive authentication assertions from the IdP must be configured as an SP connection.

1927 As explained in [Section 3.4.2.1](#), this activity requires coordination between the administrators of the IdP

1928 and the RP to provide the necessary details to configure the connection. Exchanging metadata files can

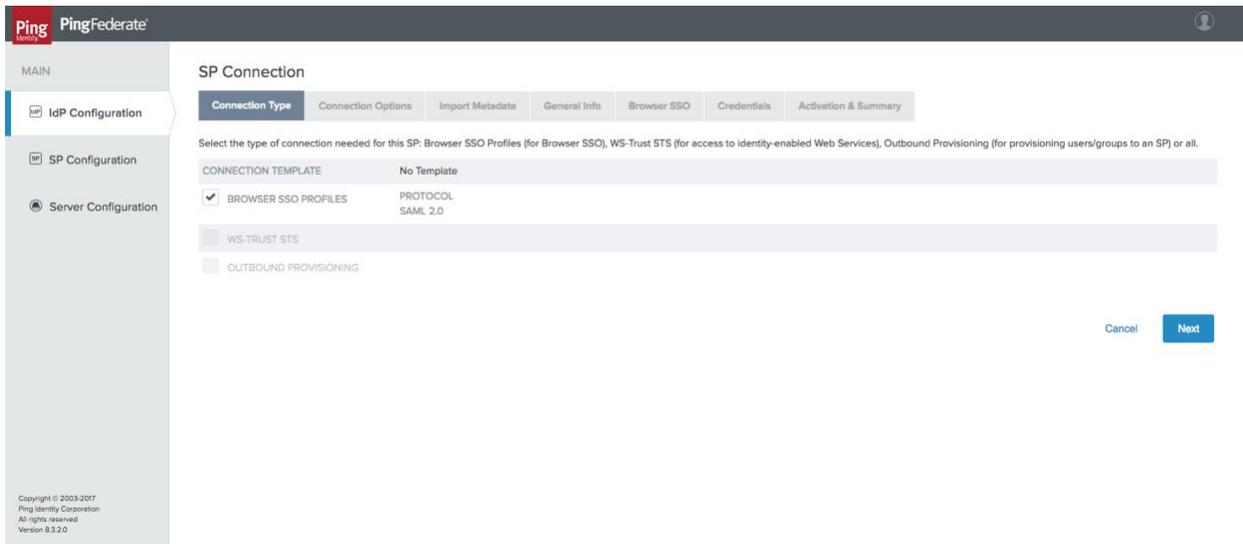
1929 help automate some of the configuration process.

1930 This section documents the configuration for the SP connection between the SAML IdP in the NCCoE lab

1931 and the OAuth AS in the Motorola Solutions cloud instance.

- 1932 1. To create a new SP connection, click the **IdP Configuration** section tab, and then click **Create**  
 1933 **New** under **SP Connections**.
- 1934 a. On the **Connection Type** tab, select **BROWSER SSO PROFILES**, and select the **SAML 2.0**  
 1935 protocol (Figure 4-17). In this case, SAML 2.0 is pre-selected because no other protocols  
 1936 are enabled on this IdP.

1937 **Figure 4-17 SP Connection Type**



- 1938
- 1939 b. On the **Connection Options** tab, only **BROWSER SSO** needs to be selected.
- 1940 c. If metadata for the SP is available, it can be imported on the **Import Metadata** tab. This  
 1941 metadata can be specified in the form of a file upload or URL.
- 1942 d. On the **General Info** tab, enter the **PARTNER’S ENTITY ID (CONNECTION ID)**  
 1943 (Figure 4-18); this must match the **ENTITY ID** configured on the **Federation Info** tab in  
 1944 the **Server Configuration** of the SP. The SP’s **BASE URL** should also be added on this  
 1945 **General Info** tab.

1946 **Figure 4-18 SP Connection General Info**

**Ping Identity PingFederate**

MAIN

- IdP Configuration
- SP Configuration
- Server Configuration

Copyright © 2003-2017 Ping Identity Corporation All rights reserved Version 8.3.2.0

### SP Connection

Connection Type | Connection Options | Metadata URL | **General Info** | Browser SSO | Credentials

**Activation & Summary**

This information identifies your partner's unique connection identifier (Connection ID). Connection Name represents the plain-language identifier for this connection. Optionally, you can specify multiple virtual server IDs for your own server to use when communicating with this partner. If set, these virtual server IDs will be used in place of the unique protocol identifier configured for your server in Server Settings. The Base URL may be used to simplify configuration of partner endpoints.

PARTNER'S ENTITY ID (CONNECTION ID)

CONNECTION NAME

VIRTUAL SERVER IDS

BASE URL

COMPANY

CONTACT NAME

CONTACT NUMBER

CONTACT EMAIL

APPLICATION NAME

APPLICATION ICON URL

LOGGING MODE

- NONE
- STANDARD
- ENHANCED
- FULL

1947

1948

1949

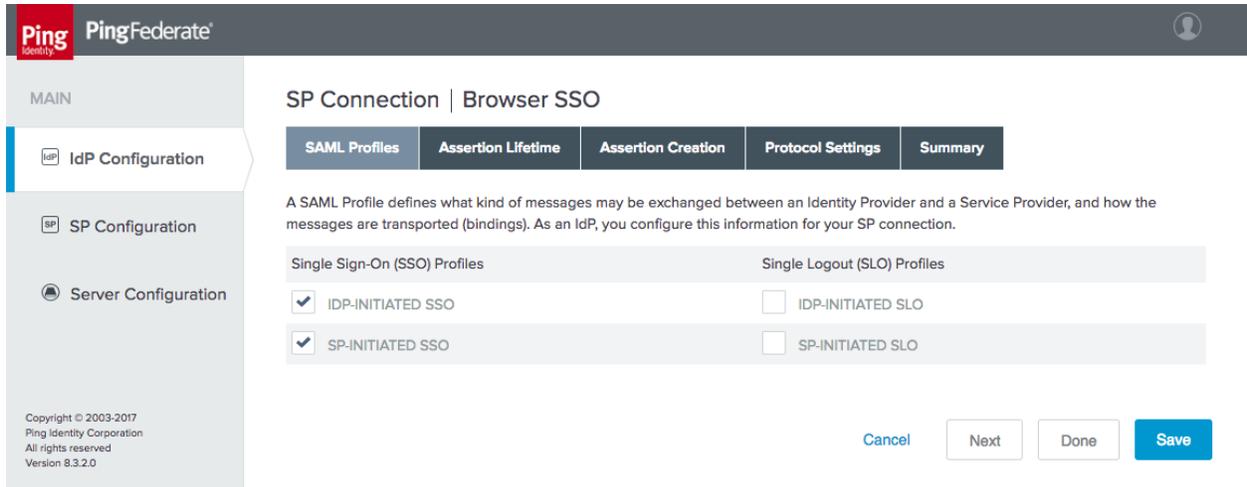
- e. On the **Browser SSO** tab, click **Configure Browser SSO**. This opens another multi-tabbed configuration screen.

1950

1951

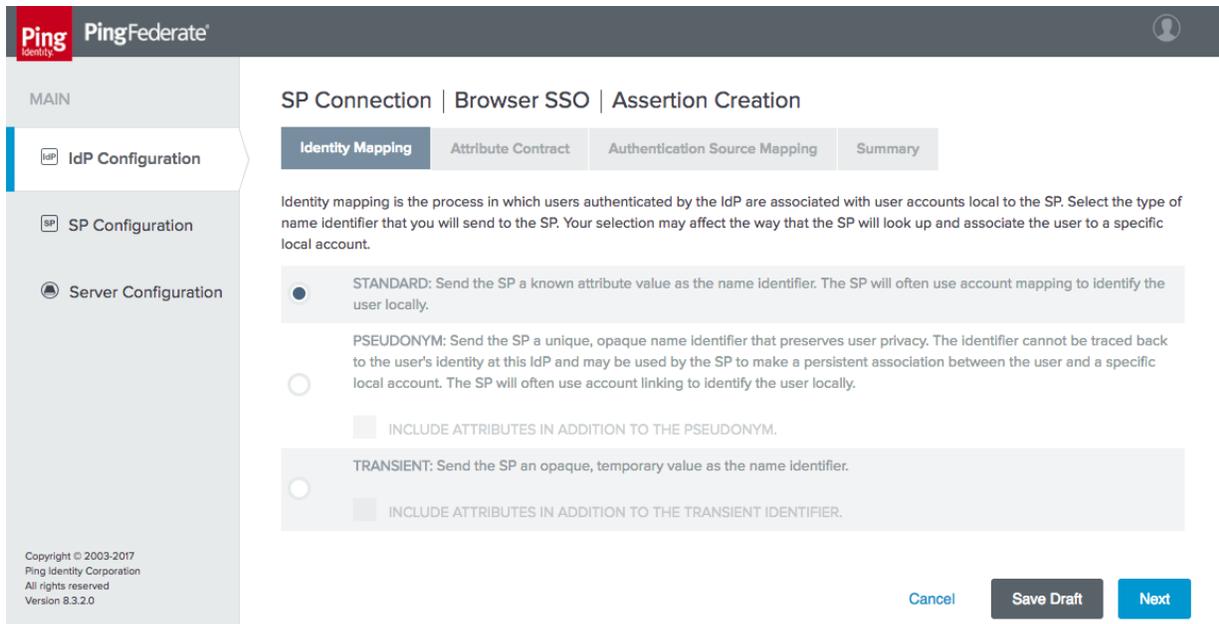
- i. On the **SAML Profiles** tab, different SSO and Single Log-Out (SLO) profiles can be enabled (Figure 4-19). Only **SP-INITIATED SSO** is demonstrated in this lab build.

1952 **Figure 4-19 SP Browser SSO Profiles**



- 1953
  - 1954
  - 1955
  - 1956
  - 1957
  - 1958
  - 1959
  - 1960
  - 1961
- ii. On the **Assertion Lifetime** tab, time intervals during which SPs should consider assertions valid can be configured in minutes before and after assertion creation. In the lab, these were both set to the default of five minutes.
  - iii. On the **Assertion Creation** tab, click **Configure Assertion Creation**. This opens a new multi-tabbed configuration screen.
    - 1) On the **Identity Mapping** tab, select the **STANDARD** mapping (Figure 4-20). The other options are more suitable for situations where identifiers are sensitive or where there are privacy concerns over the tracking of users.

1962 Figure 4-20 Assertion Identity Mapping



1963

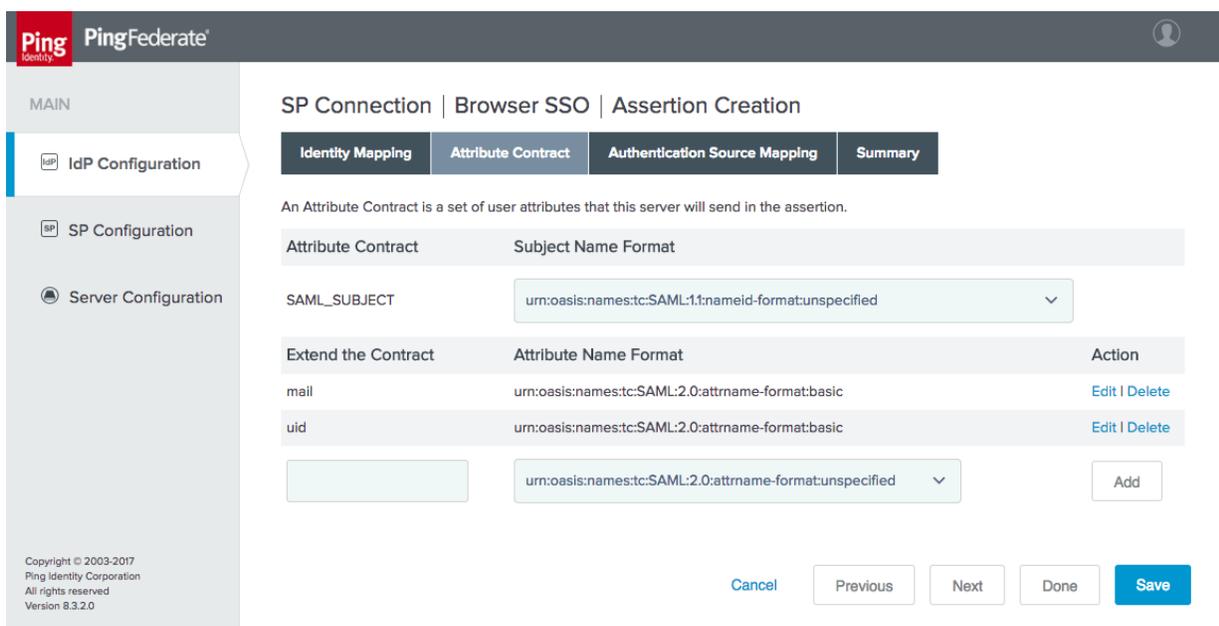
1964

1965

1966

- 2) On the **Attribute Contract** tab, extend the contract to include the **mail** and **uid** attributes with the basic name format (Figure 4-21). Other attributes can be added here as needed.

1967 Figure 4-21 Assertion Attribute Contract

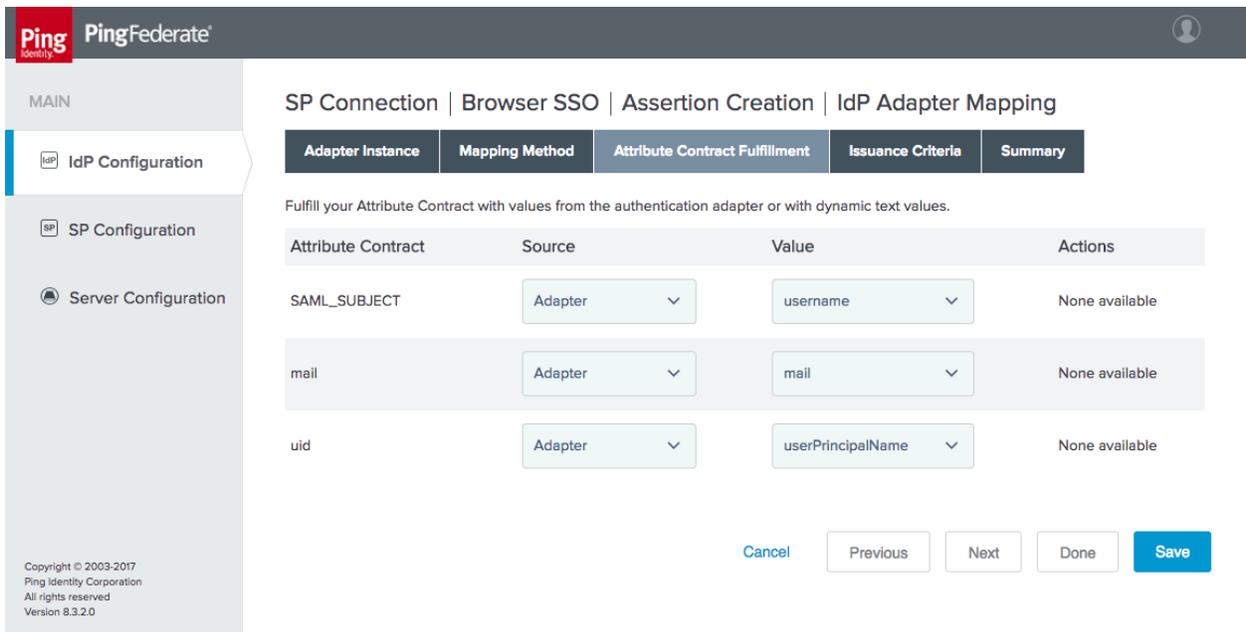


1968

1969  
 1970  
 1971  
 1972  
 1973  
 1974  
 1975  
 1976  
 1977  
 1978  
 1979  
 1980  
 1981  
 1982  
 1983  
 1984  
 1985

- 3) On the **Authentication Source Mapping** tab, attributes provided by authentication adapters and policy contracts can be mapped to the assertion attribute contract, identifying which data will be used to populate the assertions. The FIDO U2F adapter and the HTML Form Adapter should appear under **Adapter Instance Name**. Select the HTML Form Adapter, as it can provide the needed attributes from LDAP via the Password Validator and the AD data store connection. This brings up another multi-tabbed configuration screen.
  - a) The **Adapter Instance** tab shows the attributes that are returned by the selected adapter. Click **Next**.
  - b) The **Mapping Method** tab provides options to query additional data stores to build the assertions, but in this case, all of the required attributes are provided by the HTML Form Adapter. Select **USE ONLY THE ADAPTER CONTRACT VALUES IN THE SAML ASSERTION**.
  - c) On the **Attribute Contract Fulfillment** tab, map the **SAML\_SUBJECT**, **mail**, and **uid** attributes to the **username**, **mail**, and **userPrincipalName** adapter values (Figure 4-22).

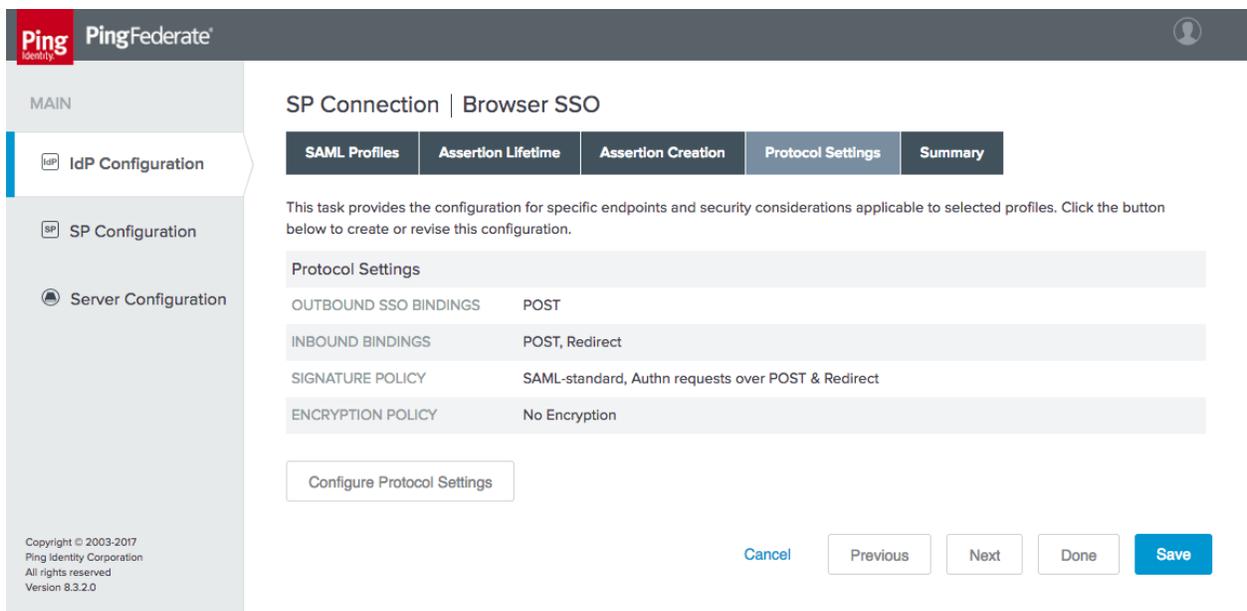
1986 **Figure 4-22 Assertion Attribute Contract Fulfillment**



1987

- 1988 d) No **Issuance Criteria** are required; therefore, skip the **Issuance Criteria**
- 1989 tab.
- 1990 e) Click **Done** to exit the IdP Adapter Mapping.
- 1991 4) Click **Done** to exit the Assertion Creation.
- 1992 iv. On the **Protocol Settings** tab, options such as additional SAML bindings,
- 1993 signature policy details, and assertion encryption policies can be specified
- 1994 (Figure 4-23). For the lab build, these values were left at their default settings.

1995 **Figure 4-23 Browser SSO Protocol Settings**

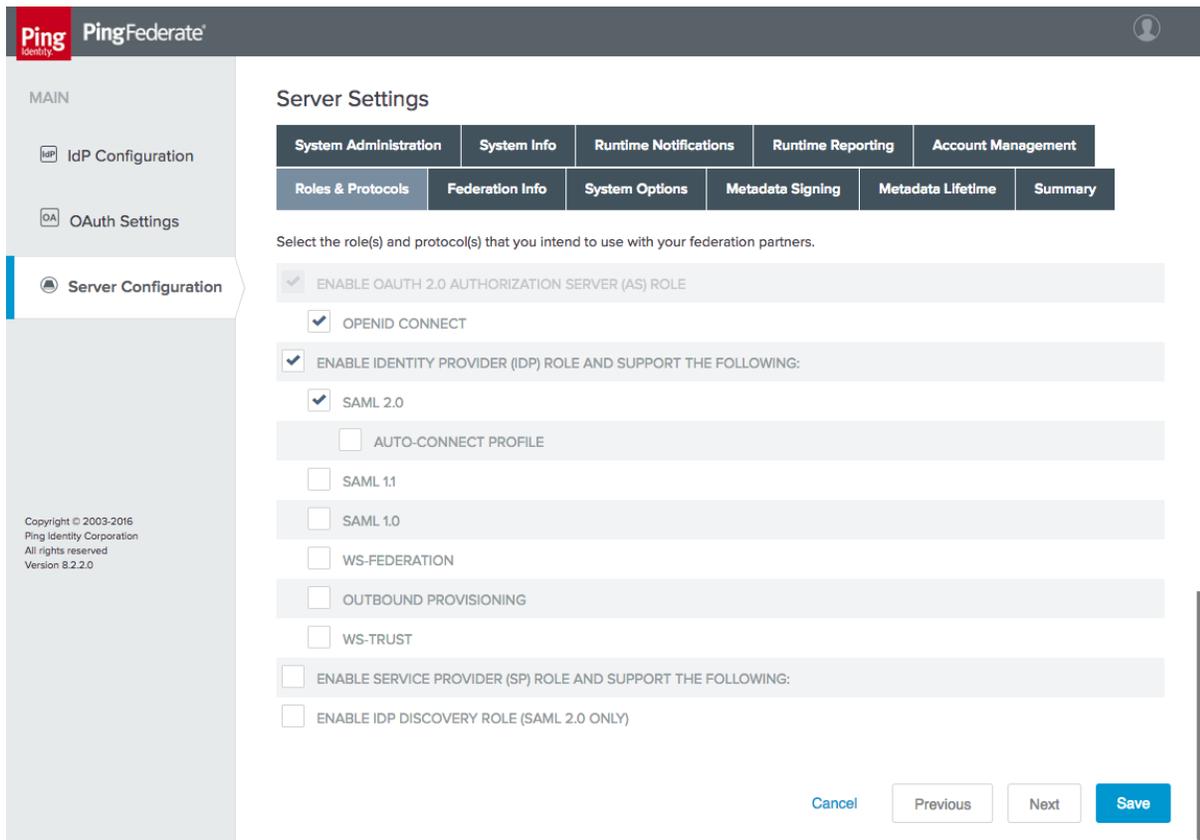


- 1996 v. Click **Done** to exit Browser SSO.
- 1997 f. On the **Credentials** tab, the certificate to use for signing assertions can be specified. A
- 1998 self-signed certificate can be generated by PingFederate, or a trusted certificate can be
- 1999 obtained and uploaded. Click **Configure Credentials** to create or manage signing
- 2000 credentials.
- 2001 g. On the **Activation & Summary** tab, the connection status can be set to **ACTIVE**. All
- 2002 configured settings for the SP connection are also displayed for verification.
- 2003 h. Click **Save** to complete the SP connection configuration.
- 2004 This completes the configuration of the SAML IdP.
- 2005

2006 **4.3 How to Install and Configure the OIDC Identity Provider**

- 2007 1. On the **Server Configuration** section tab, click **Server Settings**.
- 2008 a. On the **Roles & Protocols** tab, enable the roles and protocols as shown in Figure 4-24.
- 2009 Although the OIDC IdP does not actually use the SAML protocol, some required
- 2010 configuration settings are unavailable if the IdP role is not enabled.

2011 **Figure 4-24 OIDC IdP Roles**



- 2012
- 2013 b. On the **Federation Info** tab, specify the **BASE URL** and **SAML 2.0 ENTITY ID**. The **BASE**
- 2014 **URL** must be a URL that is exposed to clients.

- 2015 2. On the **OAuth Settings** section tab, click **Authorization Server Settings** to configure general
- 2016 OAuth and OIDC parameters. The OIDC IdP's settings on this page are identical to those for the
- 2017 OAuth AS; refer to [Section 3.3](#) for notes on these settings.

- 2018 3. On the **OAuth Settings** section tab, click **Scope Management**.
- 2019 a. Add the scopes defined in the OpenID Connect Core specification [25]:
- 2020 ▪ openid
  - 2021 ▪ profile
  - 2022 ▪ email
  - 2023 ▪ address
  - 2024 ▪ phone

### 2025 4.3.1 Configuring Authentication to the OIDC IdP

2026 In the lab architecture, the OIDC IdP supports FIDO UAF authentication through integration with the  
2027 NNAS and the Nok Nok Labs Gateway, using the Nok Nok FIDO UAF adapter for PingFederate.  
2028 Configuring UAF authentication to the OIDC IdP cannot be completed until the Nok Nok Labs servers are  
2029 available and the UAF plugin has been installed on the IdP server as specified in [Section 5](#).

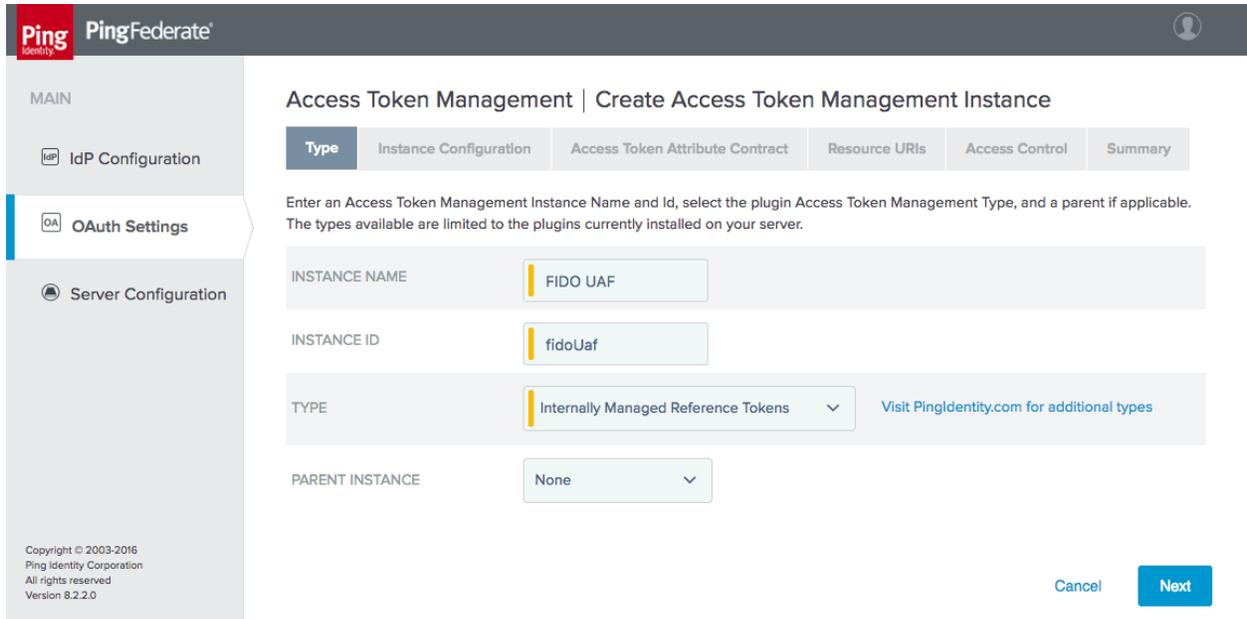
#### 2030 4.3.1.1 Configure the FIDO UAF Plugin

2031 The steps to configure the FIDO UAF plugin for the OIDC IdP are identical to those documented in  
2032 [Section 3.4.1.1](#) for direct authentication using UAF at the AS. The only difference in the lab build was the  
2033 URLs for the NNAS and the Nok Nok Labs Gateway, as the AS and the OIDC IdP used two different  
2034 instances of the Nok Nok Labs server.

#### 2035 4.3.1.2 Configure an Access Token Management Instance

- 2036 1. On the **OAuth Settings** section tab, click **Access Token Management**.
- 2037 2. Click **Create New Instance**.
- 2038 a. On the **Type** tab, provide an **INSTANCE NAME** and **INSTANCE ID** (Figure 4-25).
- 2039 i. Select **Internally Managed Reference Tokens** for the **TYPE**.

2040 **Figure 4-25 Create Access Token Manager**



- 2041
- 2042
- 2043
- 2044
- 2045
- 2046
- 2047
- 2048
- 2049
- 2050
- 2051
- 2052
- Although we have selected reference tokens, the ID Token is always issued in the form of a JWT. The token that is being configured here is not the ID Token, but rather the access token that will be issued to authorize the RP to call the userinfo endpoint at the IdP to request additional claims about the user. Because this access token only needs to be validated by the OIDC IdP itself, reference tokens are sufficient. In the Authorization Code flow, the RP obtains both the ID Token and the access token in exchange for the authorization code at the IdP’s token endpoint.
- b. Click the **Instance Configuration** tab to configure some security properties of the access token, such as its length and lifetime (Figure 4-26). For the lab build, the default values were accepted.

2053 Figure 4-26 Access Token Manager Configuration

**Access Token Management | Create Access Token Management Instance**

Complete the configuration necessary to issue and validate access tokens. This configuration was designed into, and is specific to, the selected Access Token Management plugin.

Field Name	Field Value	Description
TOKEN LENGTH	28	Defines how many alphanumeric characters make up an access token.
TOKEN LIFETIME	120	Defines how long, in minutes, an access token is valid.
LIFETIME EXTENSION POLICY	No Extension	Dictates which tokens are eligible for lifetime extension. Similar to a session inactivity timeout, the lifetime period of an access token can be reset each time the token is validated at the AS (subject to the values defined for the Lifetime Extension Threshold Percentage and the Maximum Token Lifetime).
MAXIMUM TOKEN LIFETIME		(Optional) Defines an absolute maximum token lifetime, in minutes, for use with the Lifetime Extension Policy. An access token's lifetime cannot be extended beyond this setting.
LIFETIME EXTENSION THRESHOLD PERCENTAGE	30	Defines the percentage of a token's lifetime remaining before the lifetime is actually extended, which can improve cluster performance.

[Show Advanced Fields](#)

Cancel Previous Next Done Save

2054

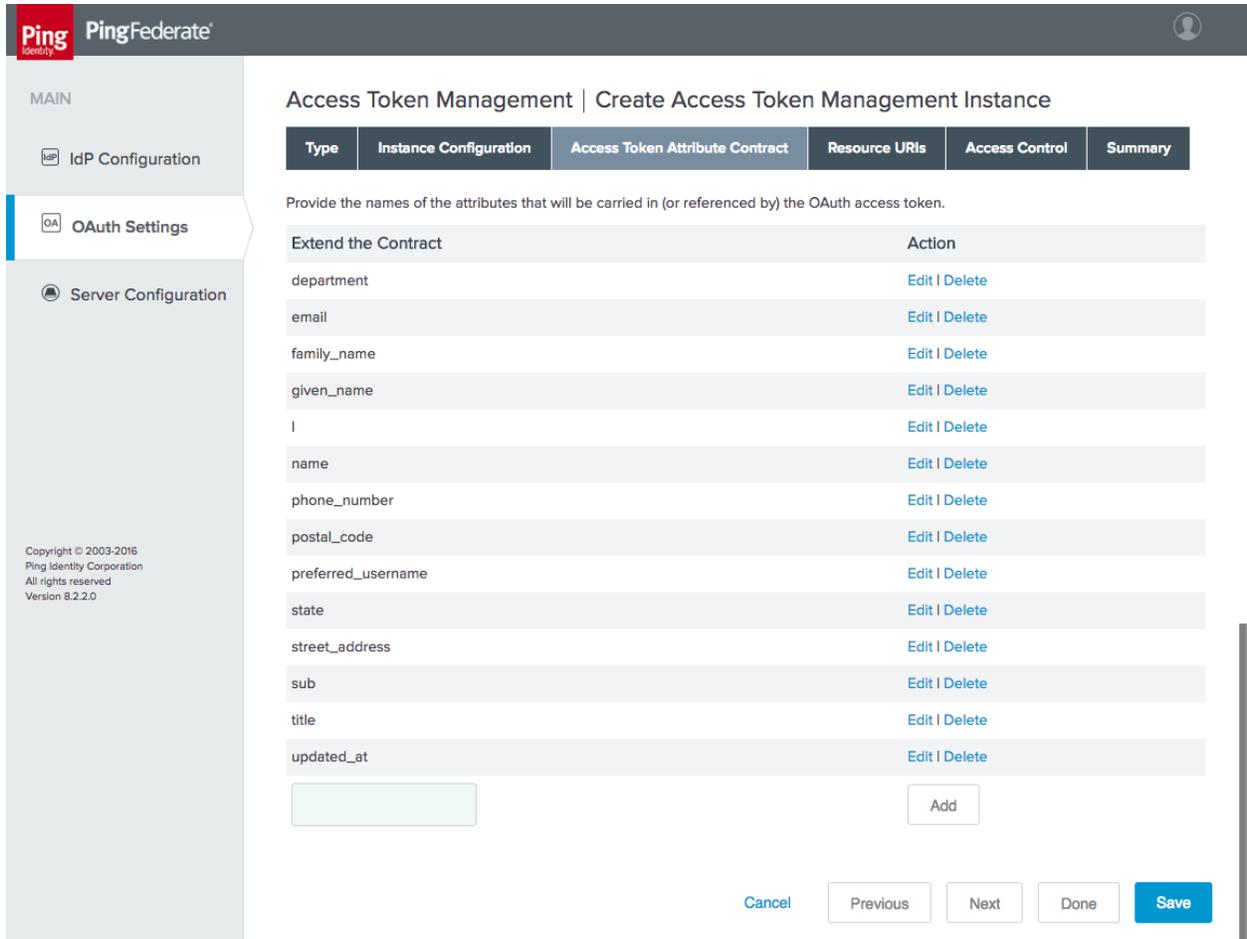
2055

2056

2057

- c. On the **Access Token Attribute Contract** tab, extend the contract with any attributes that will be included in the ID Token (Figure 4-27). In the example shown in Figure 4-27, several attributes that will be queried from AD have been added.

2058 **Figure 4-27 Access Token Attribute Contract**



2059

2060

2061

d. There is no need to configure the **Resource URIs** or **Access Control** tabs; these tabs can be skipped.

2062

e. Click **Done**, and then click **Save**.

2063 **4.3.1.3 Configure an IdP Adapter Mapping**

2064 The IdP Adapter Mapping determines how the persistent grant attributes are populated using  
2065 information from authentication adapters.

2066

1. Click the **OAuth Settings** section tab, and then click **IdP Adapter Mapping**.

2067

2. Select the UAF adapter instance created in [Section 4.3.1.1](#), and then click **Add Mapping**.

- 2068 a. On the **Contract Fulfillment** tab, map both **USER\_KEY** and **USER\_NAME** to the  
 2069 **username** value returned from the adapter (Figure 4-28).

2070 **Figure 4-28 Access Token Contract Fulfillment**

The screenshot shows the PingFederate web interface. The main header is 'PingFederate' with the Ping Identity logo. A left sidebar contains navigation options: 'MAIN', 'IdP Configuration', 'OAuth Settings', and 'Server Configuration'. The main content area is titled 'IdP Adapter Mappings | IdP Adapter Mapping' and has four tabs: 'Attribute Sources & User Lookup', 'Contract Fulfillment', 'Issuance Criteria', and 'Summary'. The 'Contract Fulfillment' tab is selected. Below the tabs, there is a instruction: 'Select a Source and Value to map into each item in the Contract list.' A table follows with the following structure:

Contract	Source	Value	Actions
USER_KEY	Adapter	username	None available
USER_NAME	Adapter	username	None available

At the bottom right of the table area, there are buttons: 'Cancel', 'Previous', 'Next', 'Done', and a blue 'Save' button. In the bottom left corner of the sidebar, there is copyright information: 'Copyright © 2003-2016 Ping Identity Corporation. All rights reserved. Version 8.2.2.0'.

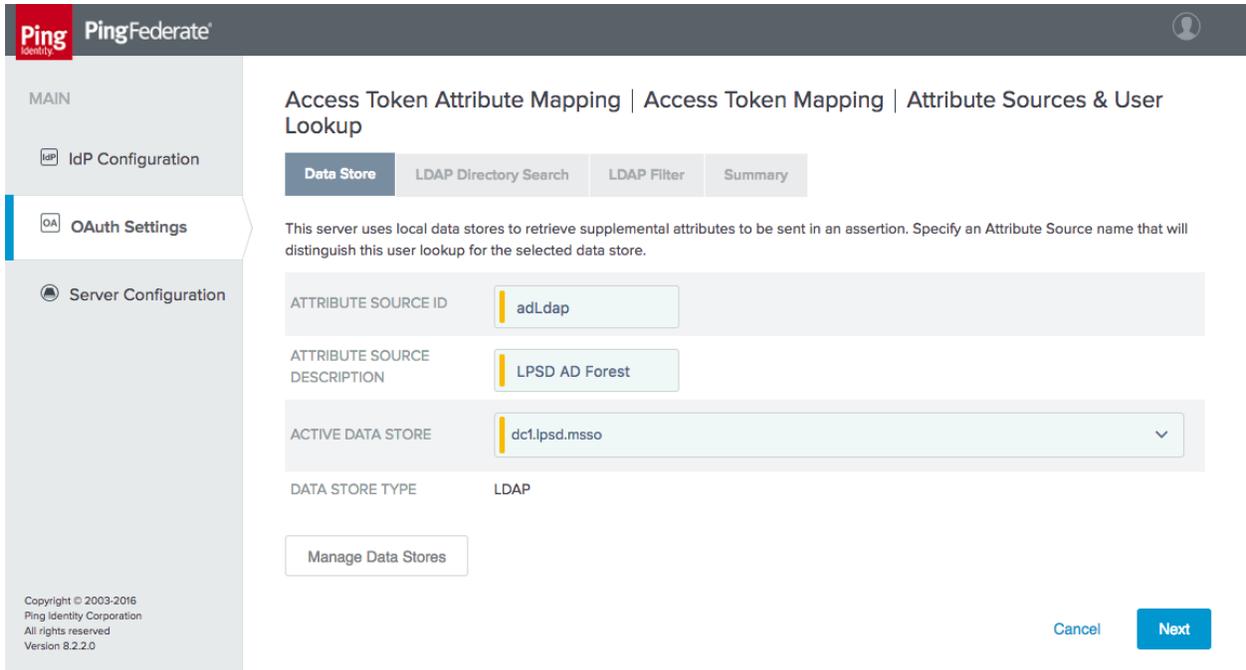
2071

#### 2072 4.3.1.4 Configure an Access Token Mapping

2073 The Access Token Mapping determines how the access token attribute contract is populated. In this  
 2074 example, the values returned from the adapter are supplemented with attributes retrieved from AD,  
 2075 and issuance criteria are used to require the user to be actually found in AD for a token to be issued.  
 2076 Depending on the credential and access life-cycle processes used in a given organization, there may be a  
 2077 lag in deactivating the authenticator or the AD account when a user's access is terminated.  
 2078 Organizations' authentication policies should account for these conditions and should allow or deny  
 2079 access appropriately.

- 2080 1. On the **OAuth Settings** section tab, click **Access Token Mapping**.
- 2081 2. Under **CONTEXT** and **ACCESS TOKEN MANAGER**, select the IdP Adapter and Access Token  
 2082 Manager created in the preceding steps, and click **Add Mapping**.
  - 2083 a. On the **Attribute Sources & User Lookup** tab, click **Add Attribute Source**. This brings up  
 2084 another multi-tabbed configuration.
    - 2085 i. On the **Data Store** tab, give the attribute source an ID and description  
 2086 (Figure 4-29). For **ACTIVE DATA STORE**, select the user store created in  
 2087 [Section 4.1](#).

2088 **Figure 4-29 Data Store for User Lookup**



2089

2090

2091

2092

2093

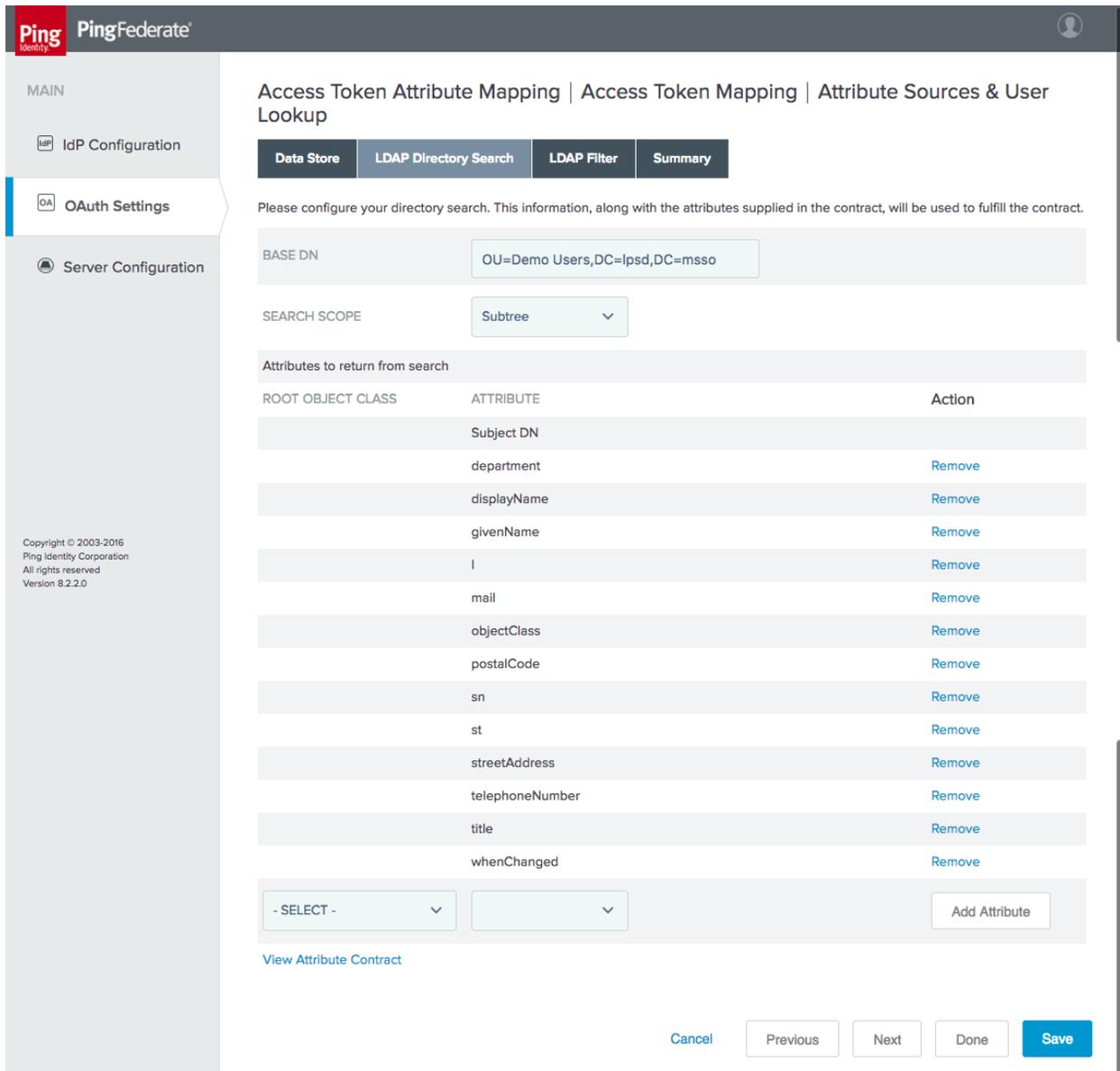
2094

2095

2096

- ii. On the **LDAP Directory Search** tab, specify the **BASE DN** and **SEARCH SCOPE**, and add the AD attributes to be retrieved (Figure 4-30). When specifying attributes, it is necessary to first select the root object class that contains the attribute. Common attributes associated with user accounts may be derived from the **User** or **OrganizationalPerson** class, for example. Refer to Microsoft’s AD Schema documentation [26] to identify the class from which a given attribute is derived.

2097 **Figure 4-30 Attribute Directory Search**



2098

2099

2100

2101

2102

2103

- iii. On the **LDAP Filter** tab, create the filter to select the relevant user account. In this example, the username from the adapter is matched against the AD SAM account name:

sAMAccountName=\${adapter.username}

- iv. Click **Done** to exit the attribute source configuration.

- 2104 b. On the **Contract Fulfillment** tab, specify the source and value to use for each attribute in
- 2105 the access token attribute contract (Figure 4-31).

2106 Figure 4-31 Access Token Contract Fulfillment

The screenshot shows the 'Access Token Attribute Mapping' configuration page in PingFederate. The page has a sidebar with navigation options: MAIN, IdP Configuration, OAuth Settings (selected), and Server Configuration. The main content area is titled 'Access Token Attribute Mapping | Access Token Mapping' and has four tabs: 'Attribute Sources & User Lookup', 'Contract Fulfillment' (active), 'Issuance Criteria', and 'Summary'. Below the tabs, there is a instruction: 'Select a Source and Value to map into each item in the Contract list.' A table follows with the following data:

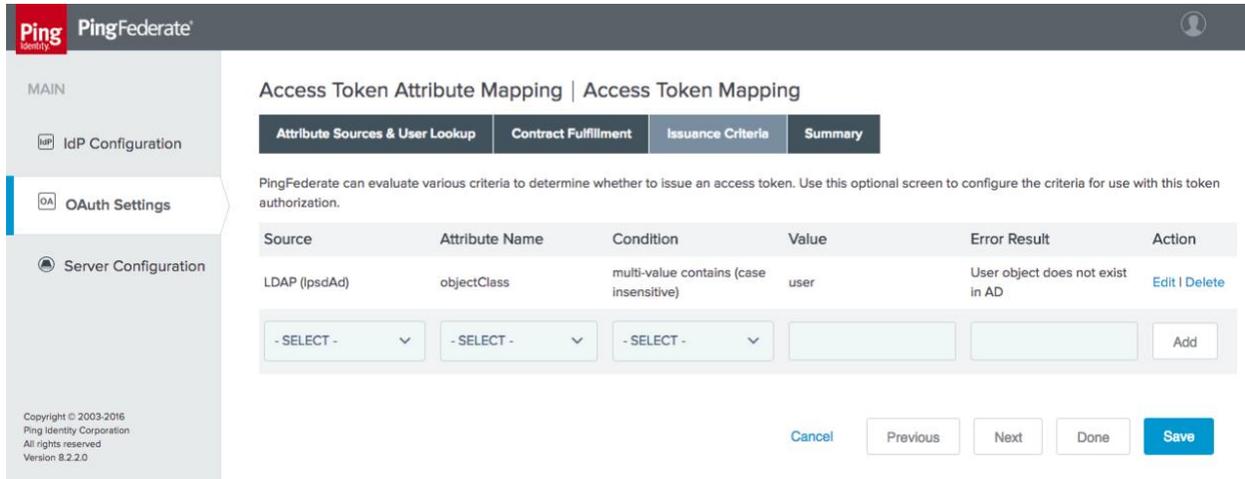
Contract	Source	Value	Actions
department	LDAP (LPSD AD)	department	None available
email	LDAP (LPSD AD)	mail	None available
family_name	LDAP (LPSD AD)	sn	None available
given_name	LDAP (LPSD AD)	givenName	None available
l	LDAP (LPSD AD)	l	None available
name	LDAP (LPSD AD)	displayName	None available
phone_number	LDAP (LPSD AD)	telephoneNumber	None available
postal_code	LDAP (LPSD AD)	postalCode	None available
preferred_username	Adapter	username	None available
state	LDAP (LPSD AD)	st	None available
street_address	LDAP (LPSD AD)	streetAddress	None available
sub	Adapter	username	None available
title	LDAP (LPSD AD)	title	None available
updated_at	LDAP (LPSD AD)	whenChanged	None available

At the bottom right of the table, there are navigation buttons: Cancel, Previous, Next, Done, and Save.

2107

- 2108 c. On the **Issuance Criteria** tab, define a rule that will prevent token issuance if the user
- 2109 account doesn't exist in AD (Figure 4-32). In this case, the **objectClass** attribute, which
- 2110 all AD objects have, is checked for the **Value** called **user**. If no user account is found in
- 2111 AD, this attribute will have no **Value**, the **Condition** will be false, and the specified **Error**
- 2112 **Result** will appear in the PingFederate server log.

2113 **Figure 4-32 Access Token Issuance Criteria**

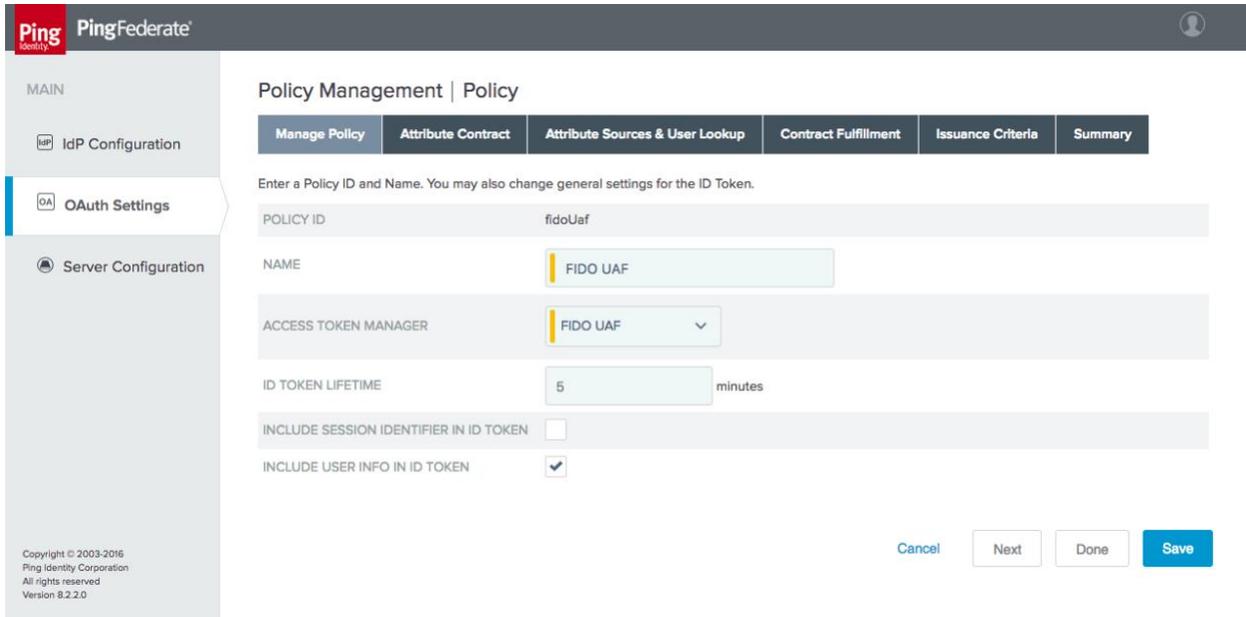


- 2114
- 2115 d. Click **Done**, and then click **Save** to finish the Access Token Attribute Mapping
- 2116 configuration.

2117 **4.3.1.5 Configure an OIDC Policy**

- 2118 1. On the **OAuth Settings** tab, click **OpenID Connect Policy Management**.
- 2119 2. Click **Add Policy**.
- 2120 a. On the **Manage Policy** tab, create a **POLICY ID** and **NAME**, and select the **INCLUDE USER**
- 2121 **INFO IN ID TOKEN** checkbox (Figure 4-33). This selection means that the user's
- 2122 attributes will be included as claims in the ID Token JWT. The advantage of this
- 2123 approach is that the RP can directly obtain user attributes from the ID Token without
- 2124 making additional requests to the IdP. The alternative is to include only a subject claim
- 2125 in the ID Token, and to have the RP call the IdP's userinfo endpoint to obtain additional
- 2126 user attributes.

2127 Figure 4-33 OIDC Policy Creation



2128

2129

2130

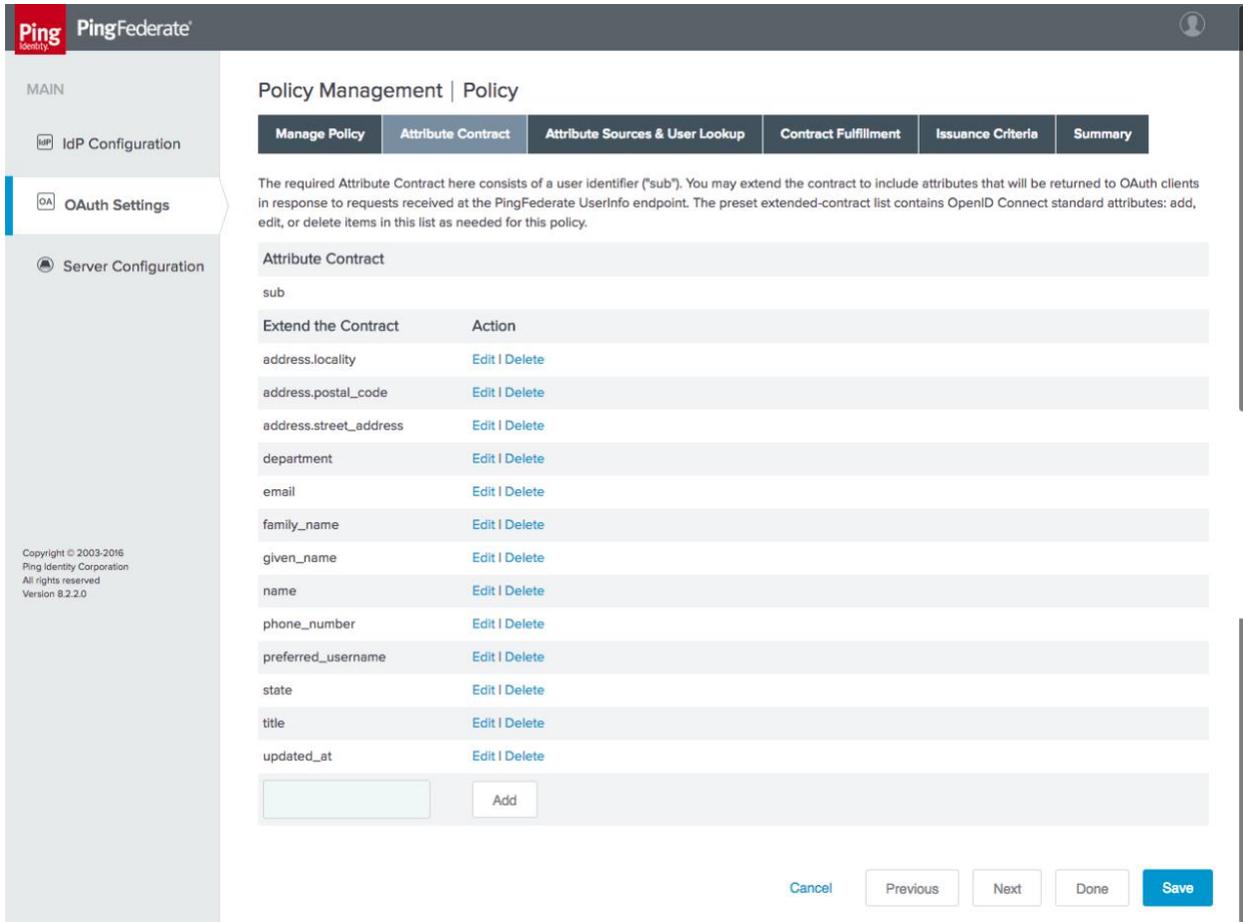
2131

2132

2133

- b. On the **Attribute Contract** tab, the set of attributes in the contract can be edited (Figure 4-34). The contract is automatically populated with the standard claims defined in the OIDC Core specification. In the example shown in Figure 4-34, some claims have been removed and others have been added to accommodate the attribute available from AD.

2134 Figure 4-34 OIDC Policy Attribute Contract



2135

2136

2137

c. Skip the **Attribute Sources & User Lookup** tab; there is no need to retrieve additional attributes.

2138

2139

d. On the **Contract Fulfillment** tab, populate the OIDC attributes with the corresponding values from the Access Token context (Figure 4-35).

2140 Figure 4-35 OIDC Policy Contract Fulfillment

**PingFederate**

MAIN

- IdP Configuration
- OAuth Settings**
- Server Configuration

Copyright © 2003-2016 Ping Identity Corporation. All rights reserved. Version 8.2.2.0

### Policy Management | Policy

- Manage Policy
- Attribute Contract
- Attribute Sources & User Lookup
- Contract Fulfillment**
- Issuance Criteria
- Summary

Fulfill the Attribute Contract with values from the Access Token or from other sources listed.

Attribute Contract	Source	Value	Actions
address.locality	Access Token	l	None available
address.postal_code	Access Token	postal_code	None available
address.street_address	Access Token	street_address	None available
department	Access Token	department	None available
email	Access Token	email	None available
family_name	Access Token	family_name	None available
given_name	Access Token	given_name	None available
name	Access Token	name	None available
phone_number	Access Token	phone_number	None available
preferred_username	Access Token	preferred_username	None available
state	Access Token	state	None available
sub	Access Token	sub	None available
title	Access Token	title	None available
updated_at	Access Token	updated_at	None available

Cancel Previous Next Done **Save**

2141

2142

2143

2144

- e. There is no need for additional issuance criteria; therefore, skip the **Issuance Criteria** tab.
- f. Click **Save** to complete the OIDC Policy configuration.

2145 **4.3.2 Configuring the OIDC Client Connection**

2146 Registering a client at an OIDC IdP is analogous to creating an SP connection at a SAML IdP. Some  
2147 coordination is required between the administrators of the two systems. The client ID and client secret  
2148 must be provided to the RP, and the RP must provide the redirect URI to the IdP.

- 2149 1. To add a client, click the **OAuth Settings** section tab, and then click **Create New** under **Clients**.
- 2150 a. Create a **CLIENT ID** and **CLIENT SECRET** (Figure 4-36). If mutual TLS authentication is  
2151 being used instead, the RP must provide its certificate, which can be uploaded to the  
2152 client creation page. Only the **Authorization Code** grant type is needed for this  
2153 integration. In the example shown in Figure 4-36, user prompts to authorize the sharing  
2154 of the user’s attributes with the RP have been disabled in favor of streamlining access to  
2155 applications.

2156 Figure 4-36 OIDC Client Configuration

**Client**  
Manage the configuration and policy information about a client.

CLIENT ID: MotorolaAS

CLIENT AUTHENTICATION:  NONE  CLIENT SECRET

SECRET: [masked]

CHANGE SECRET

CLIENT TLS CERTIFICATE

ISSUER: [SELECT]

SUBJECT DN: [text field]

You can also extract the Subject DN from a certificate file.  
No file selected

NAME: Motorola's AS

DESCRIPTION: [text area]

REDIRECT URIS: **Redirection URIs**

Redirection URI	Action
https://idm.sandbox.motorolasolutions.com/sp/eyJpc3MlOUJodH9wczpcl1wv63Axlmwvc2QuibXNzbo5MDMln0/cb.openid	<a href="#">Edit   Delete</a>
https://mfas-nccoe.noknoktest.com:8443/nlgateway/nvl/ob/req	<a href="#">Edit   Delete</a>
<input type="text"/>	<input type="button" value="Add"/>

LOGO URL: https://op1.lpsd.mso:9031/assets/image

BYPASS AUTHORIZATION APPROVAL:  Bypass  Restrict

RESTRICT SCORES:  Restrict

ALLOWED GRANT TYPES:  Authorization Code  Resource Owner Password Credentials  Refresh Token  Implicit  Client Credentials  Access Token Validation (Client is a Resource Server)  Extension Grants

DEFAULT ACCESS TOKEN MANAGER: PIDO UAF

PERSISTENT GRANTS EXPIRATION:  Use Global Setting  Grants Do Not Expire  [text field] Days

REFRESH TOKEN ROLLING POLICY:  Use Global Setting  Don't Roll  Roll

ID Token Signing Algorithm: Default

Policy: Default

Grant Access to Session Revocation API

2157

2158

This completes configuration of the OIDC IdP.

## 2159 5 How to Install and Configure the FIDO UAF 2160 Authentication Server

2161 For the lab build environment, the Nok Nok Labs S3 Authentication Suite provides FIDO UAF integration.  
2162 The S3 Authentication Suite can support a variety of different deployments and architectures, as  
2163 described in the Solution Guide [\[27\]](#). This section briefly describes the overall deployment architecture  
2164 used for this build.

2165 The Nok Nok Labs SDKs can be directly integrated into mobile applications, providing UAF client  
2166 functionality directly within the application. This deployment would be more suitable to use cases that  
2167 do not involve federation, where the requirement is to authenticate users directly at the application  
2168 back end. Nok Nok Labs also provides “Out-of-Band” (OOB) integration. OOB can support workflows  
2169 where a mobile device is used for true OOB authentication of logins or transactions initiated on another  
2170 device, such as a laptop or workstation. OOB also can be used for authentication flows in a mobile web  
2171 browser, including OAuth authorization flows or IdP authentication, as implemented in this build by  
2172 using the AppAuth pattern.

2173 When OOB is used in a cross-device scenario, the user must first register the mobile device by scanning  
2174 a QR code displayed in the browser. Subsequent authentication requests can be sent by push  
2175 notification to the registered device. When the OOB flow is initiated in a mobile browser, however, the  
2176 authentication request can be sent directly to the application running the Nok Nok Labs SDK by using  
2177 mobile platform technologies to open links directly in mobile applications (*App Links* for Android, or  
2178 *Universal Links* for iOS). The FIDO client that processes the OOB authentication request can be either a  
2179 custom application incorporating the Nok Nok Labs SDK, or the Nok Nok Labs Passport application,  
2180 which provides a ready-made implementation.

2181 The components of the Nok Nok Labs deployment for this build architecture are as follows:

- 2182     ▪ Nok Nok Labs Passport – provides UAF client functionality as well as Authenticator-Specific  
2183     Modules (ASMs) and authenticators on the mobile device
- 2184     ▪ Nok Nok Labs PingFederate UAF Adapter – a PingFederate plugin providing integration between  
2185     a PingFederate AS or IdP and the NNAS, enabling UAF authentication or transaction verification  
2186     to be integrated into PingFederate authentication policies
- 2187     ▪ NNAS – provides core UAF server functionality, including the generation and verification of  
2188     challenges, as well as APIs for interactions with UAF clients and the PingFederate Adapter
- 2189     ▪ Nok Nok Labs Gateway – provides a simplified interface to request FIDO operations from the  
2190     Authentication Server, as well as integration with the existing application session management  
2191     infrastructure
- 2192     ▪ Nok Nok Labs Gateway Tutorial Application – a demonstration web application implementation  
2193     that provides simple U2F and UAF authentication and registration workflows

2194 In a typical production implementation, the gateway functions for authenticator management  
 2195 (registration and de-registration) would typically require strong authentication, implemented through  
 2196 the Gateway’s session management integration. Nok Nok Labs’ documentation for the PingFederate  
 2197 plugin provides examples for defining a “reg” OAuth scope to request authenticator registration. An  
 2198 OAuth Scope Authentication Selector could be used in a PingFederate authentication policy to trigger  
 2199 the required strong authentication process.

## 2200 5.1 Platform and System Requirements

2201 The following subsections list the hardware, software, and network requirements for the various Nok  
 2202 Nok Labs components.

### 2203 5.1.1 Hardware Requirements

2204 Nok Nok Labs specifies the following minimum hardware requirements for the NNAS and Nok Nok Labs  
 2205 Gateway components. The requirements for acceptable performance will depend on the anticipated  
 2206 user population and server load. See the *Enabling Scalability & Availability* section of the *Solution Guide*  
 2207 for architecture guidance on deploying the NNAS in a clustered configuration.

- 2208     ▪ Processor: 1 CPU
- 2209     ▪ Memory: 4 GB RAM
- 2210     ▪ Hard disk drive size: 10 GB

### 2211 5.1.2 Software Requirements

2212 Complete software requirements for the NNAS are provided in the *Nok Nok Labs Authentication Server*  
 2213 *Administration Guide* [\[28\]](#). The major requirements are summarized below:

- 2214     ▪ OS: Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7 or CentOS 7
- 2215     ▪ Relational database system: MySQL 5.7.10 or later versions, Oracle Database 12c, or PostgreSQL  
 2216       9.2 or 9.4
- 2217     ▪ Application server: Apache Tomcat 8.0.x or 8.5.x
- 2218     ▪ Java: Oracle JDK Version 8
- 2219     ▪ Build tool: Apache Ant 1.7 or later versions
- 2220     ▪ For clustered deployments: Redis 2.8 or later versions
- 2221     ▪ Google Cloud Messenger (GCM) or Apple Push Notification System (APNS), if using push  
 2222       messages

2223 The Nok Nok Labs PingFederate Adapter is compatible with PingFederate 8.1.3 or later versions.

2224 The Nok Nok Labs Gateway is also deployed in Tomcat.

## 2225 5.2 How to Install and Configure the FIDO UAF Authentication Server

2226 The installation process for the Authentication Server is documented in the *Administration Guide*. A  
2227 high-level summary is provided below, with notes relevant to the lab build:

- 2228       ▪ Install the OS and dependent software, including Java and Tomcat. The database can be  
2229       installed on the same host as Tomcat, or remotely. Provision a TLS certificate for the server and  
2230       configure Tomcat to use TLS.
- 2231       ▪ The configuration for push notifications to support OOB authentication is not required for this  
2232       build; push notifications would be used when the mobile device is used to authenticate logins or  
2233       transactions initiated on a separate device.
- 2234       ▪ Follow the instructions to generate an encryption key and encrypt database credentials in the  
2235       installation script. Encrypting the push notification credentials is not required, unless that  
2236       functionality will be used.
- 2237       ▪ For this lab build, the standalone installation was used. The standalone option uses the  
2238       PostgreSQL database on the same host as the Authentication Server and also installs the Tutorial  
2239       application.
- 2240       ▪ After running the installation script, delete the encryption key (`NNL_ENCRYPTION_KEY_BASE64`)  
2241       from `nnl-install-conf.sh`.
- 2242       ▪ For this lab build, the default policies and authenticators were used. In a production  
2243       deployment, policies could be defined to control the authenticator types that could be  
2244       registered and used to authenticate.
- 2245       ▪ Provisioning a Facet ID is not necessary for the OOB integration with Nok Nok Labs Passport, as  
2246       used in the lab. If the Nok Nok Labs SDK were integrated with a custom mobile application, then  
2247       the Facet ID would need to be configured, and the `facets.uaf` file would need to be published at  
2248       a URL where it is accessible to clients.
- 2249       ▪ Application link/universal link integration (optional) – In the lab, the default setting using an  
2250       application link under <https://app.noknok.com> was used. This is acceptable for testing, but in a  
2251       production deployment, an application link pointing to the IdP’s actual domain name would  
2252       typically be used. It should be noted that the FQDN for the application link must be different  
2253       from the authentication endpoint (i.e., the IdP’s URL) at least by sub-domain.
- 2254       ▪ Configure tenant-specific and global parameters. For the lab build, a single tenant was used.  
2255       Many parameters can be left at the default settings. Some notes on specific parameters are  
2256       provided below:
  - 2257           • `uaf.application.id` – This should be a URL that is accessible to clients. In a production  
2258           deployment, the AS may not be accessible, so this may need to be hosted on a different  
2259           server.

- 2260           • `uaf.facet.id` – There is no need to modify the Facet ID setting to enable the use of the  
 2261            Passport application for OOB authentication; however, if other custom applications were  
 2262            directly integrating the Nok Nok Labs SDK, they would need to be added here.
- 2263           ▪ For a production deployment, client certificate authentication to the Authentication Server  
 2264            should be enabled. This is done by configuring the Tomcat HTTP connector to require client  
 2265            certificates. This requires provisioning a client certificate for the gateway (and any other servers  
 2266            that need to call the Nok Nok Labs APIs). See the notes in Section 5.3 of the *Administration*  
 2267            *Guide* about configuring the Gateway to use client certificate authentication. A general  
 2268            reference on configuring TLS in Tomcat 8 can be found at [https://tomcat.apache.org/tomcat-](https://tomcat.apache.org/tomcat-8.0-doc/ssl-howto.html)  
 2269            [8.0-doc/ssl-howto.html](https://tomcat.apache.org/tomcat-8.0-doc/ssl-howto.html).

### 2270 5.3 How to Install and Configure the FIDO UAF Gateway Server

2271 The Nok Nok Labs Gateway application is delivered as a Web Archive (WAR) file that can be deployed to  
 2272 a Tomcat server. For the lab build, it was deployed on the same server as the NNAS.

2273 Configure the required settings in the `nnlgateway.properties` file, including the settings listed below:

- 2274           ▪ `mfas_location` – NNAS URL
- 2275           ▪ `server.auth.enabled` – should be set to true; also requires configuring the trust-store settings
- 2276           ▪ `client.auth.enabled` – see notes in Section 5.2 above; should be enabled for strong client  
 2277            authentication in production deployments; also requires configuring the keystore settings

2278 In addition, the Gateway Tutorial application was installed by deploying the `gwtutorial.war` file and  
 2279 configuring the required URLs in `gwtutorial.properties`.

### 2280 5.4 How to Install and Configure the FIDO UAF Adapter for the OAuth 2 AS

2281 Nok Nok Labs provided a tar file containing a set of software tools for integration and testing with  
 2282 PingFederate. Version 5.1.0.501 of the Ping Integration library was used for the lab build. The  
 2283 installation process is summarized below; refer to the *Nok Nok PingFederate Adapter Integration Guide*  
 2284 [\[29\]](#) for full details:

- 2285           1. Extract the *adapter* folder from the `nnl-ping-integration-5.1.0.501.tar` file onto the PingFederate  
 2286            server where the adapter will be installed.
- 2287           2. Stop PingFederate if it is running, and run the installation script. The path to the PingFederate  
 2288            installation is passed as an argument; run the script by using an account with write access to the  
 2289            PingFederate installation:  
 2290            

```
$ ./adapter-deploy.sh /usr/share/pingfederate-8.2.2/pingfederate
```
- 2291           3. Configure the `adapter.properties` file (located in the PingFederate directory under  
 2292            `server/default/conf`) as required for the server and client TLS authentication settings specified

2293 earlier in the Authentication Server configuration. If push notifications are enabled, configure  
2294 the relevant settings.

2295 4. The *Configure Session Manager* and *Deploy Nok Nok Gateway OOB* sections of the *Integration*  
2296 *Guide* provide settings to use PingFederate to protect the Registration endpoint on the Nok Nok  
2297 Labs Gateway. This could be used in conjunction with the custom “reg” scope and a PingFederate  
2298 authentication policy to require strong authentication prior to UAF authenticator registration.  
2299 This configuration was not tested in the lab.

2300 The *Configure PingFederate Console* section of the *Integration Guide* walks through the complete  
2301 configuration of a PingFederate OIDC provider. See [Section 4.3](#) of this guide for the procedure to  
2302 configure the OpenID Provider.

## 2303 6 How to Install and Configure the FIDO U2F 2304 Authentication Server

2305 The SKCE from StrongKey performs the FIDO U2F server functionality in the build architecture.  
2306 StrongKey’s main product is the StrongKey Tellaro Appliance, but the company also distributes much of  
2307 its software under the *Lesser General Public License (LGPL)*, published by the Free Software Foundation.  
2308 SKCE 2.0 Build 163 was downloaded from its repository on *Sourceforge* and was used for this build. For  
2309 more information, documentation, and download links, visit the vendor’s site at  
2310 <https://sourceforge.net/projects/skce/>.

### 2311 6.1 Platform and System Requirements

2312 The following subsections document the software, hardware, and network requirements for SKCE 2.0.

#### 2313 6.1.1 Software Requirements

2314 StrongKey’s website lists the OSs on which SKCE has been tested:

- 2315     ▪ CentOS 6.X or 7.X, 64-bit
- 2316     ▪ Windows 7 Professional, 64-bit

2317 Since SKCE is a Java application, in theory it should be able to run on any OS that supports a compatible  
2318 version of Java and the other required software. The application was built with the Oracle JDK Version 8,  
2319 Update 72. For this build, SKCE was installed on a CentOS 7.4 server; therefore, these steps assume a  
2320 Linux installation.

2321 SKCE can be installed manually or with an installation script included in the download. SKCE depends on  
2322 other software components, including an SQL database, an LDAP directory server, and the Glassfish Java  
2323 application server. By default, the script will install MariaDB, OpenDJ, and Glassfish all on a single server.  
2324 SKCE can also utilize AD for LDAP.

2325 For this build, the scripted installation was used with the default software components. The required  
2326 software components, which are listed below, must be downloaded prior to running the installation  
2327 script:

- 2328       ▪ Glassfish 4.1
- 2329       ▪ Java Cryptography Extension (JCE) Unlimited Strength Jurisdiction Policy Files 8
- 2330       ▪ JDK 8, Update 121
- 2331       ▪ OpenDJ 3.0.0
- 2332       ▪ MariaDB 10.1.22
- 2333       ▪ MariaDB Java Client

2334 See StrongKey’s scripted installation instructions for details and download links:

2335 [https://sourceforge.net/p/skce/wiki/Install%20StrongKey%20CryptoEngine%202.0%20%28Build%20163](https://sourceforge.net/p/skce/wiki/Install%20StrongKey%20CryptoEngine%202.0%20%28Build%20163%29%20Scripted/)  
2336 [%29%20Scripted/](https://sourceforge.net/p/skce/wiki/Install%20StrongKey%20CryptoEngine%202.0%20%28Build%20163%29%20Scripted/).

2337 To download OpenDJ, you must register for a free account for *ForgeRock BackStage*.

2338 SKCE can also utilize an AD LDAP service. The LDAP directory contains system user accounts for  
2339 managing the SKCE (generating cryptographic keys, etc.). Data pertaining to registered users and  
2340 authenticators is stored in the SQL database, not in LDAP.

### 2341 6.1.2 Hardware Requirements

2342 StrongKey recommends installing SKCE on a server with at least 10 GB of available disk space and 4 GB  
2343 of RAM.

### 2344 6.1.3 Network Requirements

2345 The SKCE API is hosted on Transmission Control Protocol (TCP) Port 8181. Any applications that request  
2346 U2F registration, authentication, or deregistration actions from the SKCE need to be able to connect on  
2347 this port. Glassfish runs an HTTPS service on this port. Use firewall-cmd, iptables, or any other system  
2348 utility for manipulating the firewall to open this port.

2349 Other network services listen on the ports listed below. For the scripted installation, where all these  
2350 services are installed on a single server, there is no need to adjust firewall rules for these services  
2351 because they are only accessed from localhost.

- 2352       ▪ 3306 – MariaDB listener
- 2353       ▪ 4848 – Glassfish administrative console
- 2354       ▪ 1389 – OpenDJ LDAP service

## 2355 6.2 How to Install and Configure the FIDO U2F Authentication Server

2356 StrongKey's scripted installation process is documented at  
 2357 [https://sourceforge.net/p/skce/wiki/Install%20StrongKey%20CryptoEngine%202.0%20%28Build%20163](https://sourceforge.net/p/skce/wiki/Install%20StrongKey%20CryptoEngine%202.0%20%28Build%20163%29%20Scripted/)  
 2358 [%29%20Scripted/](https://sourceforge.net/p/skce/wiki/Install%20StrongKey%20CryptoEngine%202.0%20%28Build%20163%29%20Scripted/).

2359 The installation procedure consists of the following steps:

- 2360     ▪ Downloading the software dependencies to the server where SKCE will be installed
- 2361     ▪ Making any required changes to the installation script
- 2362     ▪ Running the script as root/administrator
- 2363     ▪ Performing post-installation configuration

2364 The installation script creates a "strongauth" Linux user and installs all software under  
 2365 `/usr/local/strongauth`. Rather than reproduce the installation steps here, this section provides some  
 2366 notes on the installation procedure:

- 2367     1. Download the software: Download and unzip the SKCE build to a directory on the server where  
 2368       SKCE is being installed. Download all installers as directed in the SKCE instructions to the same  
 2369       directory.
- 2370     2. Change software versions as required in the install script: If different versions of any of the  
 2371       software dependencies were downloaded, update the file names in the install script (*install-*  
 2372       *skce.sh*). Using different versions of the dependencies, apart from minor point-release versions,  
 2373       is not recommended. For the lab build, JDK Version 8u151 was used instead of the version  
 2374       referenced in the instructions. This required updating the `JDK` and `JDKVER` settings in the file.
- 2375     3. Change passwords in the install script: Changing the default passwords in the delivered script is  
 2376       strongly recommended. The defaults are readily discoverable, as they are distributed with the  
 2377       software. Passwords should be stored in a password vault or other agency-approved secure  
 2378       storage. Once the installation script has been run successfully, the script should be deleted or  
 2379       sanitized to remove passwords. The following lines in the install script contain passwords:

```
2380 LINUX_PASSWORD=ShaZam123           # For 'strongauth' account
2381 GLASSFISH_PASSWORD=adminadmin     # Glassfish Admin password
2382 MYSQL_ROOT_PASSWORD=BigKahuna     # MySQL 'root' password
2383 MYSQL_PASSWORD=AbracaDabra        # MySQL 'skles' password
2384 SKCE_SERVICE_PASS=Abcd1234!       # Webservice user 'service-cc-ce' password
2385 SAKA_PASS=Abcd1234!
2386 SERVICE_LDAP_BIND_PASS=Abcd1234!
```

2387           SEARCH\_LDAP\_BIND\_PASS=Abcd1234!

2388           4. Set the Application ID URL: The Application ID setting in *install-skce.sh* should point to a URL that  
 2389           will be accessible to clients where the *app.json* file can be downloaded. The default location is a  
 2390           URL on the SKCE server, but the SKCE would not be exposed to mobile clients in a typical  
 2391           production deployment. In the lab, *app.json* was hosted on the PingFederate server hosting the  
 2392           IdP in the following location:

2393           */usr/share/pingfederate-8.3.2/pingfederate/server/default/conf/template/assets/scripts*

2394           which enables the file to be accessed by clients at the following URL:

2395           *https://idp1.spsd.mssso:9031/assets/scripts/app.json.*

2396           5. Run the script: *install-skce.sh* must be run as the root user. If the install script terminates with an  
 2397           error, troubleshoot and correct any problems before continuing.

2398           6. (For CentOS 7) Create firewall rule: The install script attempts to open the required port using  
 2399           iptables, which does not work on CentOS 7. In that case, the following commands will open the  
 2400           port:

2401           # **firewall-cmd --permanent --add-port 8181/tcp**

2402           success

2403           # **firewall-cmd --reload**

2404           success

2405           7. Install additional libraries: Depending on how CentOS was installed, some additional libraries  
 2406           may be required to run the graphical key custodian setup tool. In the lab, the SKCE server did  
 2407           not include X11 or a graphical desktop, so the key custodian setup was run over Secure Shell  
 2408           (SSH) with X11 forwarding. To install additional libraries needed for this setup, run the following  
 2409           commands:

2410           # **yum install libXrender**

2411           # **yum install libXtst**

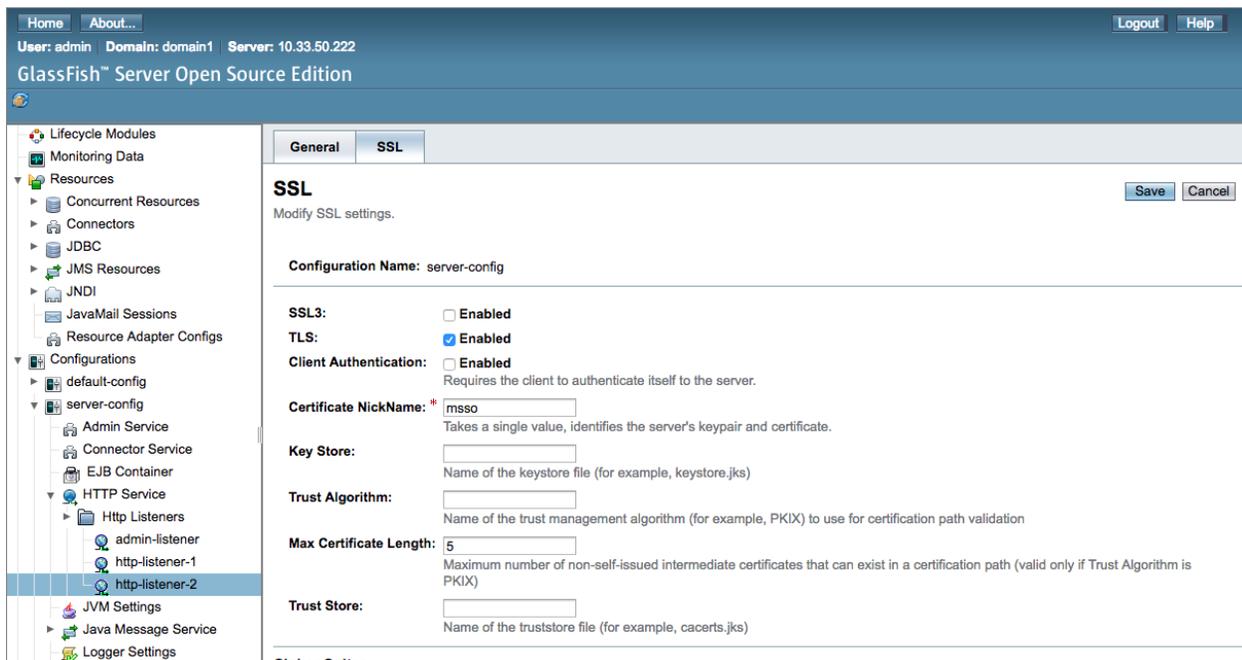
2412           Note that running the graphical configuration tool over SSH also requires configuring X11  
 2413           forwarding in the SSH daemon (**sshd**) on the server and using the **-X** command line option when  
 2414           connecting from an SSH client.

2415           8. Run the key custodian setup tool: In production deployments, the use of a Hardware Security  
 2416           Module (HSM) and USB drive for the security officer and key custodian credentials is strongly  
 2417           recommended. In the lab, the software security module was used. Also, the lab setup utilized a  
 2418           single SKCE server; in this case, all instructions pertaining to copying keys to a secondary  
 2419           appliance can be ignored.

- 2420 9. Restart Glassfish: On CentOS 7, run the following command:
- 2421 `$ sudo systemctl restart glassfishd`
- 2422 10. Complete Steps 5.1 and 5.2 in the SKCE installation instructions to activate the cryptographic  
2423 module.
- 2424 11. Complete Step 5.3 in the SKCE installation instructions to create the domain signing key. When  
2425 prompted for the Application ID, use the URL referenced above in the Application ID setting of  
2426 the *install-skce.sh* script.
- 2427 12. Complete Step 6 if you are installing secondary SKCE instances; this was not done for this build  
2428 but is recommended for a production installation.
- 2429 13. Install a TLS certificate (optional): The SKCE installation script creates a self-signed certificate for  
2430 the SKCE. It is possible to use the self-signed certificate, though PingFederate and any other  
2431 servers that integrate with the SKCE would need to be configured to trust it. However, many  
2432 organizations will have their own CAs, and will want to generate a trusted certificate for the  
2433 SKCE for production use. To generate and install the certificate, follow the steps listed below:
- 2434 a. The keystore used by the SKCE Glassfish server is listed below:
- 2435 `/usr/local/strongauth/glassfish4/glassfish/domains/domain1/config/keystore.jks`  
2436
- 2437 b. The default password for the keystore is “changeit”.
- 2438 c. Use keytool to generate a keypair and certificate signing request. For example, the  
2439 following commands generate a 2048-bit key pair with the alias “msso,” and export a  
2440 Certificate Signing Request (CSR):
- 2441 `$ keytool -genkeypair -keyalg RSA -keysize 2048 -alias msso -keystore`  
2442 `keystore.jks`
- 2443 `$ keytool -certreq -alias msso -file strongauth.req -keystore`  
2444 `keystore.jks`
- 2445 d. Submit the CSR to your organization’s CA, and import the signed certificate along with  
2446 the root and any intermediates:
- 2447 `$ keytool -import -trustcacerts -alias msso-root -file lab-certs/root.pem`  
2448 `-keystore keystore.jks`
- 2449 `$ keytool -import -alias msso -file lab-certs/strongauth.lpsd.msso.cer -`  
2450 `keystore keystore.jks`
- 2451 e. To configure the SKCE to use the new certificate, log in to the Glassfish administrative  
2452 console on the SKCE server. The console runs on Port 4848; the username is “admin,”  
2453 and the password will be whatever was configured for `GLASSFISH_PASSWORD` in the  
2454 *install-skce.sh* script.

- 2455 i. Navigate to *Configurations, server-config, HTTP Service, Http Listeners, http-*  
 2456 *listener-2*, as shown in Figure 6-1. On the **SSL** tab, set the **Certificate NickName**  
 2457 to the alias that was created with the “keytool -genkeypair” command above.

2458 **Figure 6-1 Glassfish SSL Settings**



- 2459
- 2460 f. Click **Save**, and then restart glassfish. If logged on as the glassfish user, run the following  
 2461 command:
- 2462 `$ sudo service glassfishd restart`
- 2463 g. In a browser, access the SKCE web service on Port 8181, and ensure that it is using the  
 2464 newly created certificate.
- 2465 h. For the FIDO Engine tests below to complete successfully, the main CA trust store for  
 2466 the JDK will need to be updated with your organization’s CA certificate. This can also be  
 2467 done with keytool:

2468 `$ keytool -import -trustcacerts -file lab-certs/root.pem -keystore`  
 2469 `$JAVA_HOME/jre/lib/security/cacerts`

- 2470 14. Test the FIDO Engine: Follow the testing instructions under Step 4 at the following URL:  
 2471 <https://sourceforge.net/p/skce/wiki/Test%20SKCE%20.0%20Using%20a%20Client%20Program%20%28Build%20163%29/#4test-skcefido-engine>.  
 2472

2473            There are additional tests on that web page to test the other cryptographic functions of the  
2474            SKCE; however, only the FIDO Engine tests are critical for this build.

2475            If the FIDO Engine tests are completed without errors, proceed to Section 6.3 to integrate the SKCE with  
2476            the IdP. If any errors are encountered, the Glassfish log file (located at  
2477            */usr/local/strongauth/glassfish4/glassfish/domains/domain1/logs/server.log*) should contain messages  
2478            to aid in troubleshooting.

### 2479    **6.3 How to Install and Configure the FIDO U2F Adapter for the IdP**

2480            To incorporate FIDO U2F authentication into a login flow at the IdP, some integration is needed to  
2481            enable the IdP to call the SKCE APIs. In the lab build architecture, FIDO U2F authentication was  
2482            integrated into a SAML IdP. PingFederate has a plugin architecture that enables the use of custom and  
2483            third-party adapters in the authentication flow. StrongKey provides a PingFederate plugin to enable  
2484            PingFederate IdPs (or AS) to support U2F authentication. This section describes the installation of the  
2485            plugin on a PingFederate server. For details on how to integrate U2F authentication to a login flow, see  
2486            Section 4.2.1.3.

2487            The StrongKey plugin for PingFederate is delivered in a zip file containing documentation and all of the  
2488            required program files.

- 2489            1. To begin the installation process, upload the zip file to the PingFederate server where the  
2490            StrongKey plugin will be installed, and unzip the files.
- 2491            2. If Apache Ant is not already installed on the server, install it now by using the server's package  
2492            manager. For CentOS, this can be done by running the following command:  
2493            

```
# yum install ant
```
- 2494            3. Once Apache Ant is installed, follow the "Installation" instructions in the *StrongKey – Ping  
2495            Federate FIDO IdP Adapter Installation Guide* [30], which consist of copying the plugin files to  
2496            the required directories in the PingFederate installation, and running *build.sh*. If the script runs  
2497            successfully, it will build the plugin using Ant and restart PingFederate.
- 2498            4. Follow the steps in "Table 2: Configure the SKCE" in the *Installation Guide*. For this build, the  
2499            *app.json* file needs to be copied to a browser-accessible location on the PingFederate server  
2500            where the plugin is being installed. In the lab, we placed it under the following location:  
2501            

```
/usr/share/pingfederate-8.3.2/pingfederate/server/default/conf/template/assets/scripts
```
- 2502            5. This enables the *app.json* to be accessed at the URL  
2503            *https://idp1.spsd.mso:9031/assets/scripts/app.json*. Note that Steps 4 and 5 in Table 2 of the  
2504            *Installation Guide* are required only if the SKCE is using the default self-signed certificate; if a  
2505            trusted certificate was installed as described in [Section 6.2](#), then those steps can be skipped.

- 2506 6. Download the JQuery 2.2.0 library at the URL below, and save it to the scripts folder referenced  
2507 above: <https://code.jquery.com/jquery-2.2.0.min.js>.
- 2508 7. Follow the steps in “Table 3: Configure the Ping Federate Instance” in the *Installation Guide*.  
2509 Importing the SKCE self-signed certificate is not required if a trusted certificate was created.  
2510 Installation of the JCE unlimited policy was described in the PingFederate installation  
2511 instructions in [Section 3](#), so that too can be skipped at this point, if it has already been done.  
2512 Steps 7–9 should be completed in any case.
- 2513 8. Follow the steps in “Table 4: Configuring the FIDO Adapter” in the *Installation Guide*. In Step 5,  
2514 the Domain ID typically should be set to “1,” unless you have defined multiple domains in the  
2515 SKCE. For the username and password, use the values configured earlier in *install-skce.sh*.
- 2516 9. “Table 5: Ping Federate OAuth Configuration Steps” in the *Installation Guide* provides an  
2517 example of how to incorporate U2F into a login flow, along with username/password form login,  
2518 by creating a composite adapter that includes the login form and U2F adapters, and using a  
2519 selector to activate the composite adapter whenever an OAuth authorization request includes  
2520 the scope value “ldap.” Alternatively, the individual adapters can be called directly in an  
2521 authentication policy. See Chapter 4 of the *Installation Guide* for additional examples of using  
2522 U2F in authentication policies.

### 2523 6.3.1 FIDO U2F Registration in Production

2524 By default, the StrongKey Ping plugin enables the registration of U2F authenticators. In production, an  
2525 authorized registration process should be established to provide adequate assurance in the binding of  
2526 the authenticator to a claimed identity. If the FIDO adapter is accessible after single-factor password  
2527 authentication, organizations may want to disable the registration functionality. See Section B.5 in  
2528 Volume B of this guide for a discussion of FIDO enrollment.

## 2529 7 Functional Tests

2530 The MSSO architecture has a number of interoperating components, which can make troubleshooting  
2531 difficult. This section describes tests than can be performed to validate that individual components are  
2532 working as expected. If issues are encountered with the overall SSO flow, these tests may help identify  
2533 the problem area.

### 2534 7.1 Testing FIDO Authenticators

2535 The FIDO Alliance implements a Functional Certification Program, in which products are evaluated for  
2536 conformance to the UAF and U2F specifications. Purchasing FIDO-certified authenticators can help avoid  
2537 potential authenticator implementation issues. Information on the certification program is available at  
2538 <https://fidoalliance.org/certification/>, and the FIDO Alliance website also lists certified products.





```

2623 Type "help", "copyright", "credits" or "license" for more information.
2624 >>> import base64
2625 >>> import xml.dom.minidom
2626 >>> respFile = open("samlresp.txt", "r")
2627 >>> respStr = base64.b64decode(respFile.read())
2628 >>> respXml = xml.dom.minidom.parseString(respStr)
2629 >>> print(respXml.toprettyxml())
2630 <?xml version="1.0" ?>
2631 <samlp:Response Destination="https://idm.sandbox.motorolasolutions.com/sp/ACS.saml2"
2632 ID="J50lM6VqeneVzASghHyljAKbR.8" InResponseTo="Kdplu_dq00yM_ftaeubgF9o0PX"
2633 IssueInstant="2017-11-13T13:49:17.100Z" Version="2.0"
2634 xmlns:samlp="urn:oasis:names:tc:SAML:2.0:protocol">
2635   <saml:Issuer
2636 xmlns:saml="urn:oasis:names:tc:SAML:2.0:assertion">idpl.spsd.mssso</saml:Issuer>
2637   <ds:Signature xmlns:ds="http://www.w3.org/2000/09/xmldsig#">
2638     <ds:SignedInfo>
2639       <ds:CanonicalizationMethod
2640 Algorithm="http://www.w3.org/2001/10/xml-exc-c14n#" />
2641
2642
2643       <ds:SignatureMethod Algorithm="http://www.w3.org/2001/04/xmldsig-
2644 more#rsa-sha256" />
2645       <ds:Reference URI="#J50lM6VqeneVzASghHyljAKbR.8">
2646         <ds:Transforms>
2647           <ds:Transform
2648 Algorithm="http://www.w3.org/2000/09/xmldsig#enveloped-signature" />
2649           <ds:Transform
2650 Algorithm="http://www.w3.org/2001/10/xml-exc-c14n#" />
2651         </ds:Transforms>
2652         <ds:DigestMethod
2653 Algorithm="http://www.w3.org/2001/04/xmenc#sha256" />
2654         <ds:DigestValue>lvQiqCU6iYa33vQm+71lElVmiQHZe9s+AM7Pa98VZA=</ds:DigestValue>
2655       </ds:Reference>
2656     </ds:SignedInfo>
2657     <ds:SignatureValue>
2658 LzRmBarY6nwFKvr7S/oVacIIdIEF8yIhWBWOCGgzr1kN4esV/BSyKCSWb8JSXwC8VDSMRtW8CL5
2659 UDUt55u9tBkNVjxv5dt5+Nat9ykfvxWmOdpeIU0s1sn1BGw+d94heIBaWIXMY9YQh9gWt6JYt9Qa
2660 dFt6kEF5KSCKQAASem120lKWoF+bRlmG4e1m5LM8u7A7Z/aFvup3C6eydJp+R1i+Z+Az4yWvc/6a
2661 byK10OgNi/0bnzkk7w/Jlty4fUDqWzmrrDZpHBxfALUnTWdOT5IzJ7njLAKAaSt460Z52nZA8aAb
2662 Uo08OKDbvUi/TglSqFcp2Ra+BhOCmDw9boLonw==
2663 </ds:SignatureValue>
2664     </ds:Signature>
2665   <samlp:Status>
2666     <samlp:StatusCode Value="urn:oasis:names:tc:SAML:2.0:status:Success" />
2667   </samlp:Status>
2668   <saml:Assertion ID="H_m.WHGoUQPD.3cVP41XCUXxbGK" IssueInstant="2017-11-
2669 13T13:49:17.155Z" Version="2.0" xmlns:saml="urn:oasis:names:tc:SAML:2.0:assertion">
2670     <saml:Issuer>idpl.spsd.mssso</saml:Issuer>
2671     <saml:Subject>
2672       <saml:NameID Format="urn:oasis:names:tc:SAML:1.1:nameid-
2673 format:unspecified">unccoetest4</saml:NameID>
2674       <saml:SubjectConfirmation

```

SECOND DRAFT

```
2675 Method="urn:oasis:names:tc:SAML:2.0:cm:bearer">
2676     <saml:SubjectConfirmationData
2677 InResponseTo="Kdplu_dq00yM_ftaeeubgF9o0PX" NotOnOrAfter="2017-11-13T13:54:17.155Z"
2678 Recipient="https://idm.sandbox.motorolasolutions.com/sp/ACS.saml2"/>
2679     </saml:SubjectConfirmation>
2680 </saml:Subject>
2681     <saml:Conditions NotBefore="2017-11-13T13:44:17.155Z" NotOnOrAfter="2017-
2682 11-13T13:54:17.155Z">
2683         <saml:AudienceRestriction>
2684 <saml:Audience>ctoPingFed_entityID</saml:Audience>
2685         </saml:AudienceRestriction>
2686     </saml:Conditions>
2687     <saml:AuthnStatement AuthnInstant="2017-11-13T13:49:17.153Z"
2688 SessionIndex="H_m.WHGoUQPD.3cVP41XCUXxbGK">
2689         <saml:AuthnContext>
2690 <saml:AuthnContextClassRef>urn:oasis:names:tc:SAML:2.0:ac:classes:unspecified</saml:Au
2691 thnContextClassRef>
2692         </saml:AuthnContext>
2693     </saml:AuthnStatement>
2694     <saml:AttributeStatement>
2695         <saml:Attribute Name="uid"
2696 NameFormat="urn:oasis:names:tc:SAML:2.0:attrname-format:basic">
2697             <saml:AttributeValue
2698 xmlns:xs="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"
2699 xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
2700 xsi:type="xs:string">unccoetest4</saml:AttributeValue>
2701             </saml:Attribute>
2702         <saml:Attribute Name="mail"
2703 NameFormat="urn:oasis:names:tc:SAML:2.0:attrname-format:basic">
2704             <saml:AttributeValue
2705 xmlns:xs="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"
2706 xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
2707 xsi:type="xs:string">unccoetest4</saml:AttributeValue>
2708             </saml:Attribute>
2709         </saml:AttributeStatement>
2710     </saml:Assertion>
2711 </samlp:Response>
2712
2713 >>>
```

2714 In the above example, two attributes, `uid` and `mail`, are asserted, but the `mail` attribute does not  
2715 contain a valid email address.

2716 For OIDC, because the ID Token is retrieved over a back-channel connection between the RP and the  
2717 IdP, it cannot be observed in browser traffic. As with SAML, creating a test application is one method of  
2718 testing, but manual testing is also possible by using a few software tools:

2719 1. Register an OIDC client with a client secret and a redirect URI that points to a nonexistent  
2720 server. A redirect URI value like `https://127.0.0.1/test-url` will work, assuming that you do  
2721 not have a web server running on your machine. In a desktop browser, submit an authentication  
2722 request with a URL like the one listed below:

2723 *`https://op1.lpsd.mssso:9031/as/authorization.oauth2?client_id=marktest&response_type=code&`*  
2724 *`scope=openid%20address%20test%20phone%20openid%20profile%20name%20email`*

2725 2. Replace the server name and client ID with the correct values for your environment; also make  
2726 sure that the scope parameter includes `openid` and any other expected scopes. Authenticate to  
2727 the IdP. In this case, because the FIDO UAF adapter is in use but is being accessed through a  
2728 desktop browser, it initiates an OOB authentication, which can be completed on the mobile  
2729 device. Once authentication is completed, the browser will attempt to access the redirect URL,  
2730 which will result in a connection error because no web server is running on localhost. However,  
2731 the authorization code can be extracted from the URL:

2732 *`https://127.0.0.1/test-url?code=lv-pND_3o7_aJ5nFMcD-WbrVENrW7w5V75Cupx9G`*

2733 The authorization code can be submitted to the IdP's token endpoint in a POST to obtain the ID Token.  
2734 There are numerous ways to do this. Postman is a simple graphical-user-interface tool for testing APIs  
2735 and can be used to submit the request: <https://www.getpostman.com>.

2736 Figure 7-1 shows Postman being used to retrieve an ID Token. A POST request is submitted to the OIDC  
2737 IdP's token endpoint; by default, the token endpoint URL is the base URL, followed by `/as/token.oauth2`.  
2738 The authorization code is included as a query parameter. The client ID and client secret are used as the  
2739 HTTP basic authorization username and password.

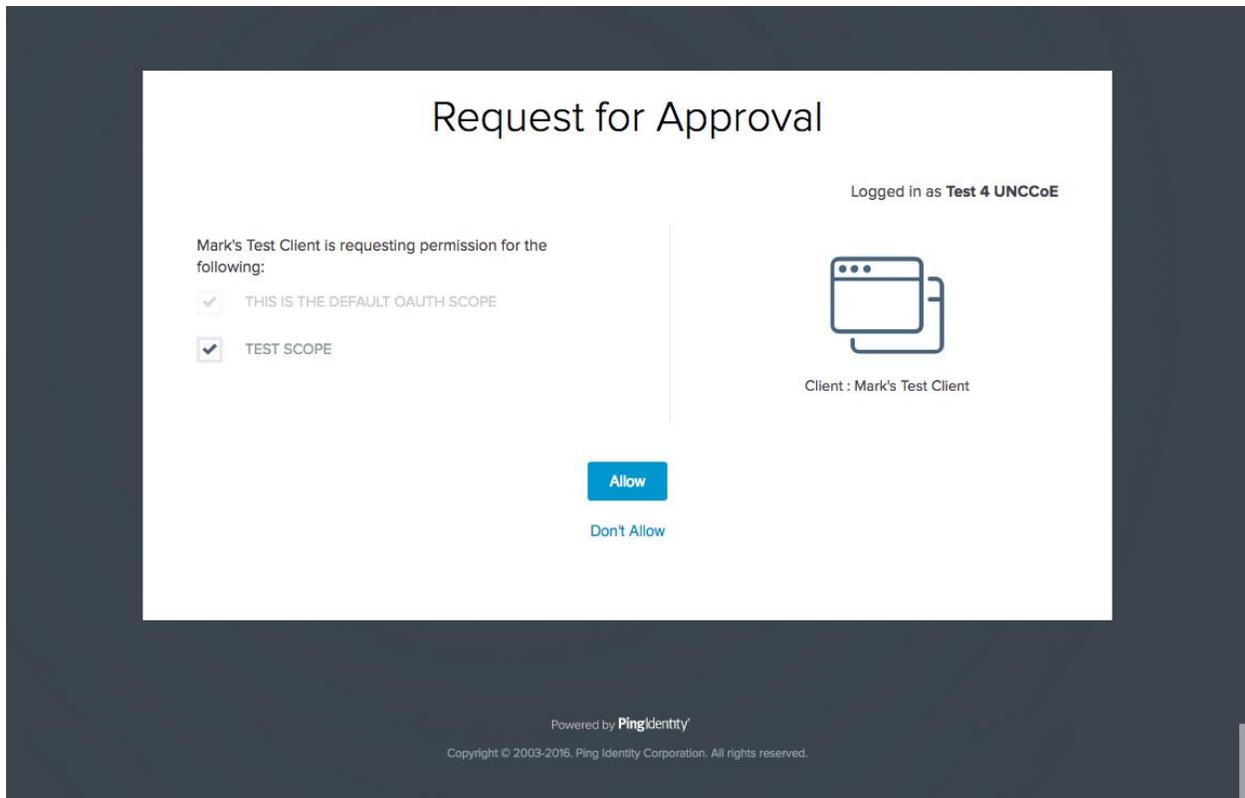


```
2763     x3PyTSYAdouYwfo6klUYxoF-bjffGpOg"
2764     >>> idToken = jwt.decode(idTokenStr, verify=False)
2765     >>> print json.dumps(idToken, indent=4)
2766     {
2767         "family_name": "UNCCoE",
2768         "aud": "marktest",
2769         "sub": "unccoetest4",
2770         "iss": "https://op1.lpsd.mssso:9031",
2771         "preferred_username": "unccoetest4",
2772         "updated_at": 1499983978,
2773         "jti": "212kQiNU15oUhnLyA0ULSf",
2774         "given_name": "Test 4",
2775         "exp": 1510586135,
2776         "iat": 1510585835,
2777         "email": "unccoetest4@lpsd.mssso",
2778         "name": "Test 4 UNCCoE"
2779     }
2780     >>>
```

2781 This merely decodes the claims in the JWT without verifying the signature. If there is an issue with  
2782 signature validation or trust in the signing key, these errors will be reported in the PingFederate server  
2783 log.

## 2784 7.4 Testing the AS

2785 One simple step that can help identify problems at the AS is turning on the authorization prompts. This  
2786 can be done on a per-client basis by deselecting the **BYPASS AUTHORIZATION APPROVAL** setting on the  
2787 client configuration page, in the **OAuth Settings** section in the AS console. If the authorization prompt is  
2788 displayed (Figure 7-2), this demonstrates that authentication has succeeded, and the list of scopes being  
2789 requested by the client is displayed and can be verified.

2790 **Figure 7-2 Authorization Prompt**

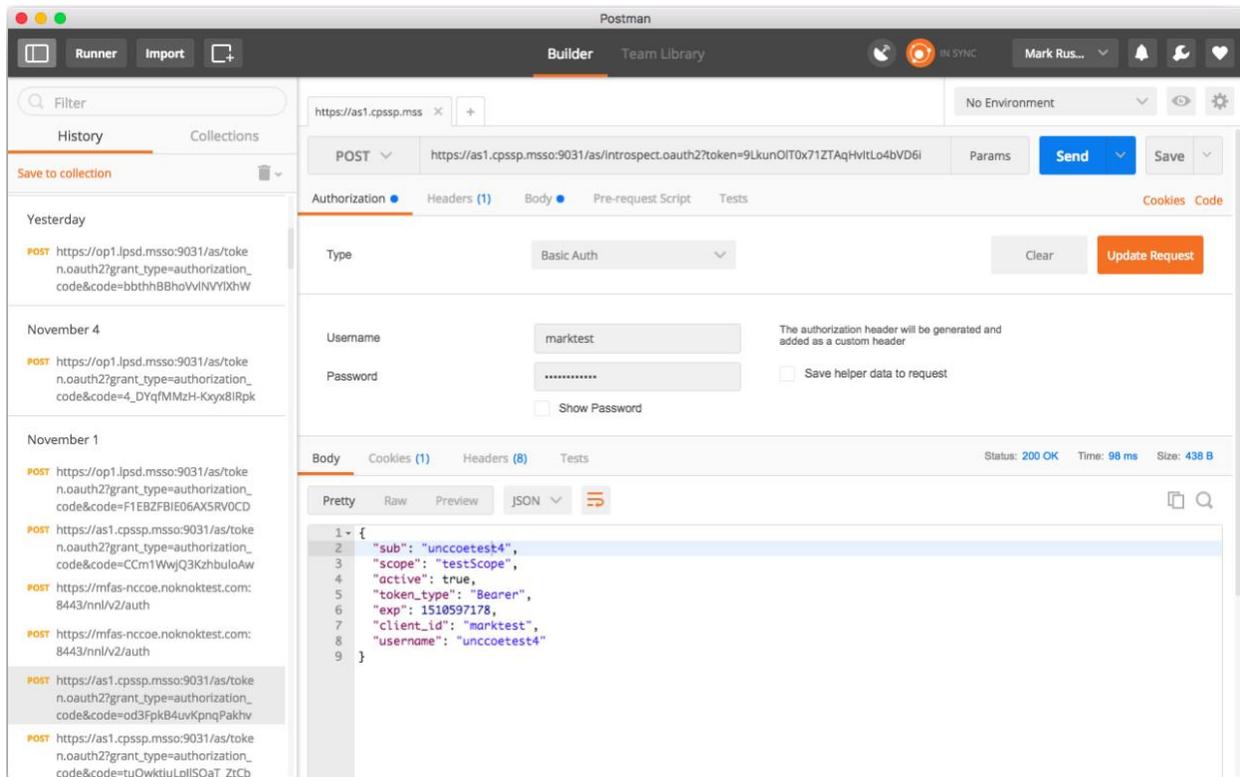
2791

2792 It is also possible to manually obtain an access token by using the same procedure that was used in the  
 2793 previous section to obtain an ID Token; the only difference is that an OAuth request typically would not  
 2794 include the `openid` scope. If the issued access token is a JWT, it can be analyzed using Python as  
 2795 described above.

2796 If the token is not a JWT (i.e., a Reference Token management scheme is in use), the access token can be  
 2797 submitted to the AS's introspection endpoint as specified in RFC 7662 [31]. The default location of the  
 2798 introspection endpoint for PingFederate is the base URL, followed by `/as/introspect.oauth2`. The request  
 2799 is submitted as a POST, with the access token in a query parameter called **token**. Basic authentication  
 2800 can be used with the client ID and secret as a username and password. The client must be authorized to  
 2801 call the introspection endpoint by selecting **Access Token Validation (Client is a Resource Server)** under  
 2802 **Allowed Grant Types** in the client configuration on the AS.

2803 Figure 7-3 shows a token introspection request and response in Postman.

2804 Figure 7-3 Token Introspection Request and Response



2805

## 2806 7.5 Testing the Application

2807 One last potential problem area in this SSO architecture is the back-end application, which must accept  
 2808 and validate access tokens. Troubleshooting methods there will depend on the design of the application.  
 2809 Building robust instrumentation and error reporting into RP applications will help identify problems. If  
 2810 the application validates JWT access tokens, then establishing and maintaining trust in the AS's signing  
 2811 certificate, including maintenance when the certificate is replaced, is essential to avoid validation  
 2812 problems. Clock synchronization between the AS and the RP is also important; a time difference of five  
 2813 minutes or more can cause validation errors as well.

2814 **Appendix A Abbreviations and Acronyms**

<b>AD</b>	Active Directory
<b>API</b>	Application Programming Interface
<b>App ID</b>	Application Identification
<b>AppAuth</b>	Application Authentication System
<b>AS</b>	Authorization Server
<b>BCP</b>	Best Current Practice
<b>BIND</b>	Berkeley Internet Name Domain
<b>BLE</b>	Bluetooth Low Energy
<b>CA</b>	Certificate Authority
<b>CPSSP</b>	Central Public Safety Service Provider
<b>CPU</b>	Central Processing Unit
<b>CRADA</b>	Cooperative Research and Development Agreement
<b>CSR</b>	Certificate Signing Request
<b>DN</b>	Distinguished Name
<b>DNS</b>	Domain Name System
<b>FIDO</b>	Fast Identity Online
<b>FQDN</b>	Fully Qualified Domain Name
<b>GB</b>	Gigabyte
<b>GHz</b>	Gigahertz
<b>HTML</b>	HyperText Markup Language
<b>HTTP</b>	Hypertext Transfer Protocol
<b>HTTPS</b>	Hypertext Transfer Protocol Secure
<b>ID</b>	Identification
<b>IdP</b>	Identity Provider
<b>iOS</b>	iPhone Operating System
<b>IP</b>	Internet Protocol
<b>IT</b>	Information Technology
<b>JCE</b>	Java Cryptography Extension
<b>JDK</b>	Java Development Kit
<b>JSON</b>	JavaScript Object Notation
<b>JWE</b>	JSON Web Encryption
<b>JWT</b>	JSON Web Token
<b>LDAP</b>	Lightweight Directory Access Protocol
<b>LPSD</b>	Local Public Safety Department
<b>MFA</b>	Multifactor Authentication
<b>MSSO</b>	Mobile Single Sign-On
<b>NAT</b>	Network Address Translation
<b>NCCoE</b>	National Cybersecurity Center of Excellence
<b>NFC</b>	Near Field Communication
<b>NIST</b>	National Institute of Standards and Technology

<b>NNAS</b>	Nok Nok Labs Authentication Server
<b>NTP</b>	Network Time Protocol
<b>OIDC</b>	OpenID Connect
<b>OOB</b>	Out-of-Band
<b>OS</b>	Operating System
<b>PIN</b>	Personal Identification Number
<b>PKCE</b>	Proof Key for Code Exchange
<b>PSFR</b>	Public Safety and First Responder
<b>PSX</b>	Public Safety Experience
<b>QR</b>	Quick Response
<b>RAM</b>	Random Access Memory
<b>RFC</b>	Request for Comments
<b>RP</b>	Relying Party
<b>RPM</b>	Red Hat Package Manager
<b>SAML</b>	Security Assertion Markup Language
<b>SDK</b>	Software Development Kit
<b>SKCE</b>	StrongKey CryptoEngine
<b>SLO</b>	Single Log-Out
<b>SP</b>	Service Provider
<b>SPSD</b>	State Public Safety Department
<b>SQL</b>	Structured Query Language
<b>SSH</b>	Secure Shell
<b>SSO</b>	Single Sign-On
<b>TLS</b>	Transport Layer Security
<b>U2F</b>	Universal Second Factor
<b>UAF</b>	Universal Authentication Framework
<b>URI</b>	Uniform Resource Identifier
<b>URL</b>	Uniform Resource Locator
<b>USB</b>	Universal Serial Bus
<b>VLAN</b>	Virtual Local Area Network
<b>VPN</b>	Virtual Private Network

2815 **Appendix B** **References**

- [1] W. Denniss and J. Bradley, "OAuth 2.0 for Native Apps," BCP 212, RFC 8252, DOI 10.17487/RFC8252, October 2017. [Online]. Available: <https://www.rfc-editor.org/info/rfc8252>. [Accessed 25 February 2018].
- [2] FIDO Alliance, "FIDO Specifications Overview: UAF & U2F," 20 May 2016. [Online]. Available: <https://www.slideshare.net/FIDOAlliance/fido-specifications-overview-uaf-u2f>. [Accessed 25 February 2018].
- [3] Google, "Chrome custom tabs smooth the transition between apps and the web," Android Developers Blog, 2 September 2015. [Online]. Available: <https://android-developers.googleblog.com/2015/09/chrome-custom-tabs-smooth-transition.html>. [Accessed 25 February 2018].
- [4] Google, "Chrome Custom Tabs," 6 May 2016. [Online]. Available: <https://developer.chrome.com/multidevice/android/customtabs>. [Accessed 25 February 2018].
- [5] Apple, "SFSafariViewController," 2019. [Online]. Available: <https://developer.apple.com/documentation/safariservices/sfsafariviewcontroller>. [Accessed 18 March 2019].
- [6] D. Waite, "Single Sign-on and iOS 11," Ping Identity, 8 August 2017. [Online]. Available: [https://www.pingidentity.com/en/company/blog/2017/08/08/single\\_sign-on\\_and\\_ios\\_11.html](https://www.pingidentity.com/en/company/blog/2017/08/08/single_sign-on_and_ios_11.html). [Accessed 18 March 2019].
- [7] Apple, "ASWebAuthenticationSession," 2019. [Online]. Available: <https://developer.apple.com/documentation/authenticationservices/aswebauthentication-session>. [Accessed 18 March 2019].
- [8] OpenID Foundation, "openid/AppAuth-iOS," GitHub, 2019. [Online]. Available: <https://github.com/openid/AppAuth-iOS>. [Accessed 18 March 2019].
- [9] Google, "Google Chrome: Fast & Secure," Google Play, 2018. [Online]. Available: <https://play.google.com/store/apps/details?id=com.android.chrome>. [Accessed 25 February 2018].
- [10] Google, "Fast Identity Online Universal Second Factor API for Android," 18 December 2018. [Online]. Available: <https://developers.google.com/identity/fido/android/native-apps>. [Accessed 18 March 2019].

- [11] Google, "Google Authenticator," Google Play, [Online]. Available: <https://play.google.com/store/apps/details?id=com.google.android.apps.authenticator2>. [Accessed 25 February 2018].
- [12] J. Chong, "iPhone Support for YubiKey OTP via NFC," Yubico, 25 October 2017. [Online]. Available: <https://www.yubico.com/2017/10/iphone-support-yubikey-otp-via-nfc/>. [Accessed 18 March 2019].
- [13] J. Chong, "Yubico Extends Mobile SDK for iOS to Lightning," Yubico, 30 August 2018. [Online]. Available: <https://www.yubico.com/2018/08/yubico-extends-mobile-sdk-for-ios-to-lightning/>. [Accessed 18 March 2019].
- [14] J. Davis, "Release Notes for Safari Technology Preview 71," 5 December 2018. [Online]. Available: <https://webkit.org/blog/8517/release-notes-for-safari-technology-preview-71/>. [Accessed 1 April 2019].
- [15] S. Machani, R. Philpott, S. Srinivas, J. Kemp and J. Hodges, "FIDO UAF Architectural Overview, FIDO Alliance Implementation Draft," 2 February 2017. [Online]. Available: <https://fidoalliance.org/specs/fido-uaf-v1.1-id-20170202/fido-uaf-overview-v1.1-id-20170202.html>. [Accessed 25 February 2018].
- [16] Nok Nok Labs Inc., "Nok Nok™ Passport," Google Play, [Online]. Available: <https://play.google.com/store/apps/details?id=com.noknok.android.passport2>. [Accessed 25 February 2018].
- [17] Nok Nok Labs Inc., "Nok Nok™ Passport," Apple App Store, [Online]. Available: <https://itunes.apple.com/us/app/nok-nok-passport/id1050437340>. [Accessed 18 March 2019].
- [18] Motorola Solutions, "PSX App Suite," [Online]. Available: [https://www.motorolasolutions.com/en\\_us/products/psx-app-suite.html](https://www.motorolasolutions.com/en_us/products/psx-app-suite.html). [Accessed 25 February 2018].
- [19] OpenID Foundation, "openid/AppAuth-Android," GitHub, [Online]. Available: <https://github.com/openid/AppAuth-Android>. [Accessed 25 February 2018].
- [20] Jones, M. and D. Hardt, "The OAuth 2.0 Authorization Framework: Bearer Token Usage," RFC 6750, DOI 10.17487/RFC6750, October 2012. [Online]. Available: <https://www.rfc-editor.org/info/rfc6750>. [Accessed 18 March 2019].
- [21] D., Hardt, Ed., "The OAuth 2.0 Authorization Framework," RFC 6749, DOI 10.17487/RFC6749, October 2012. [Online]. Available: <https://www.rfc-editor.org/info/rfc6749>. [Accessed 25 February 2018].

- [22] S. Cantor, J. Kemp, R. Philpott and E. Maler, "Assertions and Protocols for the OASIS Security Assertion Markup Language (SAML) V2.0," 15 March 2005. [Online]. Available: <http://docs.oasis-open.org/security/saml/v2.0/saml-core-2.0-os.pdf>. [Accessed 25 February 2018].
- [23] N. E. Sakimura, J. Bradley and N. Agarwal, "Proof Key for Code Exchange by OAuth Public Clients," RFC 7636, DOI 10.17487/RFC7636, September 2015. [Online]. Available: <https://www.rfc-editor.org/info/rfc7636>. [Accessed 25 February 2018].
- [24] M. Jones and J. Hildebrand, "JSON Web Encryption (JWE)," RFC 7516, May 2015. [Online]. Available: <https://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc7516>. [Accessed 25 February 2018].
- [25] N. Sakimura, J. Bradley, M. Jones, B. de Medeiros and C. Mortimore, "OpenID Connect Core 1.0 incorporating errata set 1," 8 November 2014. [Online]. Available: [http://openid.net/specs/openid-connect-core-1\\_0.html](http://openid.net/specs/openid-connect-core-1_0.html). [Accessed 25 February 2018].
- [26] Microsoft Corporation, "Active Directory Schema," [Online]. Available: [https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ms675085\(v=vs.85\).aspx](https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ms675085(v=vs.85).aspx). [Accessed 25 February 2018].
- [27] Nok Nok Labs, Inc., "Nok Nok Labs S3 Authentication Suite Solution Guide," v5.1.1, 2017.
- [28] Nok Nok Labs, Inc., "Nok Nok Authentication Server Administration Guide," v5.1.1, 2017.
- [29] Nok Nok Labs, Inc., "Nok Nok PingFederate Adapter Integration Guide," v1.0.1, 2017.
- [30] StrongKey, Inc., "PingFederate FIDO IdP Adapter Installation Guide," Revision 2, 2017.
- [31] J. Richer, Ed., "OAuth 2.0 Token Introspection," RFC 7662, October 2015. [Online]. Available: <https://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc7662>. [Accessed 25 February 2018].